



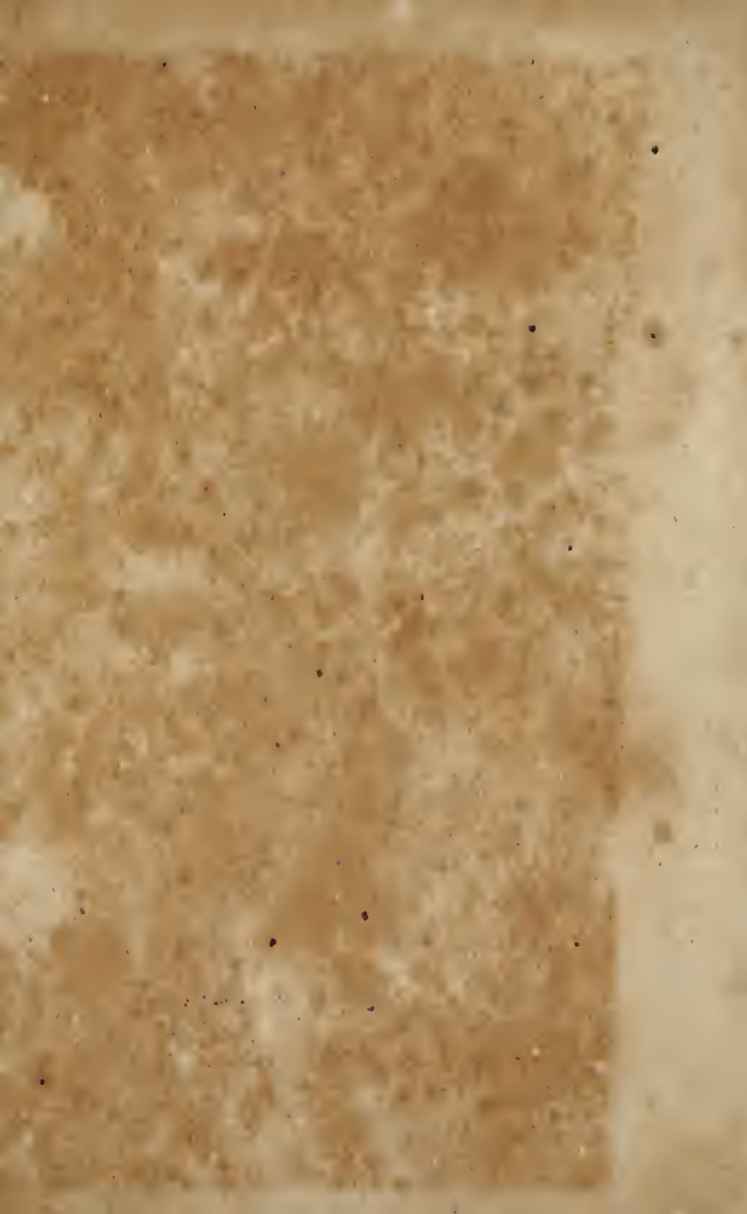
COL. GEORGE WASHINGTON FLOWERS  
MEMORIAL COLLECTION

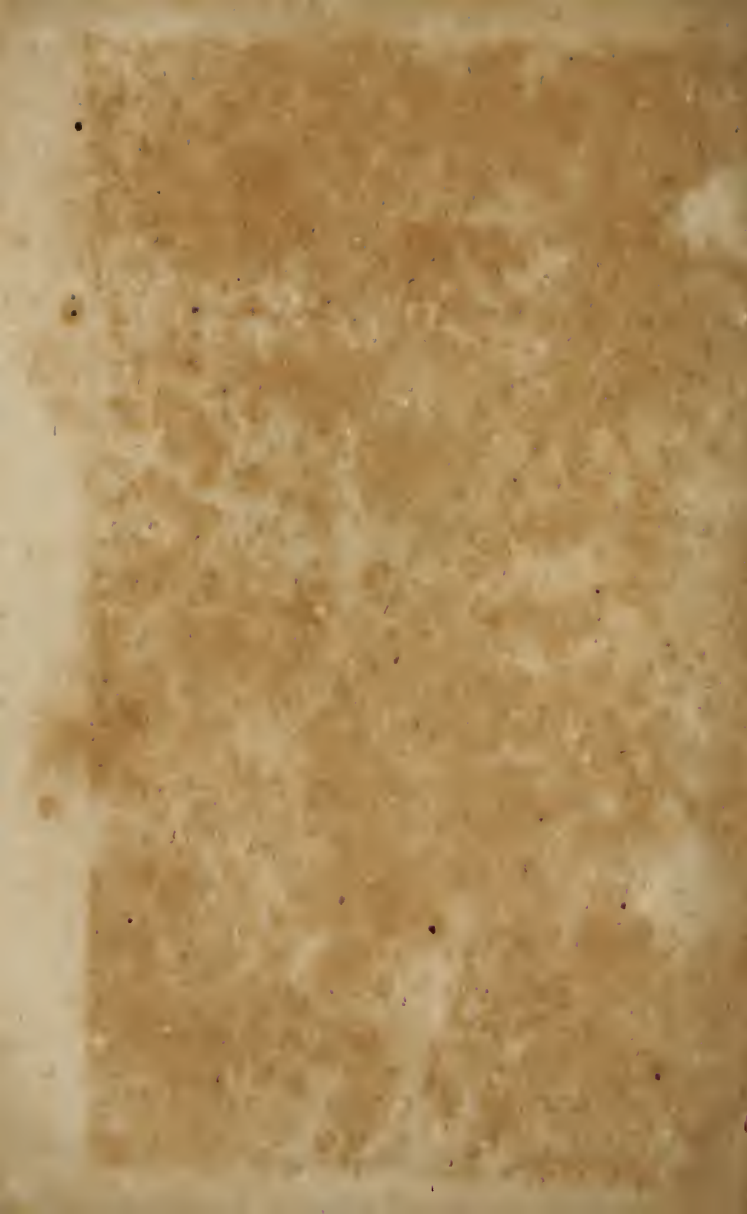


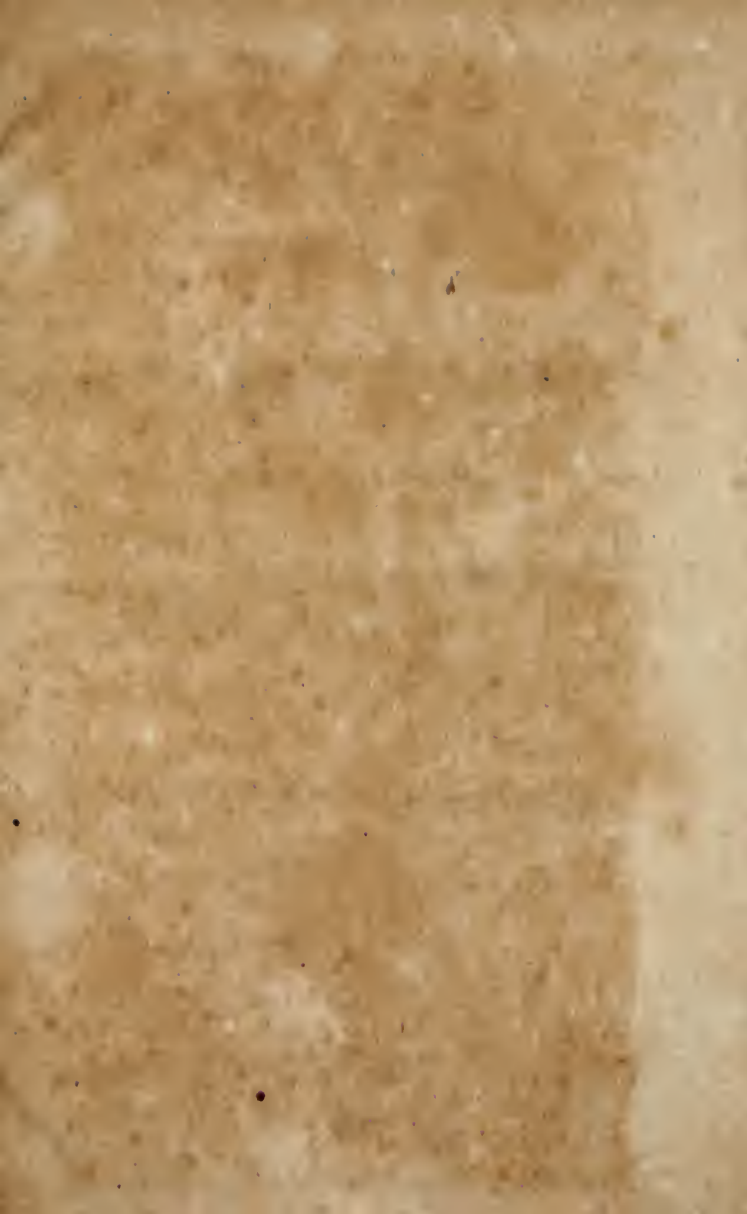
TRINITY COLLEGE LIBRARY  
DURHAM, N. C.

*The Gift of* \_\_\_\_\_

*Date* May 22, 1931









A

REVISED SYSTEM

OF

# CAVALRY TACTICS,

FOR THE USE OF THE

*Cavalry and Mounted Infantry, C. S. A.*

---

• • •

BY

MAJOR GENERAL JOSEPH WHEELER,

*Chief of Cavalry, Army of Tennessee, C. S. A.*

---

• • •

MOBILE:  
S. H. GOETZEL & Co.

1863

---

*Entered according to Act of Congress in the year 1863, by*  
S. H. GOETZEL & CO.

*In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Alabama, for the  
Confederate States of America.*

---

FARROW & DENNETT, PRINTERS.



5/22/31

T. R.

Flowers col.

~~973, 7427~~

~~W 563~~

RBR

Er. 2497

Perf

12 mo

#40

## INTRODUCTION.

Much has been said regarding the relative advantage of single and double rank formation. We have seen that the depth of formation has been gradually decreasing during the last two thousand years from ten or even sixteen ranks to the present system.

The most perfect system of formation is that which enables the commander to do the most service with a given number of men. We will suppose a Cavalry Brigade of four regiments to be drawn up to charge the enemy. With the single rank formation the Brigade will be formed in four lines and inflict upon the enemy four successive shocks, each of which would be nearly as severe as a charge in two ranks, and the number of shocks being double, the amount of execution would certainly be much greater.

Another advantage in single rank, is the greater facility with which troops can be handled and reformed, after the confusion of a charge, and what is of more importance, disorder or confusion are less liable to be incurred.

180576

These, together with several other minor considerations, have induced cavalry officers of most experience both in Europe and America, to prefer the single to double ranks.

By forming the flank squadrons in echelon, the enemy would be ignorant as to whether the Regiment charging them was in one or two ranks, and therefore the moral effect would be the same in both cases.

# CAVALRY TACTICS,

FOR SINGLE RANK FORMATIONS.

---

## PART FIRST.

---

### TITLE FIRST.

---

#### ARTICLE FIRST.

TO FORM A REGIMENT OF TEN SQUADRONS  
IN LINE OF BATTLE.

A Regiment of Cavalry consists of one Colonel, one Lieutenant Colonel, one Major, one Adjutant, one Sergeant Major, one Quartermaster Sergeant, and ten Companies, each of which consists of one Captain, one First Lieutenant, two Second Lieutenants, five Sergeants, four Corporals, one Farrier, one Blacksmith, and from sixty to eighty privates.

Quartermasters, Commissaries and Surgeons are sometimes appointed for provisional purposes, but are generally detailed from Lieutenants of the line.

A Band is sometimes formed by selecting musicians from the rank and file.

Companies will be designated as squadrons in all manoeuvres and exercises, and each will be composed of two, three or four platoons, according to its size.

When of 40 or more files, it is divided into four platoons; of 30 to 40 files, into three platoons; of 20 to 30 files, into two. If possible the files of the platoons are of even numbers. The first and fourth platoons are made the largest if necessary to accomplish this. The platoons are numbered at first from right to left, and retain their numerical designations whatever relative positions they may subsequently occupy.

The formation will be in one rank. That which has been prescribed for the formation mounted, is applicable to the formation on foot.

The squadrons of a regiment in line, are posted with intervals equal to a platoon front between the sergeants on their flanks; the intervals are equal at any one time, and never less than 12 paces. When the average of platoon front is much above this, the colonel announces the increased uniform interval.

The squadrons are distinguished by the denomination of first, second, third, &c., counting from right to left; they retain these designations in the evolutions whatever may be their relative positions. But the 1st captain commands the squadron on the right; the 2d, the tenth (on the left;); the 3d, the fifth from the right; the 4th, the third from the right; the 5th, the seventh from the right; the 6th, the second from the right; the 7th, the ninth from the right; the 8th, the sixth from the right; the 9th, the fourth from the right; and the 10th, the eighth from the right.

This is the habitual and parade order of the squadrons; but in sudden formations, they will take post as they arrive at the place of assembly, and should a captain be permanently absent, or absent for a campaign, the commander of the regiment will assign his squadron position according to the rank of the actual commander.

*Post of the Officers and Non-commissioned Officers of the Field and Staff of a Regiment in line of Battle.*

The colonel, fifty paces in front of the centre of the regiment, having a chief trumpeter near him.

The lieutenant colonel, 25 paces in advance of the centre of the right wing.

The major, 25 paces in advance of the centre of the left wing.

The colonel moves wherever his presence may be necessary. The lieutenant colonel and major, move wherever the colonel may think proper to direct them.

The adjutant accompanies the colonel.

The regimental quartermaster and commissary, if there be any; are placed two paces to the right of the sergeant major, or they accompany the colonel as he may direct.

The sergeant major is in line with the regiment 2 paces from the right flank.

The quartermaster sergeant is in line with the regiment 2 paces from the left flank.

The standard bearer is on the right of the guidon of the centre, or right centre squadron; a corporal is 1 pace behind him.

The regimental marker is 1 pace behind the second file from the right of the regiment.

General staff officers serving with the regiment 25 paces in rear of the right of the regiment.

The band, formed in two ranks, is 25 paces in rear of the centre of the regiment.

*Post of the Officers and Non-commissioned Officers of a Squadron in line of Battle.*

The captain is posted in front of the centre of the squadron, the croup of his horse 4 paces in advance of the heads of the horses in line.

The senior lieutenant commands the 1st platoon; the next in rank, the 4th platoon; the next, the 2d; and the next, the 3d. Each is posted in front of the centre of his platoon, with the croup of his horse 1 pace in advance of the heads of the horses in line. Sergeants supply the places of commanders of platoons, when there are not enough officers present.

The 1st sergeant is posted on the right of the squadron not counted in the rank; he is the squadron right guide.

The next sergeant in rank is posted on the left of the squadron, not counted in the rank; he is the squadron left guide.

The third sergeant in rank is the guidon bearer, and is the left file of the 2d platoon.

The other sergeants and corporals are placed according to rank, as follows:

Left of 1st platoon.

Right of 4th platoon.

Right of 3d platoon.

Right of 1st platoon.

Left of 4th platoon.

Left of 3d platoon.

Right of 2d platoon.

The 1st trumpeter is posted one pace behind the 4th file from the right of the 1st platoon.

The other trumpeter, one pace behind the 4th file from the left of the 4th platoon.

The farrier, one pace behind the centre of the second platoon.

The saddler, one pace behind the centre of the third platoon.

There is a size-roll of the squadron, and with some allowance for weight of man and horse, the tallest horses are assigned to the tallest men; the men are posted according to this roll, the tallest men to the right and left of the centre, the lowest at the flanks.

This invariable position of the soldiers is also important for its encouragement to companionship and mutual assistance in the sets of fours, and to a feeling of responsibility of each to the others in conduct and bravery.

#### *Assembly of a Regiment Mounted.*

When a regiment is to mount, *boots and saddles* is sounded. At this signal the horses are saddled, bridled, and fully equipped for the occasion.

At the signal *to horse*, non-commissioned officers and troopers lead into rank. The 1st sergeant calls the roll,

or the sergeants of divisions may be required to call the division rolls; the officers are present in superintendence.

The captain, then, or the senior lieutenant by his order, orders the squadron to count fours in each platoon, and to mount.

The captain, first observing that every one is in his prescribed place, and the general appearance of the squadron, marches it, habitually by fours, to the place of assembly. If required, on reaching there, he reports absentees, by his 1st sergeant, to the adjutant.

In case of alarm or surprise, *to horse* is sounded; the men then saddle, pack up, bridle, and mount with the utmost celerity, and repair to the place of assembly, which is always previously designated.

On occasions of parade, the trumpeters and band will proceed, as soon as mounted, to the right of the parade ground, and be there formed in two or more ranks. Fifteen minutes after *to horse*, the trumpeters sound the *assembly*, for marching the squadrons to the parade.

#### *Assembly of a Regiment Dismounted.*

When a regiment is to turn out under arms on foot, "to arms" will be sounded; at this signal the squadrons will be formed and inspected as prescribed.

For parade, the regiment will be formed in line of columns, as when mounted, but with intervals of two paces.

The squadron officers, will take place four paces in front of the first platoons, in order of rank from right to left, with equal intervals; the left guides on the right of the second platoons.

#### DRESS PARADE AND GUARD MOUNTING.

Dress parade and mounting of guards, mounted, are conducted as prescribed in Army Regulations, with the following and other more obvious variations, necessary from the difference of cavalry and infantry.

The officers take post 12 paces, the non-commissioned officers 6 paces, in front of the guard.

After inspection, the officers take post 2 paces in front of the centre of their guard or their platoons; a non-commissioned officer commanding a guard, the same.

The guard passes in review by *guard, platoons, or fours*, having regard to its strength.

In wet weather the sabres will not be drawn by guards for inspection, or any occasion of ceremony.

At regimental parade the field officers and captains are placed as in line; the platoon commanders, exclusively commissioned officers, are aligned on the captains; the adjutant and sergeant major are posted 4 paces from the right guide of squadrons.

After the music, the adjutant rides to a point 25 paces in front of the centre of the line, faces it, and commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Draw—SABRE.*
3. *Present—SABRE.*

The colonel concludes the exercises with, *Return—SABRE.*

The commands for the advance of the line of officers are given in a tone only loud enough to be heard by them.

If the colonel desires it, for the purpose of parade, he will divide the squadron into two platoons, and form the regimental parade in line of platoon columns at 9 paces distance—from the horses' croups in the front line to their heads in the other—with intervals of 6 paces.

The officers take post 4 paces in front of the first platoons, in order of rank, from right to left, with equal intervals; if but one officer, in front of the centre of the platoon; left guides on the right of the 2d platoons.

To leave the parade, the squadrons will be commanded; 1. *Right forward—Fours right.* 2. MARCH. Or, if by the rear, 1. *Fours left—Columns left.* 2. MARCH. In both cases the rear platoon does not march until the



leading platoon has gained sufficient ground for their properly uniting.

### THE STANDARD.

Generally, when the standard is used, the standard bearer goes for it to the quarters or tent of the colonel, escorted by two sergeants.

On special occasions, and at least once a year, it is escorted and received with ceremony.

Two platoons of the standard squadron, or one of the flank squadrons, will be detached, under the orders of the colonel, to proceed to his quarters, as soon as mounted. It will be halted in their front, in column of platoons, with either flank toward the quarters. The standard bearer, receives the standard from the hands of the adjutant or sergeant major, and takes his post in the centre of the interval between the platoons, with a sergeant on each side of him; the column is then put in motion, preceded 20 paces by a chief trumpeter and four trumpeters.

The column approaches a flank of the regiment, marching parallel with and about 100 paces from its front, the trumpets sounding the march.

The colonel commands the sabres to be drawn. The escort is halted when nearly opposite the flank, the standard bearer and two sergeants pass on, and when 50 paces in front of the colonel face him and the regiment, and halt.

The colonel then orders sabres presented, and presents sabre himself; the trumpets sound *to the standard*. The standard bearer then takes his place in line.

The escort, the moment the standard bearer leaves it, turns and is marched by the rear to its place in line.

When there is a band, it may be substituted for the chief trumpeter and four trumpeters.

On the return of the standard it has the same escort.

*Salute with the Standard.*

When the standard is to pay honors, the standard bearer salutes in the following manner, in two times:

1. At 4 paces from the person who is to be saluted, lower the lance gently to the front, bending as near to the horizontal line as possible.

2. Raise the lance gently, when the person saluted has passed 4 paces.

*Salute with the Sabre.*

When the superior and other officers are to salute, whether on horseback or on foot, at a halt or marching, they do it in four times.

1. At 4 paces from the person to be saluted, raise the sabre perpendicularly, the point upwards, the edge to the left, the hand opposite to and one foot from the right shoulder, the elbow 6 inches from the body.

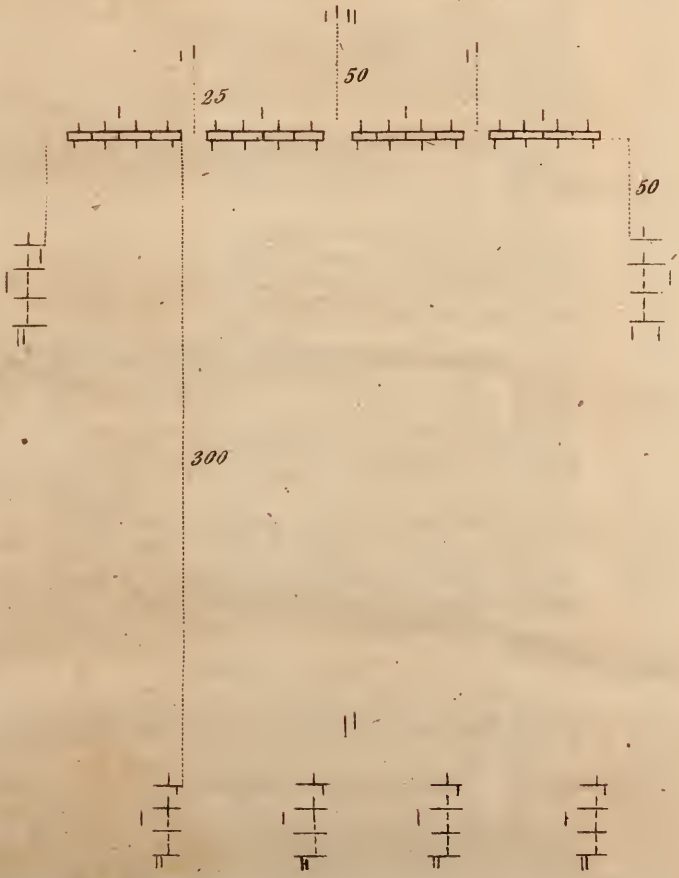
2. Lower the blade, extending the arm to its full length, the hand in quarte, until the point of the sabre is near the foot.

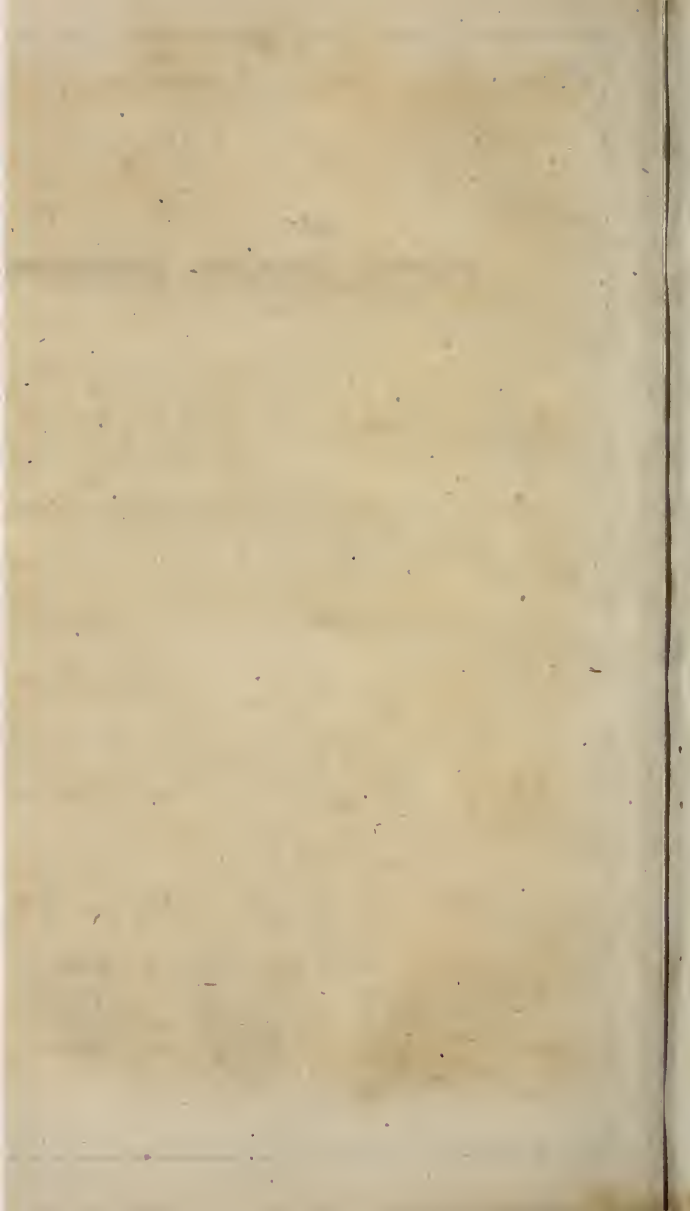
3. Raise the sabre quickly, the point upwards, as in the first time, after the person saluted has passed 4 paces.

4. Carry the sabre to the shoulder.

## THE ORDER OF BATTLE.

The order of battle for a regiment of ten squadrons, is the four right or left squadrons deployed in line; the four squadrons of the other flank in line of squadron columns 300 paces in rear of the first line. The 5th squadron, in column of platoons, generally left in front, is 50 paces behind the right flank of the first line, the line of its left guides being a platoon front to the right of the extremity of that flank; the 6th squadron, in column of platoons,





right in front, similarly disposed to the rear of the left flank of the first line.

If a squadron be absent, the second line will be composed of 3 squadrons, in columns immediately in rear of the first line; the 5th and 6th squadrons, counting from the flank which composes the first line, being always the flanking squadrons.

The lieutenant colonel commands the second line, and is posted 25 paces in front of its centre.

The order of battle for a regiment of eight squadrons is as follows:

The six right or left squadrons deployed in line; the 7th and 8th (or 1st and 2d) squadrons are posted in columns of platoons, in rear of the right and left flanks of the line of battle, as described for the flank squadrons of the regiment of ten squadrons.

In the order of battle, each field officer is attended by a trumpeter.

To change from line or order of review to order of battle in an eight squadron regiment, the 7th and 8th squadrons are wheeled by platoons (or by fours) to the right, and conducted by their captains by the shortest lines to their positions.

In a ten squadron regiment, the same for the 5th and 6th squadrons; the lieutenant colonel takes command of the next four squadrons, wheels platoons right, *column right*, and to the *left*, after marching the proper distance to the rear.

## ARTICLE SECOND.

### FORMATION OF A REGIMENT IN COLUMN.

#### *Order in Column by Twos or by Fours.*

In this order, the squadrons preserve distances of 3 paces more than platoon front, counting from the croups of the horses of the last set of fours of one, to the heads of the horses of the first set of the next.

The colonel marches at the centre of the regiment, on the side of the guides, 50 paces from the flank of the column, having behind him a chief bugler. He moves wherever his presence may be necessary.

The lieutenant colonel on the side of the guides, 25 paces from the flank of the column; he marches habitually on a line with the captain commanding the 1st squadron.

The major marches 25 paces from the same flank of the column, and on a line with the captain commanding the 10th squadron.

The adjutant and regimental quartermaster accompany the colonel.

The sergeant major marches on the side of the guides, 2 paces from the flank of the column, and on a line with the first files of the column.

The quartermaster sergeant marches on the side of the guides, 2 paces from the flank of the column, on a line with the last files of the column.

The regimental marker marches on the side opposite to the guides, 2 paces from the flank, and on a line with the first files of the column.

The captains march on the side of the guides, and 8 paces from the flank and abreast of the centre of their squadrons.

The 1st lieutenant of each squadron marches at the head of the 1st platoon, 1 pace in advance of the first files, having the right guide on his right.

The chiefs of the other platoons march on the side of the guides, 1 pace from the flank of the column, and abreast of their first files; the trumpeters march on the side opposite to the guides, 1 pace from the flank, and on a line with the second file from the front and rear of their squadrons; the farrier and the saddler in the direction of the trumpeters, and opposite the centres of the second and third platoons.

They all march in a similar manner on the flanks of the column when the left is in front; and, in this case,

it is the commander of the 4th platoon who marches at its head and in front of the squadron columns; and the major is near the head of the regimental column.

The left guide marches behind the last files of the squadron; when the column is left in front, he takes post on the left of the officer commanding the 4th platoon, 1 pace in front of the left file.

When the nature of the ground obliges the officers and others to enter the column, the movement is made successively; the superior officers and others opposite the 1st divisions of squadrons place themselves at their head; those opposite the 2d divisions, in rear.

The primitive order is resumed as soon as the nature of the ground will permit.

*Order in column of Platoons (open column).*

In this order the squadrons preserve distances of 2 platoon fronts, less one pace between each other, counting from the platoon horses; the distance of one platoon from another, measured from the forefeet of the horses of one platoon to those of the next, is equal to the front of the platoons.

The colonel marches at the centre of the regiment, on the side of the guides, 50 paces from the flank of the column, having behind him a chief trumpeter; he moves wherever his presence may be required.

The lieutenant-colonel marches habitually on the side of the guides, 25 paces from the flank of the column, and on a line with the lieutenant commanding the 2d platoon of the 1st squadron.

The major marches at the same distance from the same flank, on a line with the commander of the last platoon.

The adjutant and regimental quartermaster accompany the colonel.

The sergeant major marches on the side of the guides, 2 paces from the flank of the column, and abreast of the leading platoon.

The quartermaster sergeant marches on the side of the guides, 2 paces from the flank of the rear platoon.

The regimental marker marches one pace in rear of the second file of the leading platoon on the side of the guides:

The captains march on the side of the guides, 8 paces from the flank of the column, and habitually abreast of the centre of their squadrons.

The commanders of platoons march one pace in front of their centres; those of leading platoons are answerable for the distance to the squadron in front.

When the column marches right in front, the right guide of each squadron marches on the right of the 1st platoon, and the left guide one pace behind the 2d file from the left of the 4th platoon. The posts of these sergeants is the reverse when the left is in front.

The trumpeters, farrier and saddler march in rear of their platoons as in the squadron in line.

The squadron being composed of 64 files, when it is broken into sections, the chief of the leading platoon marches at the head of the leading section; the chiefs of the other platoons one pace from and on a line with their leading section, and on the side of the guides. The second sections will be commanded by their guides, who retain their places.

#### *Order in close Column.*

The regiment is in column of squadrons at platoon distance; the distances are equal at any one time, and never less than 9 paces (from the croups of the horses of one squadron to the heads of the horses of the next).

The colonel is posted 25 paces from the centre of the column, at the side of the guides.

The lieutenant-colonel and major march habitually on the side of the guides, 12 paces from the flanks of the first and last squadrons.

The sergeant major, quartermaster sergeant, and regimental marker, march as in column of platoons.



All the members of the squadrons are posted as in line except the captains, who march on the side of the guides, 4 paces from the flank, and on a line with the chiefs of the platoons.

When the guide is centre, "side of the guides" will mean the left flank of a column right in front; the right flank if left in front.

The order in open column of squadrons (or of attack) is the same as in close column, except the captains; they are posted as in line.

#### *Order in double Column.*

The colonel marches at the head of the column.

The lieutenant-colonel marches abreast the centre of the right column, 25 paces distant.

The major marches abreast the centre of the left column, 25 paces distant.

The captains of each column on the outer flanks.

The left squadron guides of the right column on the left of first platoons; the right squadron guides of the left column on the right of fourth platoons.

All others the same as in column of platoons.

#### COMPLIMENTS BY CAVALRY UNDER REVIEW.

The regiment being in line, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Prepare for Review.*

At this command, the commanders of platoons advance 3 paces, to the line of squadron commanders; the adjutant proceeds to the right of the regiment, and places himself 2 paces to the right of the sergeant major, who is on the right of the line without interval; the regimental quartermaster is 2 paces to the left of the quartermaster sergeant, who is on the left of the line without interval. The staff officers place themselves on the right of the rank of squadron officers, according to their relative rank, and with intervals of 1 pace.

The band and trumpeters on a line, each in one or two ranks, according to their strength—the band on the right—at the right of the regiment, with an interval of 12 paces.

The colonel then commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Draw*—SABRE.
3. *Right*—DRESS.
4. FRONT.

In this parade order, the regiment awaits the approach of the personage who is to review it; for whose guidance a camp-color will have been placed one hundred to two hundred paces in front of the centre, according to the extent of the line and the plain in front of it.

When the reviewing personage is midway between the camp-color and the colonel, the latter turns his horse to the right-about on his ground, and commands:

1. *Present*—SABRE.

And resumes immediately his proper front. The officers all salute.

When the reviewing personage, who has halted until the proper compliments are paid, advances, the colonel brings his sabre to a *carry*, turns about as before to the line, and commands:

1. *Carry*—SABRE.

When the whole line remains perfectly steady, the colonel resuming his proper front.

The reviewing personage now turns off to the right of the regiment, passes thence, in front of all the officers, to the left, around the left, and by the rear to the right again. While he is passing around the regiment, no matter what his rank, the music will play; and when he turns off to take his station near the camp-color, the music will cease.

The reviewing personage having taken a position near the camp-color, previously placed at a proper dis-

tance, the colonel causes the regiment to break into column right in front by platoon or squadron. The band and trumpeters, each wheel at the same time, the latter closing upon the former; (this will be the habitual formation of the music.)

The position of the colonel in column of review is 6 paces in front of the captain of the first squadron, or officer commanding the leading platoon; the adjutant and regimental quartermaster are on his left.

Staff officers in one rank, according to precedence, from right to left 6 paces in rear of the column.

The field officers are 6 paces from the flank opposite the guides; the lieutenant colonel opposite the leading division; the major that in rear.

The sergeant major and quartermaster sergeant 2 paces from the flank opposite the guides; the former opposite the leading division; the latter the rear.

In a column of platoons, the captains 4 paces from the flank opposite the guides, opposite the centres of their squadrons.

Chiefs of platoons 1 pace in advance of the centres of their platoons.

The column is then put in march, at a walk, with the guide right.

The adjutant places the regimental marker at the second turn, so that the right flank of the column shall pass 6 paces from the reviewing personage.

The column first passes at a walk, and afterward, if required, at a trot.

When the head of the column arrives within 50 paces of the reviewing personage, the music commences to play.

The music having passed, the chief bugler causes it to turn out of the column, so as to take a position facing the reviewing personage, and about 12 paces from the flank of the column. It continues to play until the rear of the column has passed; it then wheels, and follows in rear.

Passing at a walk, the colonel and all the officers

salute with the sabre as they successively arrive within 6 paces of the reviewing personage, turning the heads towards him.

The standard does not salute, except to the President or Vice President of the Confederate States, Governors of States, Heads of Departments, or General Officer; when the trumpets are to flourish in passing, the band ceases playing, and resumes the same air or march when the flourishes have ceased.

Arrived near its original ground, the colonel changes the guide of the column; *on* the ground, he halts it, and forms line; otherwise he commands the *trot*, and passes the reviewing officer again. In this case the band will have retained its place near the reviewing personage, and will commence to play at the approach of the head of the column, wheel in front of it, and thus march off.

The officers now do not salute; and the colonel marches on the left of the column.

The regiment being formed in line on its original ground—if an inspection is not to follow—the colonel marches the regiment forward in line, at the walk or trot, regulating upon the standard squadron, and halts it 50 yards from the reviewing personage. The instant the line is motionless, all the officers, taking their time from the colonel, salute with the sabre. This advance of the regiment is omitted when other troops are included.

When there are two or more regiments, the column being in motion, the regiments will take 60 paces distance one from another.

The brigadier general will place himself 10 paces in front of the leading colonel, his staff officers on his left; the music of that regiment 20 paces in front of the brigadier general.

The colonels do not leave their places in the column.

#### *Form and course of Inspection.*

The regiment being in line, the colonel causes the squadrons to wheel to the right.

The colonel seeing the squadrons aligned, commands:  
 1. *Officers and non-commissioned officers to the front of your squadrons.* 2. MARCH. The officers take places in one rank, 12 paces, and the non-commissioned officers in one rank, six paces in advance, along the whole front of their respective squadrons, in the order of rank, the highest on the right; the trumpeters at the same time take post on the alignment of the squadron, 6 paces from the right, and the farrier and saddler one pace on their left, and one pace apart.

Seeing the last order in a train of execution, the colonel commands: 1. *Field and Staff to the front.* 2. MARCH. The commissioned officers thus designated form themselves in one rank, 12 paces in front of the officers of the 1st squadrons, in the following order, beginning on the right: lieutenant-colonel, major, adjutant, quartermaster, surgeon, and assistant surgeon. The non-commissioned staff in a similar manner, 6 paces in rear of the preceding rank. The standard bearer will take post in the centre of this rank. The band is formed in one rank, 12 paces in rear of the column.

The colonel now takes post on the right of the lieutenant-colonel; but such of the field officers as may be superior in rank to the inspector do not take post as above.

The inspection commences in front. After inspecting the dress and general appearance of the field and commissioned staff, the inspector, accompanied by these officers, passes down the column, looking at each squadron in front and rear, with a view to the same objects. He afterwards, in a like manner, passes and inspects the arms; as he successively approaches each squadron, its captain commands

1. *Attention.*

2. *Inspection—ARMS,*

which is executed as prescribed, No. 72.

If, then, the inspector wishes to make a particular

inspection of equipage, ammunition, &c., the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Non-commissioned officers*--TO YOUR POSTS.
3. PREPARE TO DISMOUNT.
4. DISMOUNT.

At the third command numbers one and three, throughout the squadrons, ride forward 6 paces, dressing by the right; the trumpeters move forward with the numbers one and three, and take position in front of the farrier and saddler, who stand fast.

The regiment being dismounted, the non-commissioned staff without changing position, the captains command: 1. *Right*--DRESS. 2. FRONT. The ranks in front and rear carefully preserve the interval between the files.

The inspector having inspected the non-commissioned staff, the captains, as he approaches each squadron, command: 1. *Attention.* 2. *Open*--BOXES.

As the inspection of each squadron is completed, the colonel may dismiss it from the parade; two platoons escorting the standard.

---

## ARTICLE THIRD.

### DUTIES OF INSTRUCTORS.

The colonel is responsible for the instruction of the regiment, and he shall not change, under any pretext, the dispositions contained in this book.

He will be present, as often as his other duties permit, at the theoretical and practical instructions, and especially at that of the officers assembled together.

The lieutenant-colonel and major are especially charged with the supervision of the instruction of their respective wings.

Individual instruction being the basis of the instruction of squadrons, on which that of a regiment depends, and the first principles having the greatest influence upon this individual instruction, the classes of recruits should be watched with the greatest care.

The instructors place themselves habitually at such a distance that they can see their whole troop at a glance, and make themselves distinctly heard by it. They leave their places as seldom as possible, and only to make the corrections which are indispensable in the position of the men and the execution of the movements.

They repeat, in a few clear and precise words, the explanations which have not been well understood.

They should often join example to precept, should keep up the attention of the men by an animated tone, and pass to another movement as soon as that which they command has been executed in a satisfactory manner. They should not be too exacting at first as to precision and unity.

The instructor should sometimes question the men, to test their attention to his words; and when at rest, to satisfy himself that the lesson is well understood.

---

#### ARTICLE FOURTH.

#### DIVISION, ORDER, AND PROGRESSION OF INSTRUCTION.

As instruction cannot be established on a solid basis without joining theory to practice, there is in each regiment a theoretical instruction, independent of the exercises in the field.

The colonel assembles the officers once a week, or oftener, if he deem it necessary, for the theory of the different parts of their instruction.

The captains assemble, in a like manner, their ser-

geants and corporals; a selection of privates is included.

### *Instruction.*

Each drill lasts one hour and ten minutes, including the rests; these should not exceed two minutes at a time.

The horses of the trumpeters should not be excused from participating in the different classes of instruction.

All the horses must be exercised at least three times a week.

During the summer, and until the end of October, the regiment is exercised occasionally in the details of the service in war. For this purpose the colonel takes the regiment into the country, in order to accustom it to pass over all kinds of ground, and to apply the evolutions to the different localities.

On these, and on other occasions, the colonel will practice all the officers of the regiment in judging distances; it is a point of much importance in the education of a cavalry officer.

When the regiment is assembled, the colonel should direct the superior officers to command, occasionally, in the different evolutions, in order to judge of the progress of their instruction.

---

## ARTICLE FIFTH.

### GRADATION OF INSTRUCTION.

#### *Recruits.*

The recruit commences his instruction on foot. The first week after his arrival at the regiment is employed exclusively in instructing him in all the details of discipline, police, and interior service, and in those relating to his dress and the grooming of his horse.



He is taught to mount without saddle on both sides of the horse.

He is taught the name and use of the principal parts of the arms and equipments, and the manner of keeping them clean; the manner of rolling the cloak, of folding the effects, and of placing them in the valise.

These different instructions are given by the corporal of the squad, under the superintendence of the sergeant and officer of the platoon.

At the end of this week, the recruit commences the first lesson on foot; he continues to be instructed in the above mentioned details.

The recruits are drilled on foot twice a day, when possible, an hour each time. Their instruction on horseback is commenced at the same time with the sabre exercise.

#### *Corporals.*

The corporals should be capable of executing all the lessons mounted and dismounted, and should be qualified to teach the *school of the trooper dismounted*, and at least four lessons mounted.

Their theoretical instruction should include, in addition to these lessons, all the details relative to the functions of their grade in the interior service, both in garrison and in campaign.

#### *Sergeants.*

The sergeants should be capable of executing, dismounted and mounted, all that is prescribed by this book; and should be able to teach the lessons of the *school of the trooper*, and to command a platoon in the *school of the squadron mounted*.

The theoretical instruction of the sergeants should include the *basis of instruction*, the *school of the trooper*, the *school of the platoon*, and the *school of the squadron*; also, the regulations for the interior service in garrison and in campaign, so far as their grade is concerned.

*Officers.*

Every officer should be at least able to command according to his rank. No one will be considered fully instructed unless he can also explain and execute all that is contained in this book.

The *theory* of the officers should include this book and all the regulations which prescribe their duties in their different positions, either in peace or war.

If the faults committed on drill by an officer, of any rank whatsoever, arise from negligence or want of instruction, the colonel of the regiment shall cause him to be immediately replaced.

## ARTICLE SIXTH.

INSTRUCTION TO MOUNT WITHOUT SADDLE,  
AND TO SADDLE.*Manner of Vaulting.*

Seize the mane with the left hand, hold the reins of the snaffle in the right hand, and place it on the withers, the thumb to the left, the fingers to the right; raise yourself by a spring on the two wrists, the body straight, pass the right leg extended over the croup of the horse, without touching him, and seat yourself on his back.

*To dismount*, pass the left rein of the snaffle into the right hand; place this hand on the withers; seize the mane with the left hand, raise yourself on the two wrists, pass the right leg extended over the croup of the horse, without touching him, bringing the legs together, the body straight, and come to the ground lightly on the toes, bending the knees a little.

*Manner of Rolling the Cloak.*

The cloak being entirely unfolded, the sleeves are laid flat and extended parallel to the two front edges of the cloak; each one is then turned up and folded near the elbow, so as to give a length of 3 feet 6 inches from one elbow to the other, the middle of the cloak remaining uncovered. The cape is then turned down over the sleeves, in such a manner that the front edges may exactly cover those of the cloak.

The lower extremity of the cloak is turned up about 10 inches; the skirts are likewise turned towards each other, so that they may touch the fold of the sleeves, and that, being folded a second time upon themselves, they may give to the cloak the form of a rectangle; the lower extremity of the cloak is then turned up about 7 inches, and it is rolled as tightly as possible, commencing at the collar and pressing the knee upon it as it is rolled, to hold it. The part of the cloak which is rolled is then introduced into the sort of pocket formed by the part which was turned back.

*Manner of Saddling.*

Approach the horse on the left side, and lay the blanket, folded into six thicknesses, on his back; the edges on the left side.

Seize it, then, with the left hand on the withers, and with the right on the loins; slide it once or twice from front to rear, to smooth the hair, taking care to raise it in carrying it forward, so as not to brush up the hair.

The blanket should be so arranged as to project one finger's breadth beyond the bars in rear.

Seize the saddle at the pommel with the left hand, at the cantle with the right hand, and place it gently on the horse's back, bringing it from the direction of his croup, in order not to frighten him, and place it a little in rear, that the crupper may be put on without drawing it back. Let down the girth, breaststrap, and crupper; step behind the horse, seize the tail with the left

hand, and twist the hair around the dock with the right, which then seizes the crupper and passes the tail through it, taking care that none of the hair remains under it, which would hurt the horse.

Step to the right side of the horse, and, seizing the saddle at the cantle with the left hand, and at the pommel with the right hand, raise it and carry it forward, without moving the blanket; see, at the same time, that there are no straps caught under the saddle; place the girth flat, and pass it through the loop of the false martingale; return to the left side by the head of the horse; run the left hand between the withers and the blanket; raise the blanket up a little, so that it will not compress the withers; buckle the girth and the breaststrap.

---

## ARTICLE SEVENTH.

### OF TRAINING HORSES WHICH HAVE BEEN ALREADY RIDDEN.

Whenever a horse resists or is restive without an apparent cause, the saddlery should be carefully examined in order to see if any part hurts or tickles him. Mere force, and want of skill and coolness, tend to confirm vice and bad habits. Resistance in horses is often a work of vigor, and proceeds from high spirits; punishment would turn it into vice.

Rearing is a bad and dangerous habit; while the horse is up, the rider must yield the hand, and at the time he is coming down must vigorously determine him forward; if this is done at any other time, it may add a spring to his rearing, and make him come over. If this fail, he must be whipped by a person from behind.

Kicking can be prevented by holding the horse's head well up and closing the legs,—if necessary, forcing him forward.

*Starting* sometimes proceeds from defect of sight; which, if only in one eye, can easily be ascertained. If from fear, the horse must be taken up to the object with great patience and gentleness, and be allowed to touch it with his lip. *In no case should a horse be punished for timidity.* The dread of chastisement will increase his fear of the object. But if a horse persistently turns back, he must be punished; always, however, while his head is away from the object. Finding that he only suffers while he is turned back, and his head is away, he will desist.

If a horse turns against a fence, and leans to it, turn his head *to* it, and not from it.

---

## PREPARATORY LESSON.

*To make a horse tractable and steady at Mounting.*

A first act of subjection, which may appear of little importance, will prove of great service; it makes the horse quiet, gives him confidence, and the man such ascendancy that the horse from the outset is inclined to yield to the means employed to bring him under control. Two lessons of half an hour will suffice to execute this.

Go up to the horse, pat him on the neck, and speak to him; then taking the bit reins at a few inches from the rings with the left hand, place yourself so as to offer as much resistance as possible to the horse when he tries to break away; take the whip in the full of the right hand, with the point down, raise it quietly and tap the horse on the breast; on this he will naturally try to escape from the annoyance, and back to avoid

the whip; follow the horse, pulling at the same time against him, but without discontinuing the whip in the same quiet way, showing no signs of anger or any symptoms of yielding. The horse, soon tired of trying ineffectually to avoid the infliction by pulling back, will move towards you; you must then stop and make much of him. This repeated once or twice will prove wonderfully successful, even in the first lesson. The horse, having found out how to avoid the punishment, will not wait for the application of the whip, but anticipate it, by moving up at the slightest gesture; this will be of great assistance in the subsequent bending lessons, as also of great use in mounting and dismounting, and much accelerate the training of the horse.

*To bend or supple the Horse's neck.*

The balance of the horse's body and his lightness in hand depend on the proper carriage of the head and neck, and to these two points attention must first, and chiefly, be directed. They should always precede and prepare the horse by their attitude for every movement about to be executed; and the rider has little power over the animal until he has rendered both these points susceptible of every impulse communicated by him.

The horses, with the curb bridle on, are formed in line, at two paces apart, their riders standing at their heads, preparatory to the first bending lesson with the bit.

A young horse generally attempts to resist the bit, either by bending his neck to a side, setting his jaw against it, carrying his nose high up, or low down; We must therefore render him manageable by teaching him to bring his head to position, and arching his neck on the reins being felt. And it will be found in a short time that horses that required the whole strength of a man's arm to make them obey the action of the bit will bend to the slightest feeling of the reins; for, finding that they cannot resist the power of the bit, used in the manner hereafter shown, their instinct will teach them

to obey, and habit accustom them to the impulse received from the rider.

As a general rule, in all the ensuing bending lessons, when a horse champs the bit, it is a sign that he no longer resists the action of the hand; then make much of him, and allow him to resume his natural position. It is of the utmost importance that the horse never be allowed to take the initiative. Always oppose the raising of the horse's head—always lower your hands and bring it down.

See that the bit is properly placed in the horse's mouth, and the curb-chain so that you can pass your finger under it, place yourself on the near side, close to the horse's neck and facing his head, the feet a little apart to give you more power.

Take the off bit rein in the full of the right hand, close up, with the ring of the bit between the forefinger and thumb; the near rein in the same way with the left hand, thumb nails toward each other, and the little fingers outwards; bring the right hand towards the body, extending the left one from you at the same time, so as to turn the horse's head to the right. The strength employed must be gradual, and proportioned to the resistance met with, taking care at first not to bring the horse's nose too much in, or too close to his chest, which would make the bend very difficult; if the horse backs, continue the pressure until he, finding it impossible to escape from the restraint imposed upon him by the bit held thus crossways in his mouth, stands still and yields to it.

When the bend is complete, the horse will hold his head there without any restraint, and champ the bit; then make much of him, and allow him to resume gently his natural position, but not to throw his head round hurriedly. Practice this in the same manner to the left.

This lesson not only teaches the horse to follow the indication of the rein to both hands, but also to yield his under jaw to the pressure of the bit, the advantage.

of which will soon become apparent. And now, before mounting, prepare the horses to *rein in*.

For this purpose cross the snaffle reins behind the horse's jaw, taking the near rein in the right hand, and the off rein in the left, at about six inches from the ring, and draw them across each other till the horse gives way to the pressure and "reins in." Do not forget to oppose the raising of the horse's head by lowering your hands and bringing it down again. When the horse gives way to the cross pressure of the snaffle, ease your hand and make much of him.

The instructor now orders the men to mount, and then to bend the horses' heads to the right and left. The reins being properly adjusted in the left hand to bend the horse's head to the *right*, seize the right rein with the right hand well down, so as to have the reins short on the off side. Then draw them quietly towards you till you get the horse's head completely round to the right, in the same position as in the bend dismounted. When the horse champs the bit make much of him, and allow him to resume his natural position.

When bending the horse's head to the left, pass the right hand over the left one, seize the left rein and draw the horse's head gently to the left.

Next teach the horse to rein up, arch his neck, bring his nose into proper position, and there remain steady until the rider loosens the reins. At the word, *rein in your horses*, lower the bridle hand as much as possible, and turn it so that the back shall be uppermost; with the right hand—nails down—take hold of the curb reins close to the left, and shorten them by degrees, drawing them through the left, which closes on the reins each time they are shortened.

When the horse resists much, and holds his nose up, keep the reins steady; do not shorten them, nor lengthen them; close the legs to prevent the horse from backing; he will remain perhaps a minute, or more, with his nose up, and his jaw set against the bit, but will then yield, bring his nose in and champ the bit; make much of him



with the right hand, loosen the reins, and, after a few seconds, *rein him in* again.

The horse will thus learn to bring his head into position whenever you feel the reins, and this practice gives him confidence; for most young horses are afraid of the bit, and if frightened at first by any sudden jerk of the reins will not after go kindly "up to the hand," or let you have that degree of bearing which is requisite not only to the rider, as it forewarns him of what the horse is going to do, and whether he requires more collecting (which he does, if the bearing on the hand is too heavy,) or more freedom, (which is requisite if the horse rises too much in his action,) but is also necessary to induce the horse to work boldly and well.

Some horses are so shaped that they overdo the *reining in*, and rest the lower jaw against the breast; to counteract this, raise his head, by the use of the snaffle, whilst the leg drives him forward to the hand.

Some horses will not work up to the bit; that is, will not bear on it at all. Such a horse is unfit for cavalry duty; his paces can never be equal and steady; and in a melee or single combat he could turn to either side, or stop and go about, before his rider could prevent him.

*How to teach a horse to obey the pressure of the leg.*

On the word of command, *circle to the right on the fore hand*, the horse's head remains straight to the front; apply the left leg well behind the girth very quietly, and without touching with the spur; press against him until he takes a step to the right with his hind legs; take the leg from him, and make much of him; then repeat the same, and get another step from him, and so on until he has turned about, always pausing at the half turn. The horse's fore legs remain steady, and his hind quarters circle round his fore. At first the men may, if necessary, assist themselves by feeling the rein on the same side, and touching the horse very lightly with the whip close to where the leg is applied. The spur may also be used if necessary, with a sudden and somewhat

decided thrust; but not frequently, and never with a steady pressure, for, instead of yielding to it, the horse will soon begin to press against it.

*Circle to the left on the fore hand* on the same principle. It must be an invariable rule never to hurry a horse in his bending lessons.

By degrees, as the horse improves in this lesson and steps freely from the pressure of the leg, let the rider, at the word; *circle to the right on the fore hand*, pass the right hand down, shortening the off rein, and bend the horse's head a little to the right, so that he may see his hind quarters coming round; apply the left leg as usual; should the horse not answer the pressure, use the reins on the same side with the leg, and resume the opposite rein the moment the horse yields.

All this must be done gradually, for if you bend the horse's head round as far as it can go, and attempt thus to circle him the first time, he will resist, finding it too difficult; but if done by degrees, he will soon come to it.

The leg opposite the one which presses the hind quarters to circle round the fore must be kept close to the horse, to assist in keeping him in his place, by communicating a forward impulse, whilst the other leg communicates the impulse, which makes the horse step from right to left, or left to right; and in order that the pressure of the one shall not counteract the effect of the other, the leg applied to make the horse step to either hand should be further behind the girth than the leg used to keep him up to hand. Both legs should be close to the horse at all times, the pressure on either side being increased as occasion requires.

At first dismounted men are useful with the unsteady horses, by taking hold of the curb reins on the opposite side to that which the horse is to step to, and thus assisting the rider, who then only uses the snaffle; but all extraneous assistance should be as much as possible avoided.

The instructor now exercises the horses in the riding house, trotting out to both hands. The bits should not

be used much the first few days; but the horses brought by degrees to bear *slightly* on it. Ride them in the circles; trot them at a collected pace; walk and trot again; walk, halt, and make the men bend their horses to the hand they are working to.

Explain to the men that the horse's head and neck must always be bent the way he is to go, and prepare the animal by their attitude for all turns, circles, &c.; and whenever they feel the curb reins, and the horse does not yield to them, let them keep the bridle hand steady, and play with the snaffle rein until the horse champs the bit. The snaffle should be continually used to prevent the horse from leaning on the hand.

Go through the bending lessons on foot and mounted, and then file home.

No lesson with young horses should exceed three-quarters of an hour.

### CIRCLING ON THE HAUNCHES.

A few minutes being devoted to the dismounted bending lessons, mount and begin by reining the horses in, bending them, and circling them to the right and left on the fore hand; this being done once or twice, proceed to the *circling on the haunches*.

By circling the horse on the fore hand we have taught him, on applying the leg, to move his haunches to either hand; and as he has thus learnt to obey the leg, we can, by making use of it, prevent him from moving his hind legs to the right or left; therefore he will now be taught to circle on them, and in a few lessons he will be led to go completely round on his haunches, and thus in time perform the pirouette—a very important accomplishment for the cavalry soldier; for when engaged, sword in hand, with an enemy, he can turn his horse right and left, and about, in an instant, and thus gain the advantage over his antagonist. In a contest on horseback, it is not the strongest, but the most skillful rider who is likely to be victorious.

At the command, *On the haunches, right about*, bend the horse's head a little to the right with the bit, pass the right hand over, and take hold the near snaffle rein (not only as an assistance to the horse, but to make the men sensible of the necessity of using the outward rein in these movements; when the horse is broken in it will be sufficient to carry the bridle hand to the side you wish to turn to), apply the left leg behind the girth to keep the haunches steady; at the word *March*, make the horse step to the right with his fore feet, turning on his hind feet, by feeling the left snaffle rein, bringing both hands a little to the right at the same time, and applying the left leg, while keeping the horse up to the hand with the right leg.

At first the horse must be halted and made much of three or four times during each turn, and if his haunches are thrown out, they must be brought back again by applying the left leg; and thus gradually led on, the horse will learn to go about to both hands on his haunches, without touching the ground with his fore feet.

Go through the trotting lesson, then form up and repeat the bending lessons on foot and mounted.

### REINING BACK.

In reining back, the horse must be well in hand and well balanced; he can then make an equal use of all four legs and raise them equally from the ground. Before reining back the horse should be square to the front, his head home, and light in hand; then apply both legs, retaining a steady feel of both reins to make the horse lift one of his hind legs. It is at this moment that a double feeling of both reins will oblige him to recover his balance by stepping backwards. Place him straight to the front by bringing his haunches to the right or left as may be required; then give him his head, and make much of him.

At first a few steps backward is all that should be required of a horse; if he bring his hind legs too much

under him, ease the hand and apply both legs to make him regain his balance forward; and for this reason always use the legs first, and then feel the reins; because if you feel the reins first, the horse throws his weight back; and the more weight he throws on his hind legs, the less able he is to lift them, which is a necessary preliminary to stepping back.

The horse should never be allowed to hurry, or run back out of hand, or to diverge from the straight line.

The squad must be frequently halted during the walking, trotting and bending lessons, to practice the *reining back*; and independently of the dressing, until all the horses rein back well.

Attention must now be directed to making the men keep their horses well up to the bit, and putting them together with the use of the hand and leg; to see that in all turns, circles, &c., the men bend their horses' heads and necks in the new direction before leaving the side of the horse. Endeavor to make them perfect in their bending and trotting lessons; practice the *going about on the haunches* by frequently halting at the side, and giving the word, *On the haunches about, march.*

## THE HORSE'S PACES.

### *Walk, Trot, and Canter.*

Before moving forward the horse should be light in hand, the head brought home (not with the nose stuck out), the neck arched, and he should stand evenly on both hind legs.

Close the legs and communicate a sufficient impulse to carry him forward without giving the hand; for if you do, the head and neck may relapse into a position which will defy the control of the hand.

The rider should always have a light feeling of the reins; and when the horse bears hard on the bit, keep the hand steady, use both legs, which, by bringing his haunches under him, will oblige the horse to take his weight off your hand.

It is necessary, in order to make the horse handy, to exercise him at *trotting out*; but it is not enough that he should trot fast; the quickness of the pace should not detract from his lightness in hand, or the ease with which he should be capable of answering all indications of the hand and leg.

The hand must be constantly at work to retain the head and neck in their proper position without counteracting the forward impulse communicated by the leg; thus the horse will acquire regularity of pace, increased speed, and that safety which is natural to a horse well balanced and light in hand.

The canter is a repetition of bounds, during which the fore hand rises first, and higher than the hind quarters.

The horse being properly placed, light in hand and well balanced, throw his weight from the fore hand towards the haunches, (by increasing the pressure of the legs and restraining him with the reins) and, according to the hand you wish to strike off to, throw the weight of the horse to the opposite side; that is, if he is to lead off with the off fore followed by the off hind, (or canter to the right) throw the weight to his near side. This is done by pulling both reins equally to the left and closing the right leg; the horse's head remaining placed to the right, and the left leg preventing him from throwing out his haunches. The horse's off legs are thus at liberty, and the forward impulse obliges him to use them; he could not do otherwise without difficulty.

Cantering to the right, if the left fore leg leads, the horse canters false. To rectify this, feel both reins to the left, in order to bring his weight towards that side—the horse's head remaining bent to the right—and close firmly the left leg, to bring his haunches in again.

Teach the horse to strike off on the *circê* first, then on the straight line. After that, try him at changing leg.

At this stage, when circling on the fore hand, stop the horse with the inward leg and outward rein at each step; make a pause, feel both reins, close both legs, and press him up to the hand; ease the rein and leg, take

another step with the haunches, stop him again, "rein him in," and close your legs. This is very useful; it prevents the horse from getting into a habit of running round with his haunches; it makes him obedient, as it teaches him not to yield to habit, but to trust to the rider's hand and leg alone for guidance; and *it accustoms him to collect himself at all times*, and thus he is always ready. It is very important.

Before moving off the ground give the word, *Rein in your horses*; caution the men to close their legs to their horses' sides, and to bring the spurs close, without touching them. Give the word, *Spur*; the left hand is held steadily down, and the spur applied on both sides, very gently at first; the horse should not move from his ground, but merely arch his neck. This must be repeated two or three times, always quieting the horse after the spur has been given.

Repeat this at intervals.

The *reining back* is to be practiced often. Be careful that the men apply the legs first, and then feel the reins, to make the horses step back. See that they sit upright in their saddles; do not hurry, and be satisfied with one step at a time.

### *Demi-pirouette.*

Halt the squad, riding in file, on the side of the riding house, and give the command, *On the haunches, about*; at this caution the rider must throw the horse's weight from the forehand to the haunches, by closing the legs and restraining him with the reins; at the command **MARCH**, given almost immediately, he must carry the reins decidedly to the side to which the turn is to be made, and close firmly the opposite leg, to prevent the horse from throwing around his haunches, and force him to turn on his hind legs. When the *about* is completed, the horses should be squared and made much of before they are put about again.

Canter on the circle to both hands, striking off from

a walk, and frequently bring them to a walk without allowing them to fall first into a trot.

These lessons will require at least thirty days, with at least one lesson a day.

*Manner of accustoming the Horse to Leap.*

The ditch is leaped before the bar. The horses are led at first with a horse accustomed to the exercise in front. The snaffle must be used. If necessary, the horse must be urged by a whip from behind. A low fence is preferable to the bar; and the horse should not be leaped often back and forward over the same thing, or at the same place.

*To accustom Horses to Military Noises and Firing.*

The horse, broken to obedience to the hand and legs, can be brought to face most things with little trouble. Encouraged gradually to approach anything which he fears, as a drum being beaten, until he feels it with his lip, he will then cease to be alarmed. The field music should be practised at the exercise grounds or riding house.

A few trained horses are mixed with the new ones, and towards the close of the lesson separated a little; and the troopers who ride them fire their pistols, the riding being continued without change.

If the horses become much excited, discontinue the firing until they become calm.

In firing from the horse's back, the pistol should at first be held vertically.

Especial care should be taken not to alter the feel of the horse's mouth when firing, or suddenly to close the legs; the rider being cool and quiet, the horse will soon follow the example.

In all lessons, if one or more horses are so restless or unmanageable as to excite and throw the others into confusion, they should be sent off and separately dealt



with; they require more pains, and much caressing and other encouragement.

When the horses are accustomed to the firing, they are formed at the end of the riding ground and marched abreast slowly toward a party of dismounted men placed at the other end; these fire several volleys, until the horses are within forty or fifty yards, when the firing ceases; the horses are ridden steadily on until they reach the men; they are then stopped and caressed.

Young horses are in like manner accustomed to the manual of arms, waving of flags, music, &c.

### *Practice of Paces for Manœuvre.*

The remount horses must now be carefully practised, as all the regimental horses must be, at the paces of manœuvre.

Nothing can be more important to the regularity and order, and often the success, of large bodies of cavalry, than uniformity in the gaits. The walk should be at the rate of three and three-fourths miles an hour, the trot seven and a half miles an hour, and the gallop ten miles an hour. To confirm the horses in these uniform rates, measure off a half mile and practice the horses to walk it in eight minutes, trot it in four minutes, and gallop it in three minutes.

## ARTICLE EIGHTH.

### DEFINITIONS AND GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

A **RANK** is composed of men abreast of each other.

A **FILE** is a man in rank; or two or more men, one behind another in ranks.

**FRONT** is the direction perpendicular to the alignment of a body of troops and before it, either in column or in line.

**CENTRE** is the middle of such a body.

WINGS are the two grand divisions into which a regiment, or an army, is divided, when in line.

FLANK is the right or left side of a column, or line.

INTERVAL is the vacant space between two bodies of troops, or between files.

The interval between two troopers in rank is 4 inches from knee to knee.

DISTANCE is the vacant space between any two subdivisions in column.

When a body of troops is formed in column of platoons; the distances prescribed are measured from the fore feet of the horses of one rank to the fore feet of the horses of another rank.

DEPTH is the space included between the head and rear of a column.

The depth of a regiment in close column is about equal to a platoon front multiplied by the number of squadrons.

To estimate the front of a troop, and the depth of a column, it is necessary to know that a horse, when mounted, occupies in breadth one yard. The length of a horse is considered three yards.

By the CROUP is always meant the rear extremity of the horse.

ALIGNMENT is the placing of men, or troops, on the same line.

When a body of troops is to form and align itself on another, it halts one horse's length in rear of the line of formation.

A COLUMN is the disposition of a body of troops in subdivisions, one behind another.

OPEN COLUMN is formed of subdivisions, having between them the distance necessary to form in line in every way, being generally of platoons, the column of manœuvre. That column is distinguished by the name, Open Column.

CLOSE COLUMN is formed of squadrons, with a distance

of platoon front from one to another. The object of this disposition is to give the least possible depth to the column.

DOUBLE COLUMN is formed by the advance from the centre of a line, by platoons at wheeling distance, the right wing left in front, the left wing right in front; the two columns preserving an interval between their flanks.

POINTS OF DIRECTION serve to point out the direction in which a troop in line, or in column, is to march; or else to mark the right and left of a line.

INTERMEDIATE POINTS are those taken between the fixed points. They are used to preserve the direction during the march, or to insure the rectitude of the formation of the lines.

The two sergeants on the flanks, who are not counted in the rank, are the right guide and left guide of their respective squadrons.

In the oblique march the guide is on the side towards which the march is made; and when the primitive direction is resumed, after having obliqued, the guide is where it was before having obliqued.

In a column composed of cavalry and infantry, the guides of the cavalry cover the second file of the subdivisions of infantry on the side of the guides. In line, the officers who are in front of the squadrons align themselves on the rear rank of the infantry.

WHEEL is a circular movement executed by a body of troops in line; each of the men describes the arc of a circle, larger in proportion to his distance from the pivot.

ABOUT FACE, or WHEEL, is to face or wheel so as to reverse the front.

RIGHT, or LEFT FACE, is to face at right angles to the former front.

RIGHT HALF, or LEFT HALF FACE, or WHEEL, is a wheel of 45 degrees.

PIVOT is the man of the flank on which the wheel is

made; there are two kinds, the *fixed pivot* and the *movable pivot*.

The pivot is *fixed* whenever he turns upon himself; it is *movable* when he describes an arc of a circle.

The arc of a circle described by the pivot of a rank of two, of four, of eight, or of a platoon making the fourth of a wheel, is 5 yards; and for a squadron it is 20 yards.

PLÓYMENT is the movement by which a regiment forms from line into close column.

DEPLOYMENT is the movement by which a regiment forms from close column into line.

FORMATION is the regular placing of all the fractions of a body of troops in any prescribed order.

PACES: There are three kinds; the *walk*, the *trot*, and the *gallop*.

On foot there are three kinds of step; the *common step*, the *quick step*, and the *double-quick step*.

On foot the movements are executed habitually at the *quick step*, without the command being given. When they are to be executed at the *common step*, or *double-quick*, the command should signify it.

The pace, when used as a measure, is 3 feet.

On foot the common step is at the rate of 90 per minute; the quick step is at the rate of 110 per minute; the double-quick step is at the rate of 165 per minute.

The DIRECT MARCH is that which is executed by troops in line or in column, to move off perpendicularly to their alignment.

The MARCH BY A FLANK is that by which ground is gained to the right or left, after having made the fourth of a wheel.

The OBLIQUE MARCH is that by which, when moving forward, ground is gained towards one of the flanks without changing the front. There are two kinds, the *individual oblique march*, and the *oblique march by troop*.

The *individual oblique march* is that which is executed by an individual movement of each man.

The *oblique march by troop* is that which is executed by the movement, at the same time, of each of the subdivisions of a troop in line.

COUNTERMARCH is a movement by which the men of a rank march to form themselves facing the rear, parallel to the first formation.

The CHARGE is a direct and impetuous march, the object of which is to strike the enemy.

SKIRMISHERS are men dispersed in front, in rear, or on the flanks of a troop, to cover its movements or its position.

OBSTACLE is anything in the nature of the ground which obliges troops in line to ploy a part of their front.

DEFILE is a passage which compels a line to ploy into column, or a column to diminish its front.

EVOLUTIONS are the regular movements by which a regiment passes from one order to another.

*Evolutions of the line* are these same movements executed by several regiments. Their application, combined with the position or movements of the enemy, is called *manœuvres*.

COMMANDS: There are three kinds:

The command of *caution*, which is "Attention." It is the signal to preserve immobility and to give attention.

The *preparatory command*. It indicates the movement which is to be executed.

The command of *execution*, at which the action is commenced.

The tone of command should be animated, distinct, and of a loudness proportioned to the troop which is commanded.

Preparatory commands should be uttered with all possible distinctness.

In commands of execution articulation is not so necessary; but they should be prolonged, because the move-

ment which is to follow them being communicated from the man to the horse, all jerking or abruptness is thereby avoided; and they will be better heard amid the noise of cavalry in motion.

In the manual of arms, the part of the command which causes an execution should be pronounced in a firm and brief tone.

The command of caution, and the preparatory commands, are distinguished by *italics*; those of execution, by CAPITALS.

A TIME is one of the parts into which an action is divided to facilitate the instruction and execution. A *motion* is a further subdivision with the same object.

## ARTICLE NINTH.

(The book of signals is at the end of the work.)

1. The general.
2. Boots and saddles.
3. To horse.
4. The assembly.
5. To arms.
6. To the standard.
7. The march. (It also answers for a quick step on foot.)
8. The charge.
9. The rally.
10. Reveille.
11. Stable call.
12. Watering call.
13. Breakfast call.
14. Assembly of the guard.
15. Orders for the orderly sergeant.
16. Assembly of the trumpeters.
17. Retreat.
18. Fatigue call.
19. Dinner call.
20. Distributions.
21. Drill call.

22. Officer's call.
23. The recall.
24. Sick call.
25. Tattoo.
26. To extinguish lights.

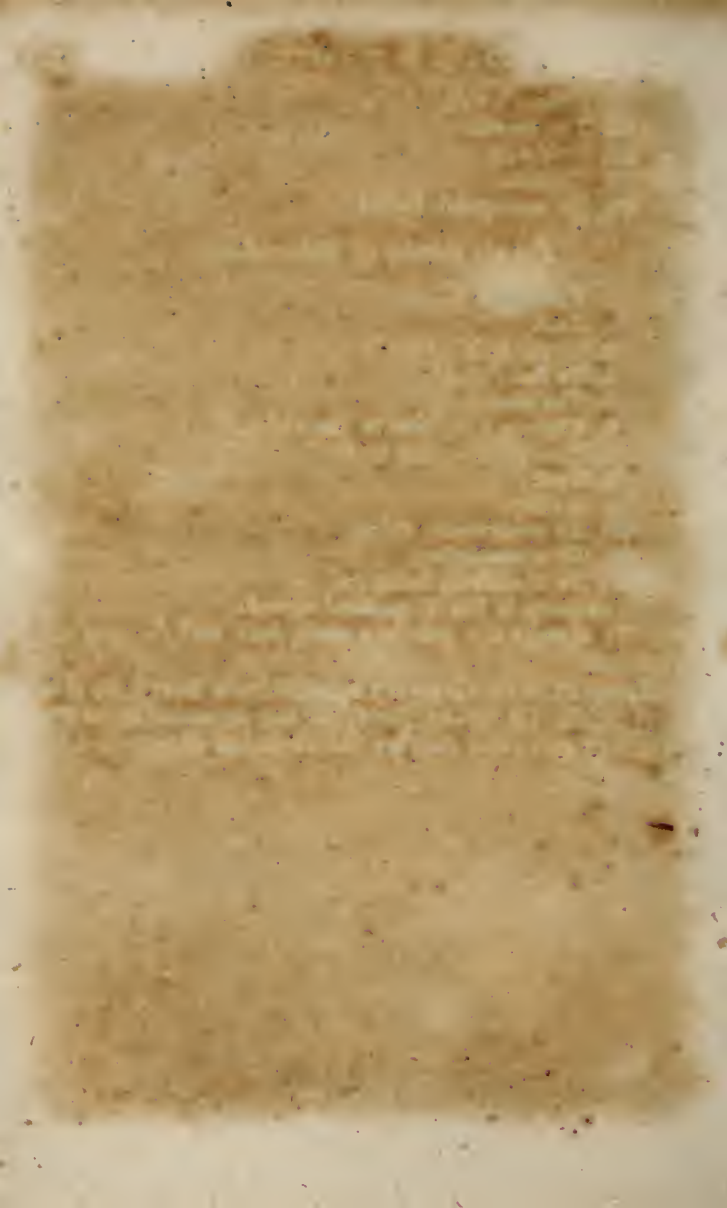
*For the Service of Skirmishers.*

1. Forward.
2. Halt.
3. To the left.
4. To the right.
5. The about.
6. Change direction to the right.
7. Change direction to the left.
8. Trot.
9. Gallop.
10. To commence firing.
11. To cease firing.
12. To charge as foragers.

The rally is No. 9, general signals.

To change the gait to a *walk*, *halt* and *forward* are sounded.

NOTE.—The recall serves to withdraw troops, so that they rejoin the main body, or the commander, at the ordinary gait; and also for the cessation of exercises.





## TITLE SECOND.

---

### INSTRUCTION ON FOOT.

---

#### SCHOOL OF THE TROOPER, DISMOUNTED.

1.—The object of this school being the individual and progressive instruction of the recruits, the instructor does not require a movement to be executed until he has given an exact explanation of it; and he executes himself the movement which he commands, so as to join example to precept. He accustoms the recruit to take by himself the position which is explained, teaches him to rectify it only when required by his want of intelligence, and sees that all the movements are performed without precipitation.

Each movement should be perfectly understood before passing to another. After they have been properly executed in the order laid down in each lesson, the instructor no longer confines himself to that order; on the contrary, he should change it, that he may judge of the intelligence of the men.

2.—The instructor allows the men to rest two or three times in the hour; for this purpose he commands, **REST.**

At the command **REST** the trooper is no longer required to preserve immobility, but will keep his left heel in its place.

3.—When the instructor wishes to commence the instruction, he commands, **ATTENTION**; at this command

the trooper takes his position, remains motionless, and fixes his attention.

4.—The first principles of the position, and those of the march, are taught to each man individually, or, at most, to eight at a time. In the latter case they are placed on the same line, one yard from each other, without being required to align themselves.

### POSITION OF THE TROOPER DISMOUNTED.

5.—The heels on the same line as near each other as the conformation of the man will permit;

The feet turned out equally, and forming with each other something less than a right angle;

The knees straight without stiffness;

The body erect on the hips, inclining a little forward;

The belly rather drawn in, and the breast advanced;

The shoulders square and falling equally;

The arms hanging near the side;

The palm of the hand turned a little to the front;

The head erect and square to the front, without constraint;

The chin somewhat drawn in;

The eyes straight to the front.

When the trooper is armed, the left hand hangs by the side over the sabre.

### EYES RIGHT, EYES LEFT.

6.—The instructor commands:

1. *Eyes*—RIGHT.

2. FRONT.

At the first command, turn the head gently to the right, so that the corner of the left eye, next to the nose, may be on a line with the buttons of the jacket.

At the command FRONT, turn the head gently to the front.

7.—The movement *eyes left* is executed after the same principles, at the commands:

1. *Eyes*—LEFT.
2. FRONT.

8.—The instructor will take particular care that the movement of the head does not derange the squareness of the shoulders, which would happen if it were too sudden, or if the head were turned more than is necessary.

As the trooper should turn the head only to align himself, and in the wheelings, it is important that he should be accustomed to turn it but very little.

### RIGHT FACE, LEFT FACE, ABOUT FACE, RIGHT OBLIQUE FACE, LEFT OBLIQUE FACE.

9.—The instructor commands:

1. *Right* (or *left*).
2. FACE.

1 time.

At the second command, raise the right foot slightly, turn on the left heel, raising the toes a little, and then replace the right heel by the side of the left, and on the same line.

10.—*About*—FACE.

2 times.

1. At the first part of the command, make a *half face to the right*, turning on the left heel, place the right foot square behind the left, the hollow of it opposite to, and three inches from, the left heel.

2. At the command, FACE, turn on both heels to face to the rear, raising the toes a little, the knees straight, and bring the right foot by the side of the left.

11.—1. *Right oblique* (or *left oblique*.)

2. FACE.

1 time.

At the second command, raise the right foot a little, turn upon the left, raising the toes slightly, and then replace the right heel by the side of the left, on the same line, making *face* 30 degrees to the right or left, (one-third of a right or left face.)

12.—The instructor pays particular attention that the position of the body shall not be deranged by these movements.

### COMMON STEP.

13.—The length of the common step is 2 feet 4 inches, measured from heel to heel; its quickness is at the rate of 90 per minute.

14.—To explain the principles and mechanism of the step, the instructor places himself 8 or 10 paces in front, facing the squad; he executes the step slowly himself.

He commands:

1. *Forward*.

2. MARCH.

At the command, *forward*, throw the weight of the body on the right leg.

At the command, MARCH, carry forward the left foot, smartly and without a jerk, 2 feet 4 inches from the right, the knee straight, the toe a little depressed, and slightly turned out, the upper part of the body inclined forward; plant the left foot, the whole weight of the body being thrown on it; carry forward the right leg, smartly and without jerk, the foot near the ground; plant it at the same distance, and in the same manner as has just been explained for the left foot, and continue to march without crossing the legs or turning the shoulders, and with the face always to the front.

15.—To halt, the instructor commands:

1. *Squad.*
2. HALT.

At the command, bring the foot which is in rear by the side of the other, without shock.

16.—The instructor marks the cadence of the step from time to time by the command *one*, at the moment when the left foot should be planted; this cadence being regulated at the rate of 90 steps per minute.

### TO CHANGE FEET.

17.—The instructor teaches this to the squad one at a time; it is used to catch the step when lost.

The foot that is being advanced from the rear is planted by the side of the other, which is instantly advanced in its stead so as not to lose the cadence.

### TO MARCH BY A FLANK.

18.—The men being in line at a halt, the instructor commands:

1. *Right*—FACE.
2. *Forward.*
3. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the whole file step off with animation together, with the left foot.

19.—A well-instructed man should at first march by the side of the leading man.

The instructor will cause the men to cover each other accurately. He will see that they do not look downwards, and do not bend the knee.

### TO FACE TO THE RIGHT OR LEFT WHEN MARCHING.

20.—The squad marching, the instructor commands:

1. *By the right flank.*

2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, turn the body to the right, and step off with the right foot in the new direction, without losing the cadence of the step.

The instructor gives the command MARCH at the moment when the left foot is coming to the ground.

When it is *to the left*, the command MARCH is given at the moment when the right foot is coming to the ground. By this means the new direction is always commenced with the leg on the side towards which the turn is made.

### OBLIQUE FACE TO THE RIGHT OR LEFT WHEN MARCHING.

21.—The squad marching, the instructor commands:

1. *Right oblique (or left oblique.)*

2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the men make an *oblique face to the right (or to the left)*, and march in the new direction.

22.—To resume the primitive direction, the instructor commands:

FORWARD.

At this command, the men make an *oblique face to the left*, if they have obliqued to the right, and an *oblique face to the right*, if they have obliqued to the left, and march straight to the front.

### QUICK STEP.

23.—The length of the quick step is the same as that of the common step, and its quickness is at the rate of 110 per minute.

The squad being at a halt, the instructor commands:

1. *Forward, quick time.*

2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, step off smartly with the left foot.

24.—The squad is exercised, when marching at the quick step, to halt, move on, face to the right and left, half face to the right and left, and move off again, as in common time.

25.—The squad marching in quick time, to change to common time, the instructor commands:

1. *Common time.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the squad takes the common step.

26.—To resume the quick step, the instructor commands:

1. *Quick time.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the squad resumes the quick step.

### DOUBLE QUICK STEP.

27.—The squad marching in common or quick time, to change to double quick time, the instructor commands:

1. *Double quick.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the men increase the length of step to 33 inches, and its rapidity to 165 steps in a minute.

In this march the carriage of the body is different, being nearer that of running. The body is more advanced, the knees more bent, the arms with their natural motion.

From a halt, the command is:

1. *Forward, double quick.*
2. MARCH.

SCHOOL OF THE  
SABRE EXERCISE.

28.—For this lesson the squad is composed of from 6 to 8 men, armed only with sabres; they are placed in one rank, 9 feet from each other.

The object of the moulinet is to render the joints of the arm and wrist supple, and as it adds to the confidence of the men when isolated, by increasing their dexterity, they should first be exercised at it, as a preparation for the other motions.

Each lesson is therefore commenced and ended with moulinets, executed with a quickness proportioned to the progress of the troopers. The instructor pays particular attention that the men do not employ a degree of force in the sabre exercise, which not only is less necessary than skill and suppleness, but which is even prejudicial. He observes, also, that they do not lean to one side, in such a manner as to lose the seat, when mounted; he requires more especially, in the motions of the sabre to the rear, that the blade shall not fall too near the body, for fear of wounding the horse. In describing a circle, the flat of the blade should be to the side, and the edge to the front, and it should be so directed as not to touch either the horse's head, or his haunches, or the knees of the rider.

When the troopers execute all the motions with regularity, the instructor requires each cut to be given without decomposing it; the last syllable of a command is the signal for the quick execution of it. All the cuts are then terminated by a half-moulinet, which brings back to the position of GUARD.

Thrusts should always be used in preference, as they require less force, and their result is more prompt, sure, and decisive. They should be directed quickly *home* to the body of the adversary, the sabre being held with the full grasp, the thumb pressing against the guard in the direction of the blade.

The parries against the lance are the same as against the point.



29.—The instructor explains what is meant by *right and left side of the gripe*; by *tierce*, and by *quarte*.

*The right side of the gripe* is the side opposite to the guard.

*The left side of the gripe* is the side next to the guard.

*Tierce* is the position in which the edge of the blade is turned to the right, the nails downwards.

*Quarte* is the position in which the edge of the blade is turned to the left, the nails upwards.

*To rest*, the sabres being returned, the instructor conforms to what is prescribed, No. 2.

30.—The troopers being placed as prescribed, No. 28, the instructor commands:

*Draw—SABRE.*

*2 times.*

1. At the first part of the command, unhook the sabre with the left hand, and bring the hilt to the front; run the right wrist through the sword-knot; seize the gripe, draw the blade 6 inches out of the scabbard, pressing the scabbard against the thigh with the left hand, which seizes it at the upper ring.

2. At the command *SABRE*, draw the sabre quickly, raising the arm to its full extent, at an angle of about 45 degrees; the sabre in a straight line with the arm, make a slight pause, carry the blade to the right shoulder, the back of it against the hollow of the shoulder, the wrist resting against the hip, the little finger on the outside of the gripe.

*Return—SABRE.*

*2 times.*

31.—1. At the command *RETURN*, carry the sabre vertically to the front, the thumb opposite to and 6 inches from the neck, the blade vertical, the edge to the left, the thumb extended on the right side of the gripe, the little finger by the side of the others.

2. At the command SABRE, carry the wrist opposite to and 8 inches from the left shoulder; revolve the point of the blade to the rear, until it is nearly under the right hand, which, at the same time, is raised; the left hand, also at the same time, takes hold of the upper part of the scabbard; turn the eyes slightly to the left, return the blade, free the wrist from the sabre knot, drop the right hand by the side; turning with the left the hilt toward the body, and so round to the rear, hook up the sabre, and drop the left hand.

32.—The sabres being drawn, the instructor commands:

GUARD.

1 *time*.

At the command GUARD, carry the right foot about 20 inches from the left, the heels on the same line; place the left hand closed, 6 inches from the body, and as high as the elbow, the fingers towards the body, the little finger nearer than the thumb; (*position of the bridle-hand*;) at the same time, carry the right hand about 10 inches in front of the right hip, the blade in an oblique position, the point a little raised, the edge upward, the back of the blade resting in the hollow of the left arm, as near the body as possible; the right hand without constraint, or feeling the weight of the sabre.

*Left*—MOULINET.

1 *time*, 2 *motions*.

33.—1. At the command MOULINET, extend the right arm to the front to its full length, the hand in tierce and as high as the eyes; the point to the front, and a little higher than the hilt.

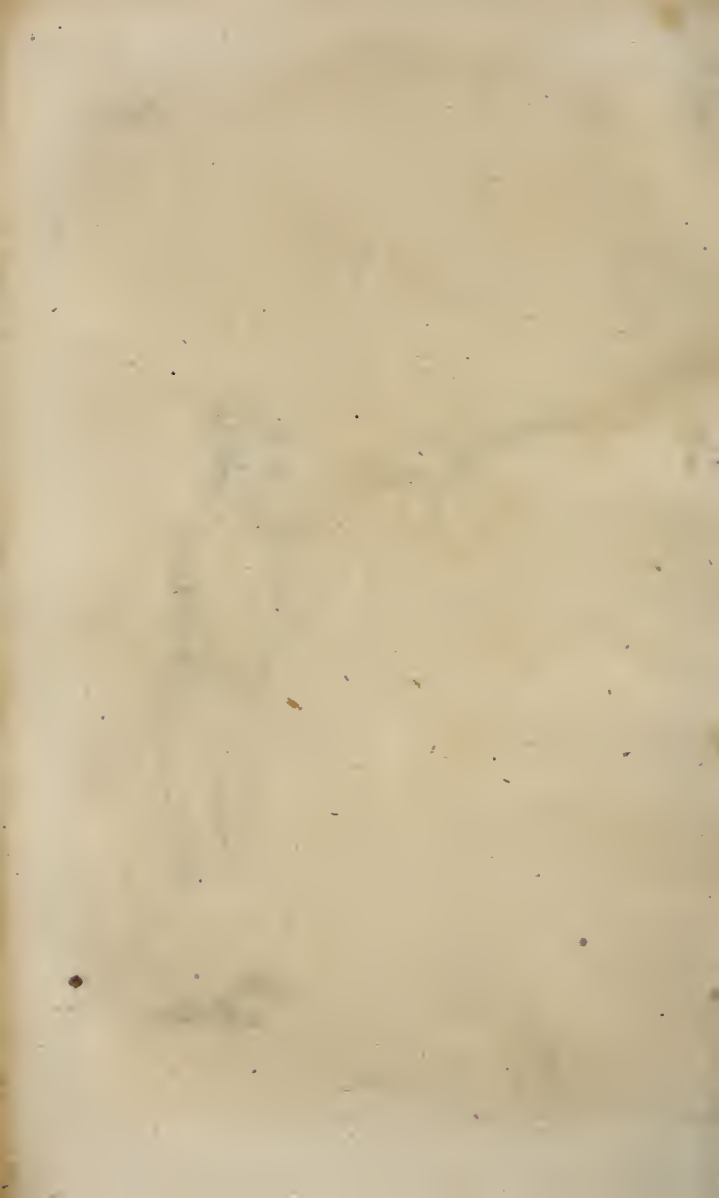
2. Commencing by lowering the blade, make rapidly a circle round the hand, to the left of, and as near as safe, to the horse, and to the elbow; returning to the first position, and then to guard.



6-1-18  
1888



*Left - Moulinet.*







*Right - Moulinet.*



*Right—MOULINET.**1 time, 2 motions.*

34.—1. At the command MOULINET, extend the right arm to the front to its full length, the hand in quarte, and as high as the eyes, the point to the front, and a little higher than the hilt.

2. Commencing by lowering the blade, make rapidly a circle round the hand, to the right of the horse and body, returning to the first position, and then to guard.

35.—To execute the moulinet without stopping, if the instructor wishes to begin by the left, he commands:

*Left and right—MOULINET.**1 time, 2 motions.*

36.—If he wishes to begin by the right, he commands:

*Right and left—MOULINET.**1 time, 2 motions.*

At either of these commands, the troopers, commencing from the position of GUARD, execute alternately what is laid down in Nos. 33. and 34, without stopping at any motion.

*Rear—MOULINET.**1 time, 2 motions.*

37.—1. At the command MOULINET, raise the arm to the right and rear to its full extent, the point of the sabre upwards, the edge to the right, the thumb extended on the back of the gripe, the body slightly turned to the right.

2. Describe a circle in rear, commencing by motion of the sabre towards the left, the arm being motionless to the wrist, return to the 1st position and then to guard.

When the troopers execute the moulinets well, the instructor requires them to execute several in succession, until the command GUARD.

*In tierce*—POINT.

1 time, 3 motions.

38.—1. At the command POINT, raise the hand in tierce, as high as the right ear, and 7 inches from it, throw back the right shoulder, carrying the elbow to the rear, the point of the sabre to the right of the horse's head and neck, and a little below the horizontal, the edge upwards, the thumb on the back of the gripe.

2. Thrust forward, extending the arm to its full length, the edge of the sabre up.

3. Return to the position of guard.

*In quarte*—POINT.

1 time, 3 motions.

39.—1. At the command POINT, lower the hand in quarte near the right hip, the thumb extended on the right side of the gripe, the point a little higher than the wrist, edge to the left.

2. Thrust to the right front, extending the arm to its full length, the edge of the blade to the left.

3. Return to the position of guard.

*Left*—POINT.

1 time, 3 motions.

40.—1. At the command POINT, turn the head to the left, (half face to the left in the saddle,) raise the hand in tierce as high as the right ear, and 7 inches from it, the thumb on the back of the gripe, the edge of the blade upwards, the point directed to the left.

2. Thrust to the left, or left front, extending the arm to its full length, the edge up.

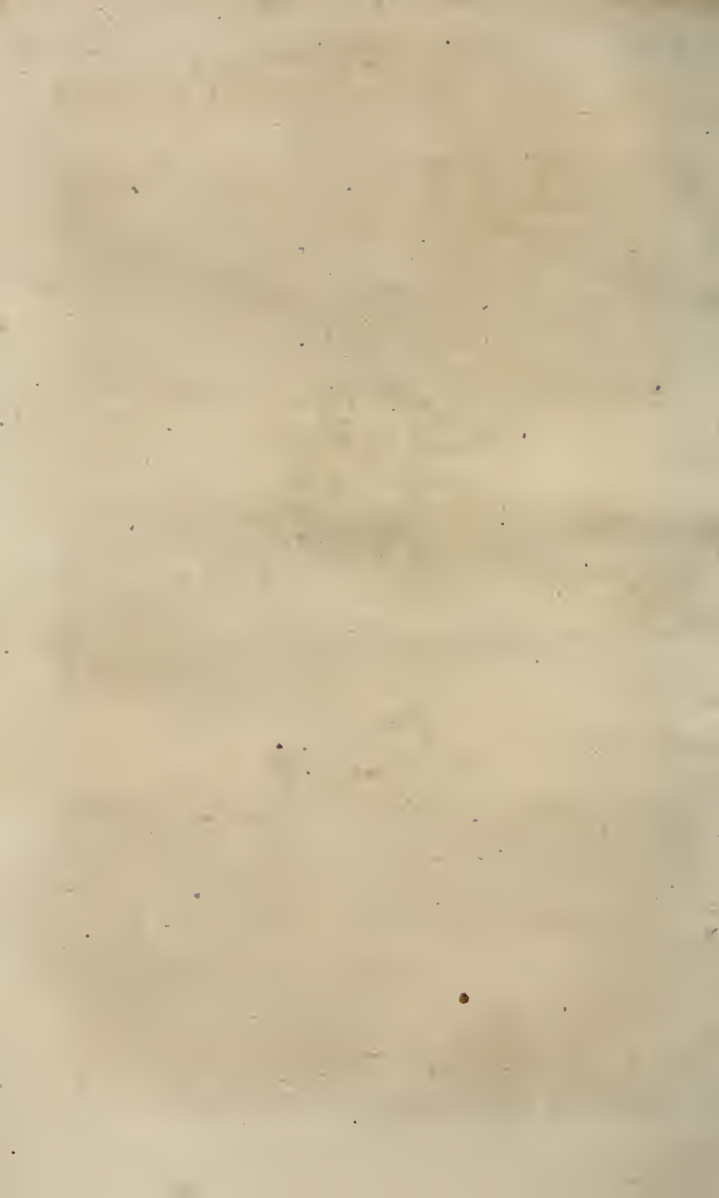
3. Return to the position of guard.

*Right*—POINT.

1 time, 3 motions.

41.—1. At the command POINT, turn the head to the









*Right - Point*

right, (half face to the right in the saddle,) carry the hand in quarte near the left breast, the edge upwards, the point directed to the right.

2. Thrust to the right, or right front, extending the arm to its full length, edge to the front.

3. Return to the position of guard.

*Rear—POINT.*

*1 time, 3 motions.*

42.—1. At the command POINT, turn the head to the right and rear, (half face to the right in the saddle,) bring the hand in quarte in front of the right shoulder, the arm half extended, the blade horizontal, the point to the rear, the edge upwards.

2. Thrust to the rear, or right rear, extending the arm to its full length, edge to the right.

3. Return to the position of guard.

*Against infantry left—POINT.*

*1 time, 3 motions.*

43.—1. At the command POINT, turn the head to the left, (half face to the left in the saddle,) raise the hand in tierce near the neck, the thumb on the back of the gripe, the point of the sabre directed at the height of the breast of a man on foot.

2. Thrust down in tierce.

3. Return to the position of guard.

*Against infantry right—POINT.*

*1 time, 3 motions.*

44.—1. At the command POINT, turn the head and body toward the right, carry the hand in quarte near the right hip, the thumb on the right side of the gripe, the point of the sabre directed at the height of the breast of a man on foot.

2. Thrust in quarte.

3. Return to the position of guard.

*Against infantry*—FRONT POINT.

1 time.

45.—At the command POINT, bear the weight on the right stirrup, bend well down to the right, extend the right arm well downwards, and, with the back of the sabre upwards, thrust forward, horizontally, and resume the guard.

*Front*—Cut.

1 time, 3 motions.

46.—1. At the command cut, raise the sabre, the arm half extended, the hand a little higher than the head, the edge upwards, the point to the rear and higher than the hand.

2. Cut to the right of the horse's neck, extending the arm to its full length.

3. Return to the position of guard.

## USED AGAINST CAVALRY AND INFANTRY.

*Left*—Cut.

1 time, 3 motions.

47.—1. At the command cut, turn the head to the left, (half face to the left in the saddle,) raise the sabre, the arm extended to the front and right, the hand in quarte, and as high as the head, the point higher than the hand.

2. Cut diagonally to the left, in quarte.

3. Return to the position of guard.

This is also used against infantry, bending well forward and down, and cutting at the necessary angle.

*Right*—Cut.

1 time, 3 motions.

48.—1. At the command cut, turn the head to the right, carry the hand near the left shoulder, the point of the sabre upwards, the edge to the left.











2. Extend the arm quickly to its full length, give a back-handed cut horizontally, in tierce.

3. Return to the position of guard.

This is used against infantry, leaning to the right, and cutting at the necessary angle.

*Rear—Cut.*

1 time, 3 motions.

49.—1. At the command cut, turn the head to the right, throwing back the right shoulder, (half face to the right in the saddle,) carry the hand near the left shoulder, the sabre perpendicular, the edge to the left.

2. Extend the arm quickly to its full length, and give a back-handed cut horizontally to the rear, in tierce.

3. Return to the position of guard.

*Right, in tierce and quarte—Cut.*

1 time, 4 motions.

50.—1. At the command cut, execute the 1st motion of *right cut*, No. 48.

2. Execute the 2d motion of *right cut*, No. 48.

3. Turn the hand in quarte, and cut horizontally to the left.

4. Return to the position of guard.

*Left, in quarte and tierce—Cut.*

1 time, 4 motions.

51.—1. At the command cut, execute the 1st motion of *left cut*, No. 47.

2. Execute the 2d motion of *left cut*, No. 47.

3. Turn the hand in tierce, and cut horizontally to the right.

4. Return to the position of guard.

*Right—PARRY.*

1 time, 2 motions.

52.—1. At the command PARRY, grasp the sabre firm-

ly, extend the arm to the right, the hand moving horizontally, the point at the same time describing a circular motion upwards, and with the edge to the right, parry as strongly as possible the blow aimed at the right side.

2. Return to the position of guard.

*Left—PARRY.*

1 time, 2 motions.

53.—1. Raise the hand above, and about seven inches in front of the eyes, the elbow somewhat bent, edge to the left, point downwards and about a foot outside the horse's left shoulder, and parry as strongly as possible the blow aimed at the left side.

2. Return to the position of guard.

*Head—PARRY.*

1 time, 2 motions.

54.—1. At the command PARRY, raise the sabre quickly above the head, holding it with the utmost firmness, the arm nearly extended, the edge upward, the point to the left, and about 6 inches higher than the hand.

The hand is carried more or less to the right, left, or rear, according to the position of the adversary.

2. Return to the position of guard.

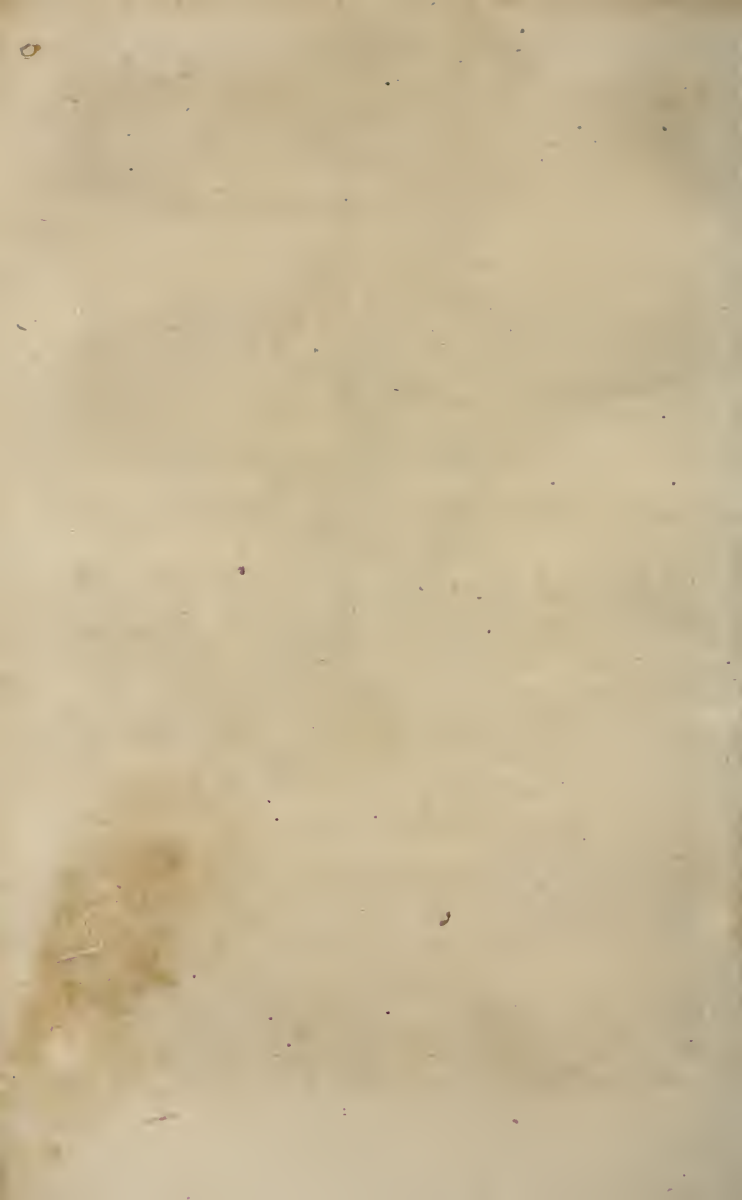
*Against infantry right—PARRY.*

1 time, 3 motions.

55.—1. At the command PARRY, turn the head to the right (half facing to the right in the saddle,) raise the sabre, the arm extended to the right and rear, the point upwards, the thumb extended on the back of the gripe, the edge to the left.

2. Parry the bayonet with the back of the blade, by a rapid circular motion of the arm and blade, from rear to front, bringing the hand as high as the head, the point upwards, edge to the front.

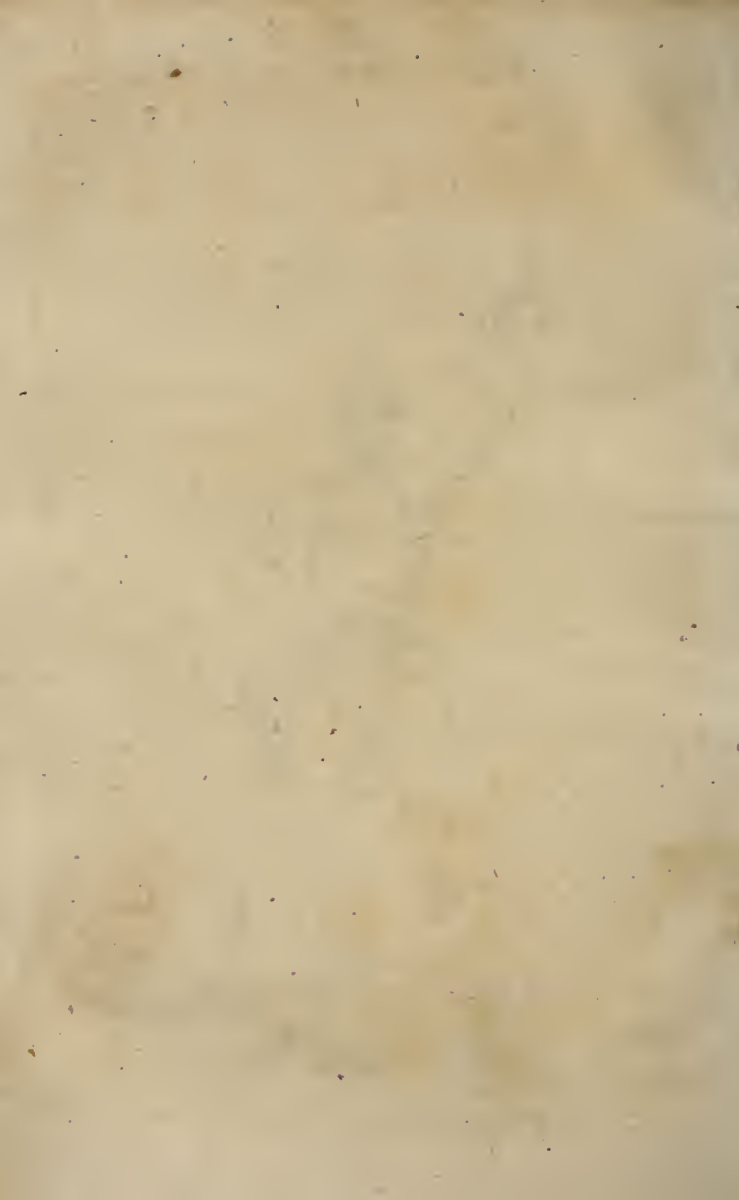




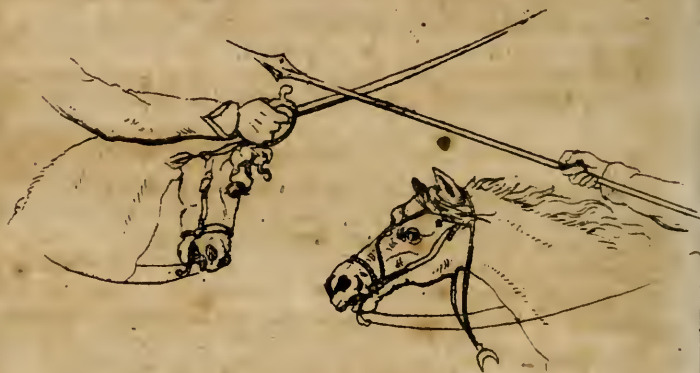




*Against Infantry Right-Parry.*







*In tierce - Parry.*

3. Return to the position of guard.

*Against infantry left—PARRY.*

*1 time, 3 motions.*

56.—1. At the command PARRY, turn the head to the left, (half face to the left in the saddle,) raise the sabre, the arm extended to the front and right, the point upwards, the thumb extended on the back of the gripe, the back of the blade to the front.

2. Parry the bayonet with the back of the blade, by a forcible circular motion of the arm and blade from front to rear, bringing the hand above the left shoulder, edge to the rear, the point upwards.

3. Return to the position of guard.

### PARRIES AGAINST THE LANCE, (OR SABRE.)

*In tierce—PARRY.*

*1 time, 2 motions.*

57.—1. At the command PARRY, carry the forearm and blade quickly to the front and right, the elbow but little moved, edge to the right, thumb on the back of the gripe, the point being carried to the right front, at the height of the eyes.

2. Return to the position of guard.

*In quarte—PARRY.*

*1 time, 2 motions.*

58.—At the command PARRY, carry the arm and blade quickly to the left front, edge to the left, the point as high as the eyes, the thumb on the back of the gripe.

2. Return to the position of guard.

59.—When the troopers begin to execute correctly the above cuts, thrusts, and parries, the instructor requires them to make the application of them by combined motions, such as follow:

*In tierce*--POINT AND FRONT CUT.

*In quarte*--POINT AND FRONT CUT.

*Left*--POINT AND CUT.

*Right*--POINT AND CUT.

*Rear*--POINT AND CUT.

*Against infantry right*--POINT AND CUT.

*Against infantry left*--POINT AND CUT.

*Carry*--SABRE.

As it is prescribed in No. 30, and carry the right foot to the side of the left.

### GENERAL OBSERVATIONS AND DIRECTIONS.

60.—Great attention should at all times be paid to maintain the proper position and balance of the body; as by too great an exertion in delivering a cut or point a horseman may be thrown, or be so discomposed as to lose advantage of his skill, both for attack and defence; and he should have confidence in his parries, and not trust to his avoiding the attack of his opponent by turning or drawing back the body.

In delivering a forward point very little force is necessary when the horse is in quick motion, as the extension of the arm, with a good direction of the point, will be fully sufficient; nor should a cut, under such circumstances, be given too strong, as the impetus of the horse will give effective force. Even the drawing of the edge can frequently be applied with advantage, particularly when the point, by being given too soon, may not have taken effect; by a quick turn of the wrist the edge is drawn along the face of your opponent, or other exposed part. The forcing, also, of the edge can be resorted to when very near and closely pressed upon by an adversary by suddenly extending the arm and directing the edge across his face, or where an opening is given.

When sufficient space is allowed for choosing the point of attack you should endeavor to take advantage of it; if not, at all events to avoid its being made on your left

rear, when a change of position alone can bring you upon an equality with your opponent; it may be done either by making a sudden halt, so as to allow him to pass, and then pressing upon his left rear, or by turning quickly to the left about, and thereby having your right opposed to his. Should you be prevented doing this, and he still keeps upon your left, you must bear up as close as possible to him, otherwise your opposition will be ineffectual; for in his situation, by keeping at the proper distance from you, his cut will reach when yours will not, and consequently you will be reduced to the defence alone.

In meeting your opponent on the left front turn sharply to the left on your own ground, which brings you immediately with your sword arm free, and at liberty to act upon his left. And in meeting him upon the right front, press your horse quickly on, and by a sharp turn to the right gain his left rear, or if pursued endeavor to keep your adversary on the right rear. When attacked by more than one you will naturally endeavor to keep them both either to the right or left, but when they have been enabled to place themselves on both sides, press close upon the left opponent, and endeavor to keep the right one at a distance.

The attack or defence against the lance (it is the common weapon of the mounted Indians) depends much upon horsemanship, and the judgment of the rider. It is parried like the sword; and you must press in at your opportunity to close upon your antagonist. You must invariably endeavor to gain his *right rear* when he is least able to attack or defend; the left rear and left, weakest for the sabre, are the strongest positions for the lance; the same may be said of the bow and arrow; in pursuit always approach at the right rear.

When opposed to infantry, endeavor to meet an opponent on your right; in the parry the bayonet must be struck, and by the stronger part of your sabre; the cuts form a defence as well as attack upon infantry, but the point should be chiefly used in pursuit.

In the use of the sabre at speed, it is important that the horseman should aid the impetus of the cut, and secure his own seat by supporting the sway of the body with the opposite leg to that side on which he intends to cut or point; for instance, in the left cut he should support the body by a strong pressure of the inside of the right thigh and leg against the saddle and horse; in the right cuts support the body with the left leg, the lower down the grip can be taken the better, not touching the horse with the spur. It is particularly applicable and necessary in pursuit over rough and varied ground.

Cuts very often fail from the sabre turning enough to make the blow one with the flat; at best the wound is generally trifling compared to those made by thrusts.

The instructor should impress upon the recruits such occasional observations as become applicable. Opportunities should be taken in pauses or rests; the squad should not be kept very long in positions or movements.

## MANUAL OF THE PISTOL.

61.—The army revolver being worn in a belt-holster, suspended by the belt at the right side of the back, the instructor commands:

*Draw—PISTOL.*

*1 time.*

62.—At the command PISTOL, with the right hand unbutton the flap of the belt-holster, draw the pistol, and, holding it at the stock, with the point of the fore-finger reaching above the trigger guard, carry it vertically, with the hand as high as the right shoulder, and six inches in front of it.

63.—The instructor commands:

READY.

*1 time.*

At this command, place the pistol in the left hand, at



the height of the breast, the muzzle elevated and directed to the left front, cock and *raise pistol*, (position No. 62.)

AIM.

1 *time*.

64.—At this command, lower the pistol to the front, the arm about three-fourths extended, the forefinger upon the trigger; aim with the right eye, the left eye closed.

FIRE.

1 *time*.

65.—At this command, fire and *raise pistol*.

66.—At the position of AIM, the instructor may command, *raise--PISTOL*, at which command the men raise the pistols to the position No. 62; and if the pistol is not fired, at the command *return--PISTOL*, first let down the hammer.

67.—To cock the pistol rapidly without the use of the left hand, place the thumb upon and press down the hammer, throwing forward the muzzle with a rapid motion, to assist the action of the thumb.

68.—In a possible case requiring it, the revolver may be used in rank dismounted with great effect, in firing to the front, or right or left oblique, by volley or file firing.

To reload, the rank would be ordered to sit on the ground and load at will.

69.—Being at the position of *raise pistol*, the instructor commands:

*Return--PISTOL.*

At the command *PISTOL*, lower the pistol, carrying it to the rear, and return it to the holster, and button the flap.

SCHOOL OF THE  
INSPECTION OF ARMS.

70.—The instructor commands :

*Inspection—SABRE.*

*1 time, 7 motions.*

1. At the command SABRE, execute the first time of draw sabre, No. 30.
2. Execute the second time of draw sabre, No. 30.
3. Present sabre as it is described in first time of No. 31.
4. Move the thumb to the back of the gripe, and turn it in the hand, the edge turning by the front, to the right.
5. Carry the sabre to the shoulder, as it is described in No. 30.
6. Execute the first time of return sabre, No. 31.
7. Execute the second time of return sabre, No. 31.

71.—The instructor commands :

*Inspection—PISTOL.*

*1 time, 3 motions.*

1. At the command PISTOL, draw pistol, and come to the position of *raise pistol*, No. 62.
2. Place the pistol in the left hand, at the height of the breast, the muzzle elevated and directed to the left, half cock with the right hand; drop the left hand by the side, and hold the pistol vertically, in front of, and 4 inches from, the middle of the body, the butt at the height of the belt, the guard to the left; the right fore-arm against the side.
3. Take the pistol in the left hand, as in No. 63, let down the hammer, and return the pistol to the holster, button the flap, and drop the hand to the side.

72.—When the men execute the details correctly, the instructor commands :

*Inspection—ARMS.*

At the command ARMS, the men execute the first and second motions of *inspection of pistol*, No. 71.

As soon as the inspector has passed the man on his left, each man executes the third motion of *inspection of pistol*, and first and second motions of *inspection of sabre*.

Each man, as the inspector reaches him the second time, executes the third and fourth motions of *inspection of sabre*; and as soon as the inspector has passed again the next man, he executes the fifth, sixth, and seventh motions of *inspection of sabre*, No. 70.

73.—The inspector passes from right to left, returning to the right by the rear; he handles the pistols if he desires, returning them to the troopers in the same position in which they are held for inspection.

## TARGET PRACTICE.

74.—The target is six feet high and two feet wide; a black stripe 3 inches wide is painted at the centre, from top to bottom; and two feet and a half from the top a white square of three inches is painted on the black.

When practicable a man is placed behind a ball-proof obstacle, within reach by a wand, of the target; with this he points out the position of each hit, immediately after it is made; so that the person firing can see from his place.

When each has finished his shots, his hits are marked, measured, and noted, as well as the misses.

The squad first fires at 20 yards, each man fires to the front, rear, right, and left; one shot each a day.

The firing is next at thirty yards, and is carried regularly by the decimal increase up to one hundred yards.

An officer is always present at target firing.

PLATOON, SQUADRON, AND REGIMENT,  
DISMOUNTED.

75.—The practice of field movements on foot is useful

for the instruction of young officers and men, and when, for any reason, mounted exercises are not practicable.

The formation, telling off words of command, and all the movements are the same, with the modifications, which follow:

The walk and the trot are the only gaits substituted by the quick time and double quick time. The word of command, "walk," will be substituted by *quick time*; "trot," by *double quick*.

All the movements will be in quick time when the command is not "double quick."

In line, at the command *right*—FACE, after all face to the right, all numbers two and four step up to the left side of numbers one and three; if the command is *left*—FACE, the odd numbers step up to the right of the even numbers.

A column of twos right in front, being faced to the left at a halt, or marching, the odd numbers step up into their places on the right of the even numbers; if left in front, and faced to the right, the even numbers step up between the odd numbers.

The commands and methods found in Nos. 7 to 27, inclusive, of the *school of the trooper dismounted*, will be followed.

To form twos and fours, and to break by twos and file, is always done at the same gait, without halting, closing or increasing the distances; when increasing front, the files who have to move up doing so with a step or two in double quick, and all together.

To break a platoon, marching in line, by fours, at the same gait, each set, but the foremost, halts until the one which is to precede it has moved forward, or obliqued two steps.

On the same principle, when the squadron in line is broken by platoon, each platoon waits until the one which precedes it has gained a distance of three-fourths of a platoon front.

A column of fours making a turn, the pivot shortens his step to 18 inches, (he marches ten steps in making

the turn,) and the man on the other flank increases his to about 32 inches.

In a platoon turning, the pivot man does the same, the outer flank moves in *double quick*.

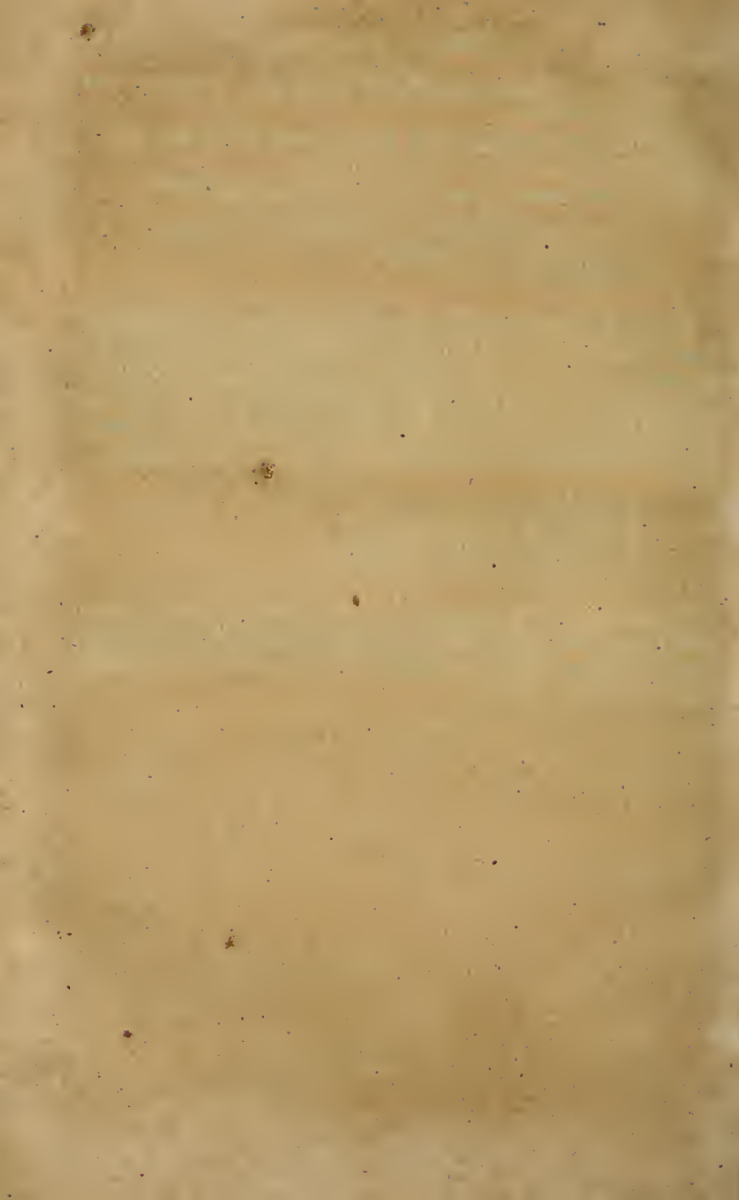
To countermarch a squadron the commands are:

1. *Countermarch by the right (or left) flank.*
2. *Right (or left)--FACE.*
3. MARCH.

At the first command, the right guide places himself three paces in rear of the left guide and faces to the rear. At the command MARCH, all step off together, the platoon commander by the side, and conducting the two leading men, who turn about, and march close to the column. When arrived near the guide, the captain commands:

1. HALT.
2. *Left (or right)--FACE.*
3. *Right (or left)--DRESS.*
4. FRONT.

The service of skirmishers on foot is the most important; and the theory can thus be communicated, and in a great degree put in practice, with much more facility than when mounted.



## TITLE THIRD.

### INSTRUCTION ON HORSEBACK.

---

#### SCHOOL OF THE TROOPER, MOUNTED.

76.—The object of this school is to make troopers skilful in the management of their horses and arms. The recruit must not pass from one lesson to another until he fully understands, and can execute, all which precedes.

The method prescribed to instructors in No. 1, for giving the lesson, is applicable to this school.

The instruction is always commenced at a *walk*; the horses, excited on first leaving the stables, are thus calmed, and the trooper is assured in his seat. The instruction is also terminated at a walk.

The most quiet and best instructed horses are chosen for the first lessons.

77.—When the instructor wishes to rest the men he commands, *REST*. At this command the trooper is no longer required to remain motionless or restrained. To resume the exercise, he commands, *ATTENTION*.

78.—The first lessons are given, if practicable, to each man separately; spurs are not used.

The horse is saddled, and in the snaffle, the reins over the neck; he is led to the ground by the right hand, holding the reins near the mouth, and his head up. (When under arms, the trooper's sabre is hooked up, and unhooked when in position in rank.)

If more than one, the troopers are placed in a line three paces apart.

Arms are not used before the 7th lesson.

SCHOOL OF THE  
FIRST LESSON.

POSITION OF THE TROOPER BEFORE  
MOUNTING.

79.—The trooper stands faced to the front, on the left of the horse's head, his breast on a line with its mouth; he holds the reins with the right hand, at six inches from the horse's mouth, the nails downward; his body, except his right arm, in a position of a soldier, No. 5.

TO MOUNT.

80.—The instructor commands:

PREPARE TO MOUNT.

*1 time, 2 motions.*

1. At this command [when in close order, numbers one and three lead straight forward four paces, and then all] turn to the right, letting go the reins with the right, and taking the left rein with the left hand; step two short paces to the rear, right foot leading, so as to face the saddle; at the same time, the right hand, with the aid of the left, takes hold of the reins over the pommel, feeling the horse's mouth sufficiently to keep him steady, and then seizes also the pommel; drop the left hand by the side.

2. Insert the fore part of left foot in the stirrup, with the aid of the left hand if necessary, and then with that hand grasp the horse's crest and mane.

. MOUNT.

*1 time.*

At this command, spring up from the right foot to an erect posture, and instantly throw the right leg over, taking your seat gently; take the reins in the left hand, and put the right foot in the stirrup.







*Form—RANK.*

At this command, given when in close order, numbers two and four ride gently forward into rank.

## TO DISMOUNT.

81.—The instructor commands:

## PREPARE TO DISMOUNT.

*1 time.*

1. At this command, [when in close order, numbers one and three ride gently four paces straight forward, dressing by the right, and then all] grasp the reins with the right hand, knuckles to the right, close in front of the left hand, which lets go, and also the right side of the top of the pommel, feeling firmly the horse's mouth; seize with the left hand the horse's crest and mane at a convenient distance, at the same time disengage the right foot from the stirrup.

## DISMOUNT.

*1 time, 2 motions.*

1. At this command, rising upon the left stirrup, with the assisting support of the two hands, pass the right leg quickly over the horse's croup to the side of the left, the body for one instant erect, and descend to the ground, the heels together; drop the left hand by the side.

2. Face to the front, the right hand leaving the pommel, and slipping along the rein as you step, left foot first, to the position of *Stand to horse*, No. 79, the right hand grasping the reins, 6 inches from the horse's mouth.

*Form—RANK.*

At this command, given in close order, numbers two and four lead forward into rank.

## POSITION OF THE TROOPER MOUNTED.

82.—The seat natural, without drawing back the thigh; the legs hang vertically from the knees, and close the sides of the horse; the balls of the foot supported in the stirrup; the heels about an inch lower than the toes; these to the front; the stirrups supporting the weight of the legs in a natural position.

The head erect and square to the front; the shoulders square; the carriage of the body erect, but free and unconstrained.

The curb reins held in the left hand; the little finger between them; they come out over the forefinger, where they are pressed by the thumb; the forearm grazing the side, and nearly horizontal; the hand about six inches in front of the body, and close above the pommel; its back is turned somewhat under. The right arm and hand hang naturally at the side.

83.—Riding in the snaffle, in the first lessons one rein of the snaffle is held in each hand, the loose end coming out over the forefinger, or with a turn round it, the thumb pressing upon it; hands from 4 to 6 inches apart, a little higher than the elbows; the forearms touching the sides.

84.—The instructor commands:

1. *Right (or left) Dress.*
2. *Front.*

As prescribed in Nos. 6, 7, and 8.

## THE USE OF THE REINS.

85.—The reins serve to prepare the horse for the movements he is required to execute, to direct him, and to stop him. Their action should be progressive, and in accordance with that of the legs.

When the trooper makes use of the reins the arms

should act with suppleness, and their movements ought to extend from the wrist to the shoulder.

### THE USE OF THE LEGS.

86.—The legs serve to urge the horse forward, to support him, and to aid him in turning to the right and to the left. Whenever the trooper wishes his horse to move forward, he should close the legs by degrees behind the girths, causing their effect to correspond with the sensibility of the horse, taking care neither to open nor elevate the knees, of which the bend should be always pliant. The trooper relaxes the legs by degrees, as he closed them.

### THE EFFECT OF THE REINS AND LEGS COMBINED.

87.—In elevating a little the wrists, and closing the legs, the trooper “gathers his horse;” in elevating again the wrists, he slackens the pace; in repeating this movement of the wrists, he stops the horse, or “reins back.” The trooper ought to elevate the wrists without curving them, at the same time drawing them towards the body.

In opening the right rein and closing the right leg, the trooper turns his horse to the right. To open the right rein, the right wrist is carried, without turning it, more or less to the right, according to the sensibility of the horse.

In opening the left rein, and closing the left leg, the trooper turns his horse to the left. To open the left rein, the left wrist is carried, without turning it, more or less to the left, according to the sensibility of the horse.

By lowering slightly the wrists, the horse is at liberty to move forward; the closing the legs determines the movement.

### TO MARCH.

88.—The instructor commands:

1. *Forward.*
2. MARCH.

At the command *forward*, elevate slightly the wrists, and close the legs, in order to "gather the horse."

At the command MARCH, lower slightly the wrists, and close the legs more or less, according to the sensibility of the horse. The horse having obeyed, replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

89.—If the trooper did not gather his horse at the preparatory command, the execution of the second command would be too abrupt or too slow.

If the trooper, at the command of execution, did not commence by lowering the wrists, the horse would not have the liberty necessary to enable him to move forward.

If the trooper did not close equally the legs, the horse would not move directly to the front; and if he did not close them progressively, the horse would not obey without irregularity.

### TO HALT.

90.—After some steps, the instructor commands:

1. *Squad.*
2. HALT.

At the command *squad*, the trooper gathers his horse, without slackening his pace.

At the command HALT, the trooper braces himself in the saddle; elevate the wrists at the same time by degrees, and close the legs in order to prevent the horse from receding. The horse having obeyed, replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

### TO TURN TO THE RIGHT, AND TO THE LEFT, FROM A HALT.

91.—The instructor commands:

1. *To the right (or to the left.)*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.

At the command *to the right*, gather the horse.

At the command MARCH, open the right rein, and close progressively the legs, until the horse moves. In order not to turn the horse too short, perform the movement upon a quarter circle 3 paces round.

At the command HALT, elevate slightly the wrists, and hold the legs near, in order to keep the horse straight in the new direction; replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

### TO TURN ABOUT TO THE RIGHT, AND TO THE LEFT, FROM A HALT.

93.—The instructor commands:

1. *Right about, (or left about.)*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.

This movement is executed on the principles prescribed for the *turn to the right, or to the left*; but the horse passes over a semicircle of 6 paces, and faces to the rear.

94.—In order to make the trooper comprehend better the movements detailed, Nos. 91 and 93, the instructor places himself at the shoulder of the horse, and describes each movement on foot, in marking off the arc of the prescribed circle.

### TO MAKE A THIRD OF A TURN TO THE RIGHT AND TO THE LEFT, FROM A HALT.

95.—The instructor commands:

1. *Right oblique, (or left oblique.)*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.

At the command *right oblique*, gather the horse.

At the command MARCH, open a little the right rein, and close slightly the legs, in order to make the horse execute a third of a turn to the right.

The command HALT follows immediately; elevate slightly the wrists, and close the legs, to keep the oblique direction; replace the wrists and legs by degrees.

96.—The movements detailed, Nos. 91, 93, and 95, after having been executed to the right, are executed to the left, according to the same principles, but by inverse means.

## TO REIN BACK, AND TO CEASE REINING BACK.

97.—The instructor commands:

1. *Backwards.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Squad.*
4. HALT.

At the command *backwards*, gather the horse.

At the command MARCH, close the legs, and at the moment the horse lifts a leg elevate the wrists, with a stronger feel of the mouth. As soon as the horse obeys, lower and elevate successively the wrists, which is called *yielding and checking*. If the horse throws the haunches to the right, close the right leg; if he throws them to the left, close the left leg. If these means are not sufficient to replace the horse in his proper position, open the rein on the side towards which the horse throws his haunches, causing him to feel, at the same time, slightly the effect of the opposite rein.

At the command *squad*, the trooper prepares to stop.

At the command HALT, lower the wrists and close the legs. The horse having obeyed, replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.



## TO FILE OFF.

98.—The squad being dismounted as prescribed, No. 81, the instructor commands:

1. *By the right (or by the left)*—FILE OFF.
2. MARCH.

At the command FILE OFF, hook up the sabre, (when in use,) and unhook the curb; retake the reins with the right hand, and replace the left hand at the side.

At the command MARCH, the trooper of the right steps off with the left foot, leading his horse to the front; he takes 4 steps, turns to the right, and marches in the new direction, holding at the same time the hand high and firm to prevent the horse from jumping. Each trooper executes successively the same movement when the one who precedes him has moved 4 paces to the front.

The troopers conform to the same principles to file off by the left.

## SECOND LESSON.

99.—The instructor may unite for this lesson 8 troopers, but not more; they are placed on the same line 3 paces apart; they are without spurs; the horses are saddled and in the snaffle.

Two corporals, or instructed troopers, are designated to be conductors; they are placed on the right and on the left of the troopers.

The instruction is divided into several stages, commencing alternately by the right and by the left.

TO MARCH TO THE RIGHT HAND; TO MARCH  
TO THE LEFT HAND.

100.—The instructor commands:

1. *To the right, (or to the left.)*
2. MARCH.

At these commands the troopers conform to what is prescribed in order to execute a turn *to the right* from a halt, No. 91; then lowering the wrists and closing the legs, march straight forward, and follow the conductor.

At the extremity of the riding-house the conductor turns to the right; the troopers follow, having between them the distance of 4 feet from head to croup.

101.—The trooper *marches to the right hand*, when he has the right side towards the interior of the riding-house. He *marches to the left hand* when it is the left side.

The instructor follows the troopers, keeping on the inside of the track.

He observes that their seat is not deranged, and warns them to conform with suppleness to all the motions of the horse.

Passing from one trooper to another, he occupies himself successively with all the details of the position of each, so as to instruct without confusing them.

### TO TURN TO THE RIGHT, AND TO THE LEFT, IN MARCHING.

102.—The troopers follow the conductor, and make, on arriving at the angles of the riding-house, a turn *to the right* (or *to the left*) in marching. To turn to the right or left in marching, the trooper opens the rein to the side towards which the turn is made, and closes both legs, the outer one most.

### TO HALT, AND TO STEP OFF.

103.—The troopers marching in column on one of the long sides, the instructor commands:

1. *Squad.*
2. HALT.

The troopers stop as prescribed, No. 90.

104.—To recommence the march, the instructor commands:

1. *Forward.*
2. MARCH.

The troopers move forward as prescribed, No. 88. The instructor causes the squad frequently to stop and to move off, to habituate the troopers in conducting their horses. He observes that they do not incline the body too much forward at the moment of stopping, and that they do not lean back at the moment of starting. When the troopers have stopped, he rectifies their position.

#### TO PASS FROM THE WALK TO THE TROT, AND FROM THE TROT TO THE WALK.

105.—The troopers becoming habituated to the movement of the horse, the instructor causes them to pass to *the trot*. When they are in column upon one of the long sides, he commands:

1. *Trot.*
2. MARCH.

At the command *trot*, gather the horse without increasing his gait.

At the command MARCH, lower a little the wrists, and close the legs more or less, according to the sensibility of the horse. As soon as the horse obeys, replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

106.—The instructor employs this gait at first cautiously, and at a moderate trot, that the men may not lose their position.

He makes them understand that it is in remaining well seated, and in relaxing, measurably, all the parts of the body, especially the thighs and legs, that they can acquire the necessary ease and solidity. He observes also that they do not bear too much upon the reins in this gait.

When he perceives that their position is deranged, he causes them to resume the walk, and even to stop.

107.—To pass from the *trot* to the *walk*, the instructor commands:

1. *Walk.*
2. MARCH.

At the command *walk*, gather the horse without affecting his gait.

At the command MARCH, elevate the wrists by degrees, and hold the legs near, in order to prevent the horse from stopping. As soon as the horse obeys, replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

### CHANGES OF HAND.

108.—When the troopers have marched some time to *the right hand*, (or to *the left hand*,) to make them change hands, in the breadth of the riding-house, without stopping, the instructor commands:

*Right (or left)*—TURN.

At the command TURN, the conductor turns to the right, and crosses the riding-house in its breadth, followed by the troopers.

The conductor being at two paces from the opposite track, the instructor commands:

1. *Left (or right)*—TURN.

At the command TURN, the conductor turns to the left, and follows the track.

All the other troopers turn successively on the same ground.

The instructor causes these changes of hand to be executed *at a walk*, and *at a trot*.

109.—The instructor occasionally orders the reins carried together in the left hand; when so held, the trooper,

in order to turn to the right, carries the hand forward and to the right; to turn to the left, he carries the hand forward and to the left, the nails always downward.

### TO TURN TO THE RIGHT AND TO THE LEFT BY TROOPER, IN MARCHING.

110.—The troopers marching in column, and having arrived about the middle of one of the long sides, the instructor commands:

1. *To the right (or to the left.)*
2. MARCH.

At the command *to the right*, gather the horse.

At the command MARCH, each trooper executes a *turn to the right* in marching, and moves straight to the front.

The troopers being at two paces from the opposite track, the instructor commands:

1. *To the right (or to the left.)*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, each trooper executes a *turn to the right*, following the same principles; and all return to the track.

The same movements are repeated to resume the order in which the troopers were originally.

### TO TURN-ABOUT TO THE RIGHT AND TO THE LEFT BY TROOPER, IN MARCHING ON THE SAME LINE.

111.—The troopers having made a turn to the right, as has just been explained, and having arrived near the opposite track, the instructor commands:

1. *Right-about (or left-about.)*
2. MARCH.

At the command *right-about*, gather the horse.

At the command MARCH, each trooper executes a *turn-*

*about to the right* in marching, following the principles prescribed, No. 102, and moves directly to the front.

The instructor gives the command MARCH, at the moment the troopers are within 2 paces of the track; the troopers are then reformed in column upon the opposite track, by the movement of *to the right* (or *to the left*.)

## TO TURN-ABOUT TO THE RIGHT AND TO THE LEFT BY TROOPER, IN MARCHING IN COLUMN.

112.—The troopers marching in column, and the conductor having arrived near the end of one of the long sides of the riding-house, the instructor commands:

1. *Right-about* (or *left-about*.)
2. MARCH.

At the command *right-about*, gather the horse.

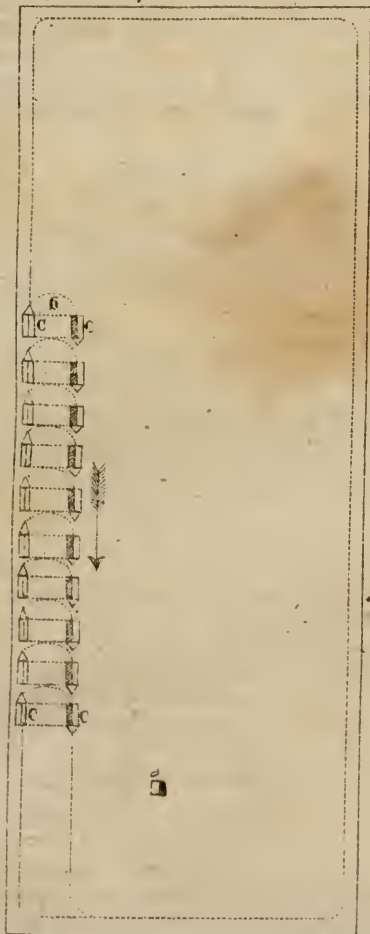
At the command MARCH, each trooper executes a *turn-about to the right* in marching, and moves forward.

On arriving at the opposite short side, the conductor turns to the left without command; the squad returns to the order in which it was originally, in executing the inverse movement.

113.—The object of the turns *to the right*, *to the left*, *right-about*, and *left-about*, in this lesson, is to habituate the troopers to turning in all directions their horses; the instructor causes these movements to be executed *at a walk* only; he not only observes the squad generally, but watches and rectifies with the greatest care the means employed by each trooper in turning his horse.

In the instruction *to the right hand*, the turns *to the right*, and *right-about*, are executed; and in the work *to the left hand*, those *to the left* and *left-about*. When the troopers have become accustomed to these movements, the instructor causes them to be executed in returning to the tracks, by turns *to the right* or *to the left*, without having regard to the change of hand.

114.—To rest the squad, the instructor causes the troop-







ers to turn *to the right*, or *to the left*, when they are about the middle of one of the long sides of the riding-house, and gives the command HALT, when they are out of the track.

The instruction is re-commenced by a turn *to the right* or *to the left*.

To terminate the drill, the instructor commands the troopers to *dismount* and *file off*.

### THIRD LESSON.

115.—When the troopers begin to execute this lesson correctly, the instructor changes their horses each day of the instruction, to give them the habit of managing different horses.

During *the rests*, the instructor exercises the troopers in *vaulting on* and *from their horses*, without commands, and without using the stirrups.

*To leap to the ground*: the trooper, holding the reins of the snaffle as prescribed, No. 82, seizes with the left hand a lock of the mane, the fingers well closed; places the right hand upon the pommel, raises himself upon the wrists, brings the right thigh to the side of the left, remains an instant in this position, and descends lightly to the ground.

*To leap on the horse*: the trooper seizes the mane with the left hand, places the right hand upon the pommel of the saddle, springs up, raising himself upon the two wrists, remains an instant in this position, and places himself lightly in the saddle.

All the movements in this lesson are explained in detail *by the right*: they are executed *by the left* according to the same principles, but by inverse means.

116.—From 12 to 16 troopers are united, and wear spurs.

The horses are saddled, and in the snaffle.

The troopers are placed with the horses at 1 foot from each other. Corporals or instructed troopers are placed

one on the right, one in the middle of the rank; and it would be well to have one on each flank of the two divisions.

The instructor makes the troopers count off by fours, as prescribed, No. 197; he then orders them to mount.

## OF THE SPUR.

117.—The instructor explains to the troopers the use and the effect of the spur.

If the horse does not obey the legs, it is necessary to employ the spur.

The spur is sometimes used to chastise; when necessary, use it vigorously, and at the moment the horse commits the fault.

In order to use the spur, it is necessary to keep steady the body, the waist, and the wrists; to cling to the horse with the thighs, and the calves of the legs; turn the point of the feet a little out; lower a little the wrists; press the spurs close behind the girths, without moving the body; replace then the wrists and the legs by degrees.

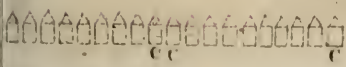
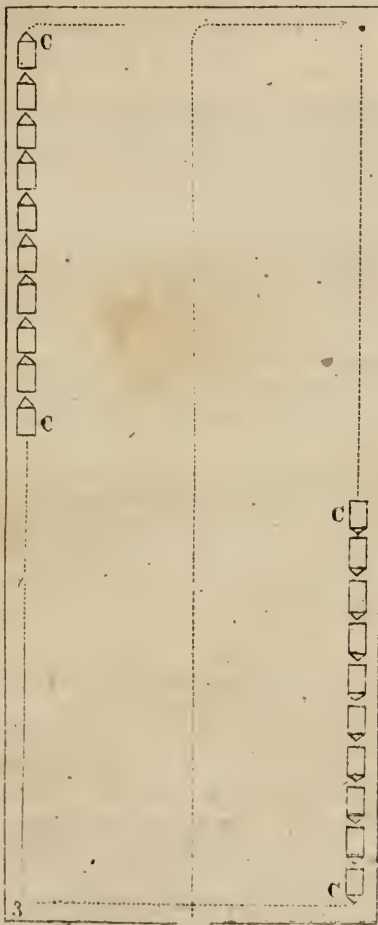
When the troopers employ the spur, the instructor observes that they do not bear too much upon the reins, which would counteract the effect of the spur. He also observes that the troopers do not use the spur unnecessarily.

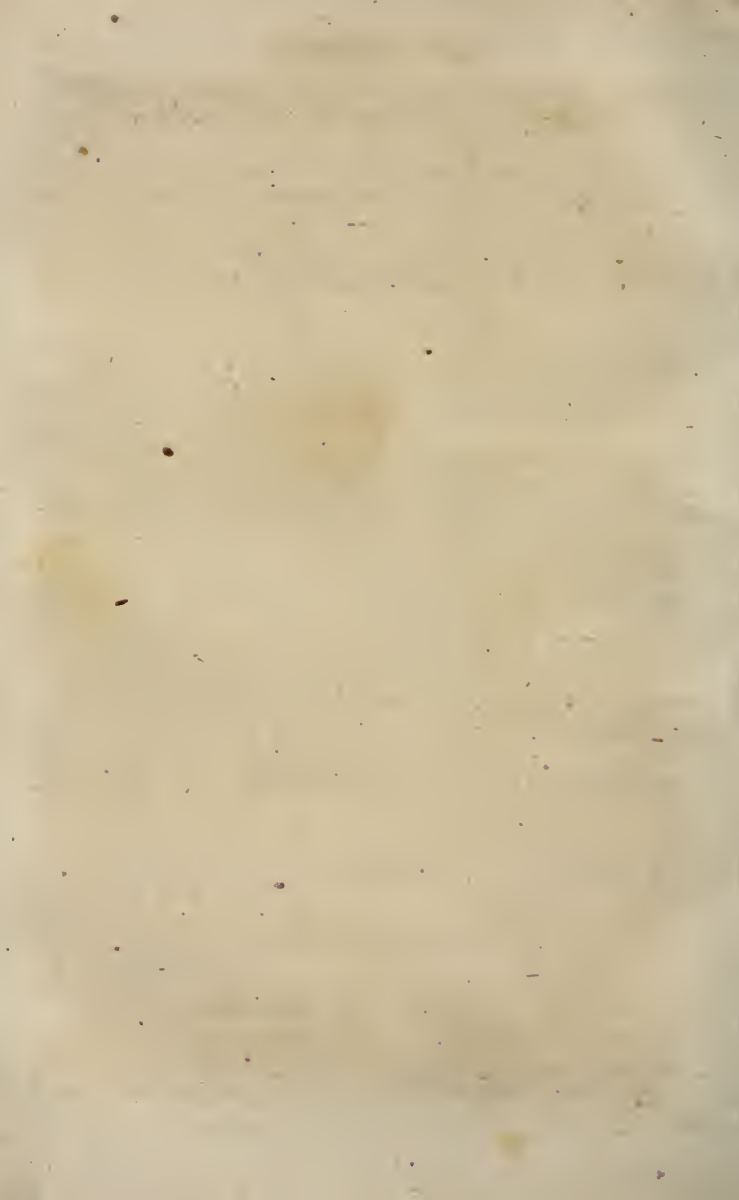
118.—To conduct the squad to the riding house, the instructor commands:

1. *By file to the right (or to the left.)*
2. MARCH.

At the command *by file to the right*, gather the horse.

At the command MARCH, the trooper on the right executes a *turn to the right*, and moves forward; this movement is executed by all the other troopers successively.





TO MARCH TO THE RIGHT HAND, AND TO  
THE LEFT HAND.

119.—On reaching the opposite side of the riding-house, the instructor commands, *right*—TURN. When the squad is making a turn from the long to a short side of the riding-house, the instructor halts the half of the squad in rear, with a corporal at its head, at the angle, and orders it to move forward, when the leader of the first half of the squad reaches the diagonal angle.

The troopers preserve the distance of 4 feet from head to croup.

The conductors regulate the pace of their horses so as to arrive at the same time at the opposite angles of the riding house, the conductor of the second division regulating himself on him of the first.

The instructor observes that the position of the troopers becomes more and more regular; that they march at a free and even pace; that they keep their horses straight and look constantly before them in order to maintain themselves in the direction of the conductors; that they preserve their distances, and recover them gradually when lost.

120.—The instructor reminds the troopers of the principles prescribed, No. 102, to turn to the right or to the left, and directs them to gather their horses a little before arriving at each corner.

The horses should not enter the corners too far, neither should they commence to turn too soon. To pass a corner to the right, a *turn to the right* is executed; to pass a corner to the left, a *turn to the left* is executed in marching; the troopers should act as if there were no walls; and as the movement of each one should be independent of the trooper who has gone before, their hands and legs alone should determine the horse to go to the right or to the left.

## TO PASS FROM THE WALK TO THE TROT, AND FROM THE TROT TO THE WALK.

121.—The troopers marching in column upon the long sides, the instructor causes them to commence the trot.

Whenever the change is made from a slow gait to one more rapid, as from the *walk* to the *trot*, it is necessary to commence slowly, and increase it gradually to the degree prescribed.

The troopers marching in column *at the trot* upon the long sides, the instructor causes them to pass *to the walk*.

Whenever the change is made from a lively gait to one more slow, as from the *trot* to the *walk*, it is necessary to commence the last gait gradually.

The squad passes frequently from the *walk* to the *trot*, and from the *trot* to the *walk*, in order to accustom the troopers to the changes of gait.

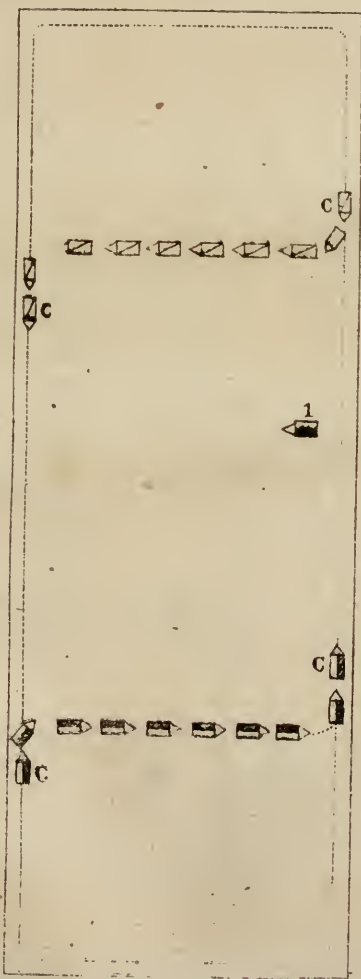
## CHANGE OF DIRECTION IN THE BREADTH OF THE RIDING-HOUSE.

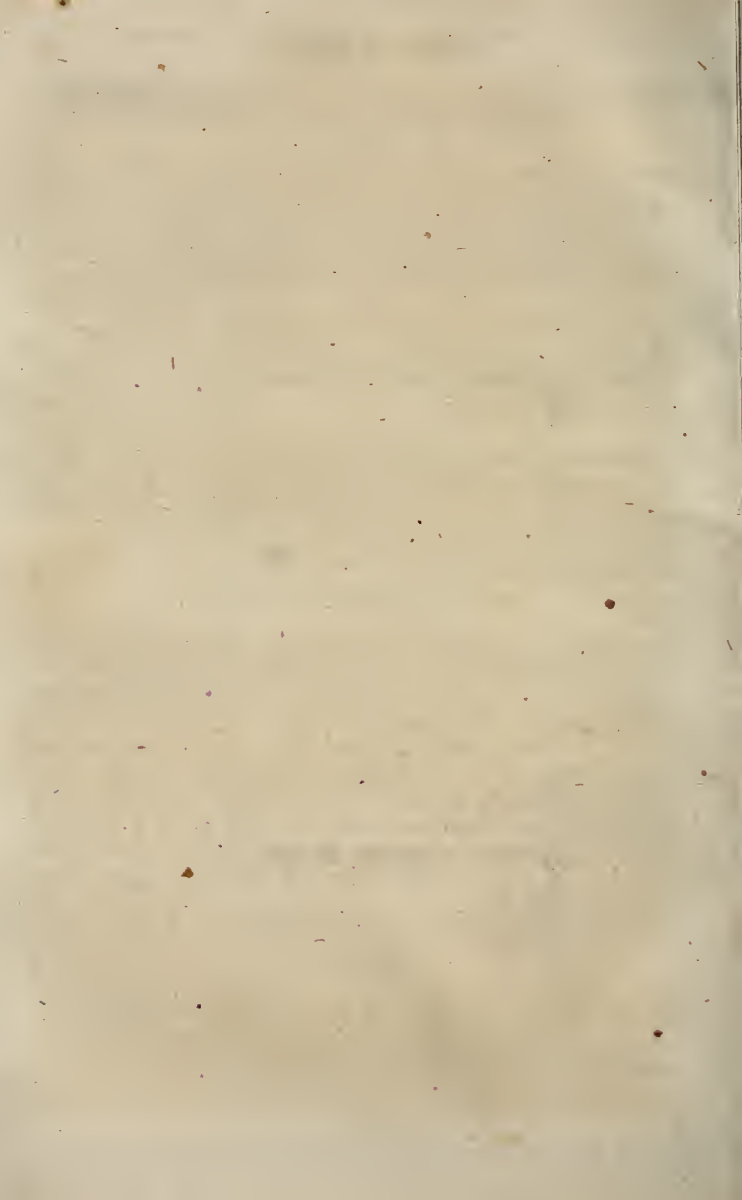
122.—The instructor causes the change of direction in the breadth of the riding-house, as prescribed for the changes of hand, No. 108, taking care to give the command in sufficient time to prevent the columns from meeting at the end of the change of direction.

The change of direction ought to be executed so as neither to stop nor check the rear of the column; the troopers, and particularly the conductors, ought to turn without slackening the pace, aiding themselves not only with their hands, but also with their legs.

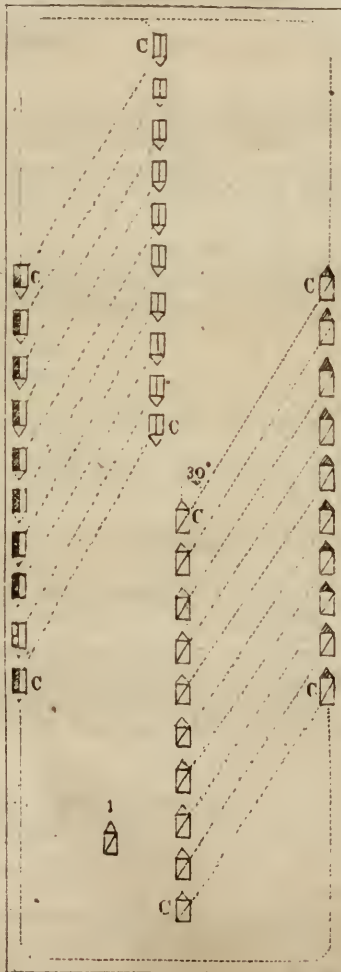
## CHANGE OF DIRECTION OBLIQUELY BY TROOPER.

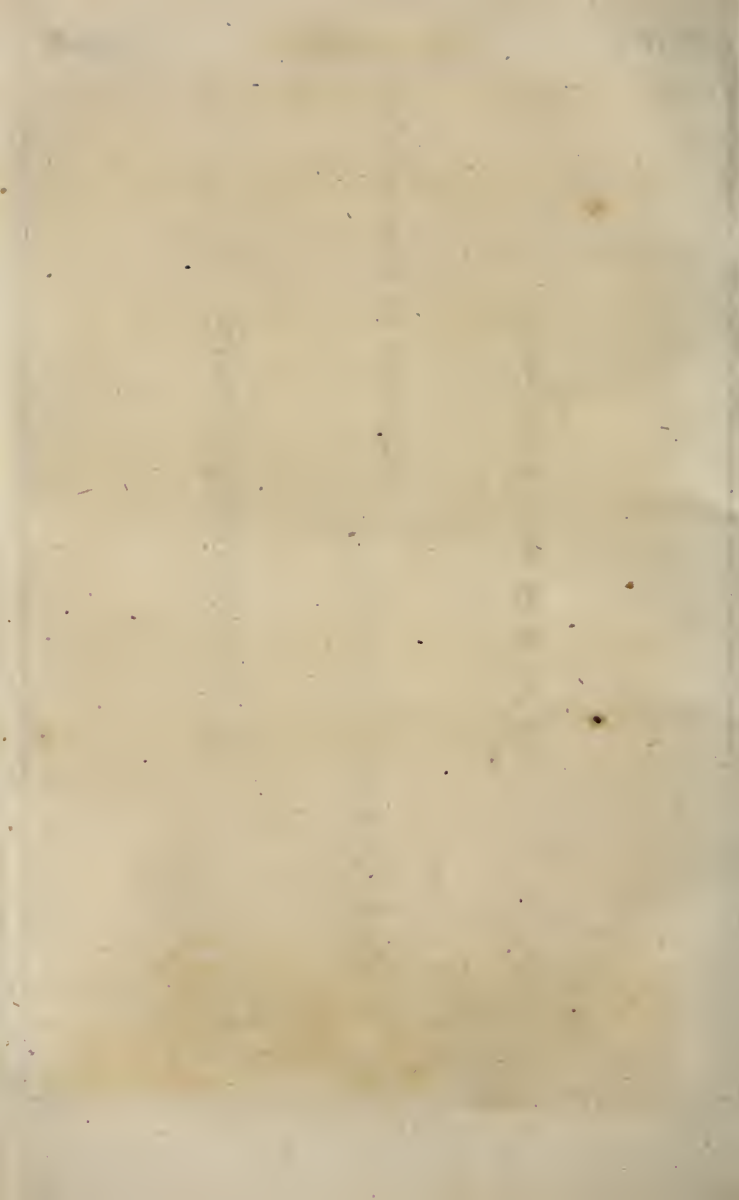
123.—The squad changes direction in the length of the riding-house; and as soon as all the troopers have turned, and are in the same direction, the instructor commands:











1. *Column.*
2. HALT.

The troopers stop at the same time, keeping their horses straight and at their distances.

The instructor causes the troopers to make an *oblique turn to the right* or *to the left* from a halt, as prescribed, No. 95.

This movement being executed, the instructor assures himself of the exactness of the directions and the intervals, and then commands:

1. *Squad.*
2. MARCH.

The troopers march at the same gait, each in the direction he has taken.

When they arrive at 1 foot from the track, the instructor commands:

#### FORWARD.

At this command, make an *oblique turn to the left* in advancing, in order to follow the track.

The instructor causes these movements to be repeated without halting; for this purpose, after having commenced the change of direction in the length of the riding-house, as soon as the two ranks are in column, he commands:

1. *Right (or left) oblique.*
2. MARCH.

1. FORWARD.

At the command *right oblique*, gather the horse.

At the command MARCH, execute an *oblique turn to the right*; having taken this direction, keep the legs equally near, and march straight forward at the same gait.

At the command FORWARD, turn to the original direction on the track.

## TO MARCH IN A CIRCLE.

124.—When the conductors have passed about a third of the long sides, the instructor commands;

1. *In circle to the right, (or left.)*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the conductors turn to ride on circles, touching the two tracks of the long sides; the troopers exactly following them.

Every horse should bend to the curve he is to pass over; the trooper keeps him in its direction by the inner rein, supporting him, at the same time, with the outer leg.

To resume the direct march, when the conductors are at the track, the instructor commands:

## FORWARD.

125.—To reunite the troopers in order to conduct them to the quarters, the instructor causes them to close to the distance of 2 feet.

The column having arrived in the yard of the quarters, the instructor commands:

1. *Left into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.

At the first command, MARCH, the first trooper turns to the left and moves straight forward.

At the command HALT, the trooper stops.

All the other troopers execute a *turn to the left* successively, when they are nearly opposite the place they are to occupy in the rank, and halt abreast of it.

To terminate the exercise, the instructor gives the command to dismount, and to file off, as prescribed, No. 98.

## FOURTH LESSON.

TO TURN TO THE RIGHT OR TO THE LEFT, BY  
TROOPER, IN MARCHING.

126.—The instructor causes this movement to be executed as prescribed, No. 110, at the commands: 1. *To the right*; 2. MARCH; observing that the troopers marching in two columns, the preparatory command ought to be given so as to command MARCH at the moment the conductors arrive opposite to the last trooper but one of the other column.

The troopers move straight forward, preserving their gait and their direction, so that each one may find before him the interval and the place he is to occupy in the column on the opposite track.

In passing into the intervals, the legs should be kept near, to prevent the horse slackening his gait.

The instructor attaches much less importance to the uniformity of these movements than to the manner in which each trooper conducts his horse.

This is executed also at the *trot*.

TO TURN ABOUT TO THE RIGHT, OR TO THE  
LEFT, THE TROOPERS MARCHING ON THE  
SAME LINE, (OR ABREAST.)

127.—The instructor causes these movements to be executed as prescribed, No. 111, the troopers of the two divisions passing by the intervals at the middle of the riding-house.

TO TURN ABOUT TO THE RIGHT, OR TO THE  
LEFT, THE TROOPERS MARCHING IN COLUMN.

128.—The instructor causes these movements to be executed as prescribed, No. 112.

In each column, the last trooper, who becomes the

head of the column, should pay attention not to slacken the gait in making his movement, in order not to retard the others.

This principle is equally applicable to the troopers who take the head of the columns in re-entering upon the tracks.

### TO PASS SUCCESSIVELY FROM THE HEAD TO THE REAR OF THE COLUMN.

129.—To make the troopers masters of their horses, to force them to use both the reins and the legs; also, to accustom the horses to leaving each other, the instructor requires the troopers to pass from the head to the rear of the column; each one, becoming in his turn conductor, regulates himself accordingly.

This movement is executed successively in the two columns, at a simple warning from the instructor, by two *right about* (or *left about*) turns.

The trooper designated to pass to the rear of the column gathers his horse and executes the movement in advancing so as not to retard those who are behind him. He holds the outer leg near, in order not to describe a semicircle of more than 6 paces; he marches then parallel to the column, and when he has re-entered upon the track by a second turn, he closes to the distance of 4 feet from the last trooper.

The trooper who follows and who becomes conductor should gather his horse and direct him with the outer rein and the inner leg, to prevent his following the horse which has left the column.

The instructor also requires the troopers to leave the column, without commencing at the head. In this case, he directs the troopers who follow the one designated to close to the prescribed distance; or if he thinks proper, in order to habituate the troopers to holding in their horses, he causes the place of the absent trooper to continue vacant.

When the troopers have been thus misplaced, the in-

structor halts the squad, and directs each trooper to return to his place before passing to another movement.

### BEING HALTED, TO COMMENCE THE MOVE AT A TROT.

130.—The troopers being in column upon the long sides, the instructor commands:

1. *Forward, trot.*
2. MARCH.

At the command *trot*, gather the horse.

At the command MARCH, lower the wrists and close the legs progressively; as soon as the horse obeys, replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

### MARCHING AT A TROT, TO HALT.

131.—The troopers marching *at a trot*, and in column, upon the long sides, the instructor commands:

1. *Column.*
2. HALT.

At the command *column*, gather the horse.

At the command HALT, elevate the wrists by degrees, until the horse stops; and hold the legs always near, to keep him straight and to prevent his stepping back. The horse having obeyed, replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

The instructor requires all the troopers to set off freely *at the trot*, at the command MARCH, and to stop all together without jostling, at the command HALT.

### TO PASS FROM THE TROT TO THE TROT-OUT, AND FROM THE TROT-OUT TO THE TROT.

132.—The troopers marching *at the trot*, and in column upon the long sides, the instructor commands:

## TROT-OUT.

At this command, lower a little the wrists and close the legs progressively; as soon as the horse obeys, replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

The gait being lengthened to a suitable degree, the instructor sees that the troopers keep their horses up to it.

He pays particular attention to the position of the troopers. He reminds them that it is in holding the body erect, having a light hand, the loins supple, and in allowing the thighs and legs to fall naturally, they can diminish the effect of the reactions of the horse, and conform more readily to all his motions.

To prevent the horses from over-reaching, it is necessary to raise the wrists and close more or less the legs.

The lengthened gait is executed only during one or two turns towards each hand; in continuing it longer, the horses lose their steadiness, and the equality of their gaits is destroyed.

To pass from the *trot-out* to the *trot*, the instructor commands:

## SLOW TROT.

At this command, elevate the wrists by degrees and close the legs, to prevent the horse from taking *the walk*; as soon as the horse obeys, replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

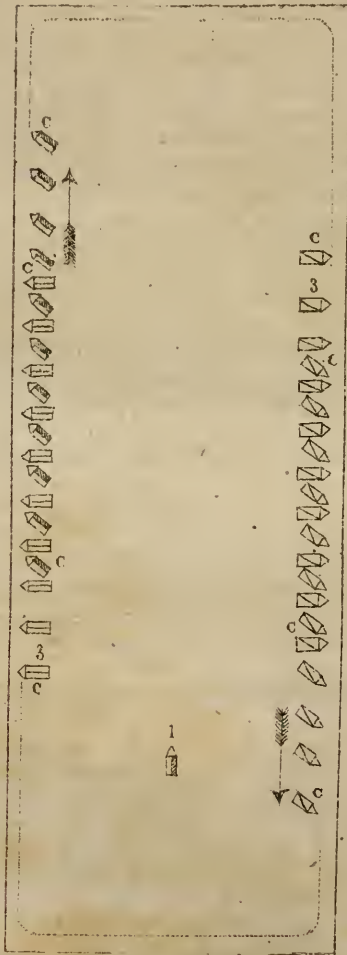
## TO PASS FROM THE TROT TO THE GALLOP.

133.—When the troopers have acquired some suppleness and confidence, and preserve at the trot an easy and regular position, the instructor causes them to make a few turns at *the gallop*. He does not explain to them at first the mechanism of this gait, neither the means of assuring its regularity; he only requires that each trooper accommodates himself to the motions of his horse without losing his seat.

Before commencing this exercise, and when the 2d di-







vision arrives upon one of the short sides of the riding-house, it is formed, by causing the troopers to **FRONT** and **HALT**, as prescribed, No. 125, paying attention to make them move forward 6 paces from the track.

The troopers of the 1st division continue to march, take between them the distance of 4 paces, pass to the *trot*, and commence successively the *gallop*, at the indication of the instructor, as follows:

Riding to the right, on approaching the corner, lengthen the *trot*, and gather the horse; then feel both reins to the left, and close the right leg; throwing the weight to the left, and leaving the right shoulder entirely free.

The horse having taken the *gallop*, hold a light hand and the legs near, to keep him at this gait.

After one or two turns at the most, the troopers pass from the *gallop* to the *trot*, and from the *trot* to the *walk*. The instructor makes them change hand in the breadth of the riding-house, and recommence the same exercise to the left hand. The troopers of the first division are then formed as those of the second, upon the other short side.

The troopers of the 2d division go through with the same exercise.

## TO PASSAGE TO THE RIGHT OR TO THE LEFT, THE HEAD TO THE WALL.

134.—The two columns marching at the *walk* upon the long sides, the instructor causes to be executed the movement to the right, or to the left, as prescribed, No. 126; but he causes the troopers to halt when the horses reach the opposite track, their heads to the wall, and he commands:

1. *Right* (or *left*) *pass*.
2. **MARCH.**

At the command *right pass*, bear the shoulders of the horse to the right, in opening a little the right reins.

This movement is only preparatory; it indicates to the trooper that the shoulders of his horse should always commence the march, and precede the movement of the haunches.

At the command MARCH, open the right rein to incline the horse to the right, closing at the same time the left leg that the haunches may follow, without leaning the body to the left; make use of the left rein and the right leg to support the horse and moderate his movement.

After some steps upon the side, the instructor halts the squad.

At the command HALT, cause to cease insensibly the effect of the right rein and the left leg, employing the opposite rein and leg; straighten the horse and replace the wrists and legs by degrees.

To passage to the left, and to halt, employ the same principles and inverse means.

135.--The instructor causes this movement to be executed in the commencement by each man separately, and then by all at the same time. He explains to each one the means to be employed.

The trooper should hold his horse obliquely to the track, to render his movement more easy. He ought to commence this movement moderately, and look to the side towards which he *passes*, without inclining the body to the opposite side, which would derange his seat and constrain the movement of the horse.

The horse having obeyed the aids, the trooper should keep up the effect by gentle means.

If the horse steps too quickly to the side towards which the trooper *passes*, diminish the effect of the right rein and left leg.

If the horse moves forward against the wall, it is necessary to diminish the effect of the legs, and increase that of the hands, in yielding and checking the horse alternately.

If, on the contrary, he steps back, it is necessary to increase the effect of the legs and diminish that of the hands,

inclining always the shoulders of the horse to the side towards which he passes; for it is generally the constraint that he experiences when the movement of the shoulders does not precede that of the haunches, which causes him to back.

### TO PASSAGE TO THE RIGHT, OR TO THE LEFT, BEING IN COLUMN.

136.—After having executed the passages, the head to the wall, the troopers having returned to the track, and marching *to the right hand* or *to the left hand*, the instructor orders a change of direction in the length of the riding house; and when the two columns are by the side of each other, he halts them and causes them to execute *passage to the right* (or *to the left*.)

When the troopers have nearly arrived at the track, the instructor halts them again.

The horses being quieted, he orders the passage to the left, and each trooper returns to the place he occupied before halting in the middle of the riding-house.

When the troopers have reached the track, the instructor may, if he thinks proper, cause them to march in column upon this same track, in order not to keep the horses too long at the movement of *passing*.

137.—When the troopers have *passed, the head to the wall*, the instructor causes them sometimes to *rein back*, and to cease reining back, as prescribed, No. 97.

138.—During the last days of this lesson, the instructor requires, from time to time, the reins to be held in the left hand, so that the troopers, conducting their horses with this hand alone, may be somewhat prepared for the exercises in the curb bridle. He observes that each trooper keeps himself square upon the horse.

139.—To terminate the lesson, and return to quarters, the instructor conforms to what is prescribed, No. 125.

140.—The troopers being proficient in the third and

fourth lessons, they are repeated *without stirrups*; these being crossed, after mounting, in front of the saddle.

## FIFTH LESSON.

141.—The same number of troopers are united as for the third lesson.

The horses are saddled and in both curb and snaffle. In all other respects conform to what is prescribed, No. 115, and following.

The troopers are conducted to the riding-house as prescribed, No. 118.

In entering the riding-house the instructor conforms to what is prescribed, No. 119; and when the two columns are upon the long sides, and exactly opposite, he commands:

1. *To the right (or to the left.)*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.

He explains then the position of the bridle hand as prescribed, No. 82.

## TO TAKE THE SNAFFLE IN THE RIGHT HAND.

142.—The instructor commands:

*Snaffle*—IN RIGHT HAND.

1 time.

At the last part of the command grasp the snaffle at the middle of the reins with all the fingers of the right hand, the nails downward, without lowering the body; hold the reins of the snaffle over those of the curb, and lower the left hand so as not to bear upon the bit.

143.—In using alternately the curb and snaffle, the trooper relieves the bars of the horse's mouth; he should never use both at the same time.

The troopers are required to take the snaffle in the right hand during the commencement of the exercise in the curb bridle, in order to make the change of position of the rider less abrupt, and to bring up his right side, which is apt to remain in rear.

### TO DROP THE SNAFFLE.

144.—The instructor commands:

*Drop—SNAFFLE.*

At the last part of the command, which is SNAFFLE, replace the left hand, and let fall the reins of the snaffle so that they will be under those of the curb, the right hand to the side.

### THE PRINCIPAL MOVEMENTS OF THE BRIDLE HAND.

145.—In raising slightly the hand and drawing it in towards the body, the trooper gathers his horse; in drawing it in still more, the gait is made slower. By increasing the effect of the hand, the horse is stopped; if increased still more, the horse is reigned back.

In lowering slightly the hand, the horse is at liberty to move forward.

In carrying the hand forward and to the right, the horse is turned to the right.

In carrying the hand forward and to the left, the horse is turned to the left.

As soon as the horse obeys, the bridle hand resumes its original position.

In all the movements of the hand, the arm should act freely, without communicating constraint to the shoulder or body; the effect of the curb being more powerful than that of the snaffle, it should be used progressively, particularly in stopping and reining back.

The instructor causes the following movements to be executed by the commands prescribed in the first lesson.

## TO GATHER THE HORSE.

146.—Elevate slightly the hand, drawing it at the same time towards the body, and close the legs.

## TO MARCH.

147.—Lower slightly the hand, the wrist always opposite the middle of the body; and close the legs progressively. As soon as the horse obeys, replace the hand and legs by degrees.

## TO HALT.

148.—The trooper braces himself in the saddle; elevate the hand by degrees in drawing it in towards the body; and close the legs to keep the horse straight and prevent him from stepping back. As soon as the horse obeys, replace the hand and the legs by degrees.

## TO TURN TO THE RIGHT IN MARCHING.

149.—Carry the hand forward and to the right, according to the sensibility of the horse; close the legs, the left leg the most. The movement being nearly finished, replace the hand and the legs by degrees.

## TO TURN TO THE LEFT IN MARCHING.

150.—Carry the hand forward and to the left, according to the sensibility of the horse; close the legs, the right leg the most. The movement being nearly finished, replace the hand and legs by degrees.

## TO TURN-ABOUT TO THE RIGHT AND TO THE LEFT MARCHING.

151.—The same principles as prescribed to execute a turn to the right, or to the left, observing to pass over a semicircle.



## TO MAKE AN OBLIQUE TURN TO THE RIGHT AND TO THE LEFT MARCHING.

152.—The same principles as prescribed to execute a turn to the right, or to the left, observing that the movement of the hand does not require the horse to do more than make a third of a turn to the right, or to the left.

## TO REIN BACK, AND TO CEASE REINING BACK.

153.—The same principles as prescribed for the halt, observing, as soon as the horse obeys, to lower and raise the hand alternately that the movement may be regular.

To cease reining back, relax the effect of the hand and close the legs; as soon as the horse obeys, replace the hand and the legs by degrees.

154.—The instructor does not require these different movements to be executed simultaneously, but observes particularly the manner in which each trooper employs his bridle hand. He always rectifies its position before passing from one movement to another.

## EXERCISE OF THE FOURTH LESSON WITH THE CURB BRIDLE.

155.—When the troopers begin to understand the movements of the bridle hand, the instructor causes them to march upon the track, first *at the walk*, and then *at the trot*. He requires the squad frequently to halt, to move off, to change direction, and to execute successively the different movements of the fourth lesson, observing that each trooper makes an exact application of the principles prescribed when at a halt.

The habitual fault with the troopers being to carry the left hand forward, and to throw back the right shoulder, the instructor is particular in requiring them to keep the hand above the pommel of the saddle without deranging the position of the body.

## TO PASSAGE TO THE RIGHT, AND TO THE LEFT.

156.—The instructor causes the squad to passage to the right, and to the left, the head to the wall and in column.

To passage to the right, bear the shoulders of the horse to the right, by inclining the hand to the right, at the same time bear sufficiently on the bit to prevent the horse from moving forward; close the left leg that the haunches may follow, keep the right leg near, to sustain the horse.

In order to cease passaging, straighten the horse, hold the right leg near, and replace the hand and the legs by degrees.

To passage to the left, and to cease passaging, employ the same principles, but inverse means.

## SIXTH LESSON.

## PRINCIPLES OF THE GALLOP.

157.—A horse gallops on the right foot, when the right fore and hind leg move in advance of the left fore and hind leg. This gait is generally divided into three distinct times or treads. The 1st time is marked by the left hind foot, which reaches the ground first; the 2d by the left fore and right hind foot, which touch at the same instant; and the 3d by the right fore foot.

A horse gallops on the left foot when the left fore and hind leg move in advance of the right fore and hind leg. In this case, the right hind foot first reaches the ground, then the right fore and left hind foot, and lastly the left fore foot.

A horse gallops true when he gallops on the right foot, in exercising or turning to the right hand, and on the left foot, in exercising or turning to the left hand.

A horse gallops false when he gallops on the left foot, in exercising or turning to the right hand, and on the right foot, in exercising or turning to the left hand.

A horse is "disunited" when he gallops with the near fore leg followed by the off hind leg, or with the off fore leg followed by the near hind leg.

When the horse is disunited, the trooper experiences in his position irregular movements; the centre of gravity of the horse is deranged, and his strength impaired.

## EXERCISE AT THE GALLOP UPON RIGHT LINES.

158.—When the troopers preserve in the 4th lesson their proper position at the gallop, they are taught to move off on a straight line to either hand.

After the troopers of the 2d division are formed, as prescribed, No. 133, the instructor causes the men of the front rank to take the distance of 4 paces from each other; these troopers marching *to the right hand* upon one of the long sides, the instructor commands:

1. *Gallop.*
2. MARCH.

At the command GALLOP, gather the horse, increasing the pressure of the legs, and restraining him with the reins.

At the command MARCH, carry the hand slightly to the left, feeling both reins equally, to enable the right shoulder to move in advance of the left, and close the right leg. The horse having obeyed, hold a light hand and the legs near, to keep him at his gait. To make him gallop on the left foot inverse means are used.

159.—The instructor requires the troopers to be calm, to conduct their horses with mildness, and particularly to preserve a light hand that the gallop may be free and regular.

During the first days of the exercise *at the gallop*, the troopers are required to take the reins of the snaffle in the right hand, in order to calm their horses; this is discontinued when they have acquired the habit of managing them with the curb bridle alone.

To preserve the movement of the horse true, it is necessary for the trooper to accommodate himself to all his motions, particularly in passing the corners, where the slightest derangement in the seat would render the action of the horse irregular.

When a horse gallops false, if to the right, the trooper will feel both reins to the left, in order to bring his weight to that side; the horse's head remaining bent to the right, and close firmly his left leg, to bring his haunches in again, and then as in No. 158.

160.—The troopers are permitted to make only a turn or two at the *gallop* to each hand, and always required to pass to the *trot* or walk in order to change hand.

When the horses have become quiet, and the troopers begin to manage them well, the distance between them is gradually diminished to 4 feet.

The 2d division is carried through the same exercise, and then both at the same time.

### EXERCISE AT THE GALLOP ON THE CIRCLE.

161.—When the troopers have been sufficiently exercised at the *gallop* upon straight lines, the instructor causes them to make a few turns on the circle, following the principles prescribed, No. 124.

This exercise is commenced on very large circles; the diameter is diminished as the troopers become more skilful.

To terminate the lesson, and return to the quarters, conform to what is prescribed, No. 125.

### SEVENTH LESSON.

162.—The same number of troopers compose the squad as for the 6th lesson; they have their arms.

The instructor is mounted. He has an assistant instructor.

The assistant instructor, also mounted, is armed like

the troopers, in order to execute the manual of arms, as given in detail by the instructor.

## EXERCISE OF THE SIXTH LESSON, WITH THE SABRE ONLY.

163.—The first days of the 7th lesson are employed in repeating all the movements of the 6th, the troopers being armed with the sabre only. The troopers are then furnished with all the arms. Before commencing the manual of arms, a few movements *at the walk* and *the trot* are executed, in order to calm the horses; during the remainder of the lesson, the exercise at a halt is interrupted by movements at the different gaits. The instructor requires them to be executed with the greatest regularity, so that the troopers, in learning to manage their arms, perfect themselves at the same time in conducting their horses.

### MANUAL OF ARMS AT A HALT.

164.—The troopers are formed by the commands **FRONT** and **HALT**, as prescribed, No. 125, and are 4 inches from knee to knee.

The instructor commands:

*Draw—SABRE.*

*2 times.*

165.—1. At the command **DRAW**, incline slightly the head to the left, carry the right hand above the reins, engage the wrist in the sword-knot, seize the gripe, disengage the blade 6 inches from the scabbard, and turn the head to the front.

2. At the command **SABRE**, draw quickly the sabre, raising the arm to its full length at an angle of 45 degrees, the sabre in a straight line with the arm; hold the sabre in this position an instant, then carry it to the right shoulder, the back of the blade supported against the

hollow of the shoulder, the wrist upon the top of the thigh, the little finger on the outside of the gripe.

*Present*--SABRE.

1 time.

166.—At the command SABRE, carry the sabre up and to the front, the thumb opposite to and 6 inches from the neck, the blade perpendicular, the edge to the left, the thumb along the right side of the gripe, the little finger joined to the other three.

*Carry*--SABRE.

1 time.

167.—At the command SABRE, replace the sabre, the back of the blade supported against the hollow of the shoulder, the wrist upon the upper part of the thigh, the little finger outside of the gripe.

*Charge*--SABRE.

1 time, 2 motions.

168.—1. At the command SABRE, raise the hand in tierce as high as the right ear and 7 inches from it, the right shoulder and elbow well back, the thumb on the back of the gripe, the point of the sabre to the front and slightly below the horizontal, the edge up.

2. Thrust to the front, the edge up, the arm at its full extent.

*Carry*--SABRE.

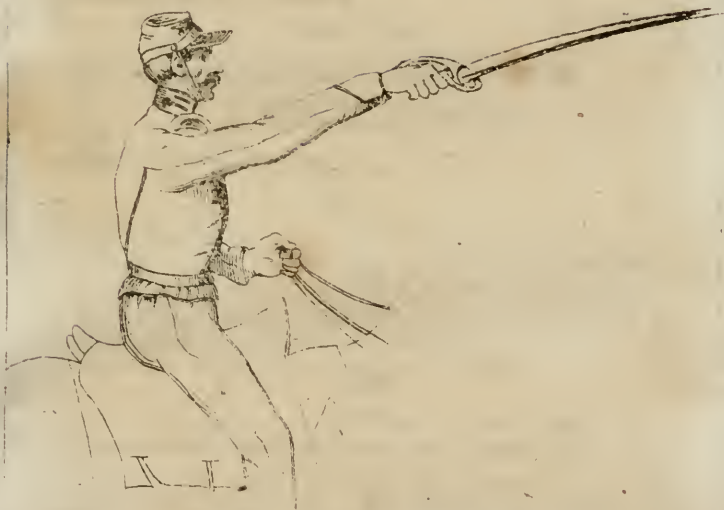
1 time.

169.—At the command SABRE, draw back the arm and replace the sabre as in No. 165.

*Return*--SABRE.

2 times.

170.—1. At the command RETURN, execute the movement of *present sabre*.







2. At the command *SABRE*, carry the wrist opposite to and 6 inches from the left shoulder, lower the blade in passing it near the left arm, the point to the rear, raising at the same time the right hand; incline the head slightly to the left, and fix the eyes upon the mouth of the scabbard; return the blade, disengage the wrist from the sword-knot, turn the head to the front.

The instructor commands:

*Draw—PISTOL.*

171.—This is executed as prescribed, No. 62.

### TO FIRE THE PISTOL.

The instructor commands:

*READY.*

172.—This is executed as in No. 63.

*AIM.*

*1 time.*

173.—This is executed as in No. 64.

*FIRE.*

*1 time.*

174.—At this command, *FIRE*, and raise pistol.

175.—At the position of *aim*, the instructor may command, *raise—PISTOL*; the men will raise the pistol to the position, No. 62. If the pistol is not fired, at the command *return—pistol*, first let down the hammer.

176.—To cock the pistol rapidly, without the use of the left hand, whilst pressing back the hammer with the right thumb, to assist its action throw forward the muzzle with a quick motion.

### TO LOAD THE PISTOL.

177.—The horses must be quiet; at the position of *raise pistol*, the instructor commands:

*Load at—WILL.*

At this command, let the reins rest on the pommel, half cock the pistol, take it by the stock with the left hand, the guard to the right, and lower it until the hand rests upon the inner side of the left thigh, the butt of the pistol touching the saddle, the hand and cylinder resting against the side of the pommel, the pistol being inclined to the front and right; with the right hand take a cartridge and place it in a chamber, turn the cylinder and force in the ball; repeat this until all the chambers are loaded. Then hold the pistol against the right side of the pommel, pointing downward, to the right and front, and put on the caps. Take the position of *raise pistol*.

*Return—PISTOL.*

178.—At the command *PISTOL*, place it in the holster, and button the flap.

The manual of a second pistol carried in a saddle holster is the same; where it is furnished, the manual mounted applies to it; and it will be the first used.

## INSPECTION OF ARMS.

179.—The instructor commands:

*Inspection—PISTOL.*

1 time, 3 motions.

1. At the command *PISTOL*, draw the pistol and take the position, *raise—pistol*.

2. Lower the pistol into the left hand, to half cock it, then hold it by the right hand vertical, guard to the left, about three inches above the bridle hand, in front of the middle of the body; the right fore-arm touching the side.

3. Place the pistol in the bridle hand, to let down the hammer, return it to the holster or belt, button the flap, and bring the right hand to the side.

The instructor commands:

*Inspection—SABRE.*

1 time, 7 motions.

180.—1. At the command **SABRE**, execute the first time of *draw sabre*.

2. Execute the second time of *draw sabre*.

3. *Present sabre*.

4. Move the thumb to the back of the gripe, turn it in the hand, the edge turning by the front to the right.

5. *Carry sabre*.

6. Execute the first time of *return sabre*.

7. Return the sabre.

181.—When troopers execute correctly the inspection of arms, they are exercised at it without detail, at the command:

*Inspection—ARMS.*

At this command the troopers execute the first and second motions of *inspection of pistol*.

As soon as the inspector has passed the man on his left, each trooper executes the third motion of *inspection of pistol*, and the first and second motions of *inspection of sabre*.

Each trooper, as the inspector reaches him the second time, executes the third and fourth motions of *inspection of sabre*.

As soon as the inspector has passed the next man on his left, he executes the fifth, sixth, and seventh motions of *inspection of sabre*; the inspector governs himself as in No. 73.

**SABRE EXERCISE, AT A HALT.**

182.—The troopers marching at a walk in two columns, the instructor causes them to take the distance of two paces one from another, and when the two columns are on the long side, he commands: 1. *To the right, (or left.)* 2. **MARCH.** 3. **HALT.** He causes them to exercise the sabre exercise, as taught on foot.

## EIGHTH LESSON.

## MANUAL OF ARMS, IN MARCHING.

183.—The troopers are required to *draw sabre*, and to *return sabre*, while marching in column at a *walk*.

The instructor observes that neither the seat nor the position of the bridle-hand is deranged. He also requires the troopers to keep the legs near, in order to prevent the horses from slackening the gait. When the troopers have the sabre down, the instructor observes that they do not throw back the right shoulder.

As the troopers become more skilful, they are required to *draw sabre*, in marching first at *the trot*, and then at *the gallop*. They also take the position of *charge sabre*, in marching at the different gaits.

The sabres are returned in marching at a *walk*; for this purpose the troopers are directed to support the back of the blade against the left arm, until the point has entered the scabbard.

The troopers are exercised, *sabres drawn*, in turning to *the right* and to *the left* at *the trot* and at *the gallop*, and to *the right-about* and *left-about* at the trot only.

## SABRE EXERCISE AT ALL GAITS.

184.—The troopers execute progressively, at the different gaits, the exercise of the sabre, taking care to preserve between each other a distance of 2 paces.

## LEAPING.

185.—For this exercise the width of the ditch should be from 3 to 5 feet, and the height of the bar or fence from 1 to 3 feet. The width and height of each are increased as the troopers and horses become more habituated to leaping.

The instructor forms the squad 30 paces in rear of the obstacle.

At the warning of the instructor, each trooper moves off at a *walk*, directs his march towards the obstacle, and at a third of the way commences *the trot*.

### TO LEAP THE DITCH.

186.—On arriving near the ditch, give the hand and close the legs, to force the horse to make the leap. The moment he reaches the ground, raise slightly the hand in order to sustain him.

### TO LEAP THE FENCE.

187.—On arriving near the obstacle, rein up the horse slightly and close the legs. At the moment of making the leap, give the hand, and elevate it slightly as soon as he reaches the ground on the other side.

The trooper, in leaping, should cling to the horse with the thighs and calves of the legs, taking care to lean a little forward as the horse is in the act of springing, and to seat himself well by leaning to the rear at the moment the horse reaches the ground.

188.—Each trooper, after having made the leap, continues to move at *the trot*, and takes his place in the rank which is formed 30 paces beyond the obstacle, taking care to pass to the walk just before halting.

During the first days of this exercise the troopers leap without arms; the horses ridden on the snaffle.

When the troopers have leaped without arms, they repeat the same exercise with arms, and finally with the sabre drawn.

The horses employed in the *school of the trooper* should be trained and accustomed to leaping. If, however, a horse refuses to leap, the instructor aids the trooper with the whip.

### INDIVIDUAL CHARGE.

189.—To exercise the troopers at the charge, they are conducted to the extremity of a ground which presents

a course of sufficient extent without obstacle. There they are formed in line and required to draw the sabre.

The instructor places himself 150 paces in front of the right of the troopers; a corporal, 60 paces further; and a corporal or trooper, 20 paces beyond him; he serves as the point of direction for the trooper on the right.

The assistant instructor remains at the point of departure, to see that the troopers move off one after another, and repeat to them what they are required to do.

To execute well the charge, the troopers should be careful to march straight forward, not to change the gait before arriving at the points indicated, and to increase or diminish the gait calmly.

Each trooper marches 15 paces, and takes *the trot*.

Having trotted 50 paces, the assistant instructor commands the *gallop*.

When he reaches the instructor, the latter commands:

#### CHARGE.

At this command, quicken the gallop to nearly full speed, keeping the horse at the same time under control; bear upon the stirrup, and take the position of **CHARGE SABRE**.

Abreast of the corporal the trooper retakes *the trot* and carries *the sabre*.

At 10 paces from the second corporal he takes *the walk*, and halts abreast of him.

All the other troopers execute successively the same movement, the assistant instructor causing each one to set off when the trooper who precedes him has halted. Each trooper takes for his point of direction the place he is to occupy in the rank, and places himself on the left of the troopers already formed.

190.—The first charge being completed, the instructor breaks the squad *by file to the right*, and reforms in *facing to the rear*, by the commands **FRONT** and **HALT**.

The troopers then charge in the opposite direction on the same principles.

191.—The charge should be executed only twice the same day. It usually terminates the exercise; after executing it the squad marches at a *walk* a sufficient time to enable the horses to become calm before entering the stables.

### CIRCLING ON THE FOREHAND AND HAUNCHES, AND DEMI-PIROUETTE.

192.—The troopers are now taught on instructed horses to circle on the forehand and haunches, and the demi-pirouette, conforming to Article 7, Title 1st, all of which article they are made to understand and practice.

The practice of new horses at the *paces* for manœuvre is made useful for the instruction of the recruits, as well as for their practice in riding.

### TARGET PRACTICE.

193.—For the target practice on horseback, the target should be 8 feet high and 3 feet broad; at 6 feet of its height it is marked with a black band 3 inches wide, with a square at its centre—white.

The troopers are first practiced at 10 paces, firing at a halt, to the front, right, left, and rear.

In firing to the front, aim directly over the horse's head, as in that position a smaller mark is presented to an enemy, and the trooper's person is partly covered by the horse.

The distance is increased to 20, 30, 40, and to 50 paces.

Afterwards the troopers are exercised, at the same distances, at the *walk*.

In firing the troopers must not halt, or at all change gait or direction.

They are then practiced at the same kind of target, and on the same principles at the *trot*.

For the most advanced practice, a cylindrical post, 12 inches in diameter, and 8 feet high, will be used as a

target, a barrier will extend out 12 feet, so as to require the trooper in passing to ride rather more than that distance off; in a line with the target, and parallel with the track, a small post will be set up, 10 paces on each side.

The troopers will first be exercised a little at a *walk*, and at a *trot*. The trooper will be instructed first to march past with the target to his right, and without disturbing the motions of his horse, to fire to the right front, choosing his point anywhere from the small post to the barrier.

Next he will pass with the target on his left, firing to the left-front; at any point in his course between the small post and the barrier.

Next he will pass, with his right to the target, and fire between the barriers and the small post, to his right rear.

Finally, with his left to the target, he will fire to his left rear, within the prescribed limits of his course.

This practice at a *gallop* is the final and principal exercise of the target firing.

## RECORD AND REPORTS OF TARGET FIRING.

194.—Beside the foregoing progressive instruction for recruits, there will be target firing in every three months in every squadron; on each occasion, the best practiced troopers firing at least 12 shots mounted; every member of the squadron, not a capital prisoner, will join in the exercise.

There will be a record of target firing in each squadron kept in a book, giving the name and performance of each member. In the *string-measure*, each miss at dismounted practice counts 24 inches, at mounted practice, 36 inches.

The book will be in printed blanks of the following form, and ruled for the number of members of the squadrons, (companies,) viz:



Record of target practice of \_\_\_\_\_ squadron, \_\_\_\_\_ regiment, Confederate States \_\_\_\_\_, for the quarter ending \_\_\_\_\_, 18\_\_\_\_\_.

Names.	Rank.	DISMOUNTED.			MOUNTED.		
		50 yards.		100 yards.	At the halt—50 yds.		Gallop practice.
		No. of shots.	String measure.	No. of shots.	No. of shots.	String measure.	No. of hits.
Totals.....							

The squadron practiced, dismounted, on the \_\_\_\_\_ days of \_\_\_\_\_, 18\_\_\_\_\_; and mounted, on the \_\_\_\_\_ days of \_\_\_\_\_, 18\_\_\_\_\_.

The above is a true record of the practice.

\_\_\_\_\_, Captain.

195.—On the 1st of May and 1st of November, annually, the captains will report to the regimental commander an abstract giving the *totals* from this record. At the same time he will make report of the names of the first and second best performers of the squadron, at the gallop practice at the round target.

On receipt of these reports the commander of the regiment shall publish, in regimental orders, the first and second best squadrons, and the names of the two best shots in each squadron of the regiment.

## SCHOOL OF THE PLATOON, MOUNTED.

196.—The troopers being sufficiently instructed to manage their horses and use their arms, are passed to the *school of the platoon*, the object of which is to teach them to exercise properly together, and execute all the movements of the platoon in the squadron, whether in column or in line.

Each movement, after having been correctly executed by the right, is repeated by the left.

When the movements are all executed at *the walk*, the instructor causes them to be repeated at *the trot*, requiring always the same simultaneous action and the same precision. This gradation is also followed for the exercise at *the gallop*; but the horses are not kept a long time at this gait.

The platoon is composed of from 12 to 24 men, including 2 corporals; the instructor moves wherever his presence is most required; the platoon is under arms.

197.—The platoon formed in line, the troopers at the head of their horses, the instructor commands:

1. ATTENTION.
2. *Right*—DRESS.
3. FRONT.

He then commands:

COUNT FOURS.

At this command, the men, in a firm voice, commencing on the right, count, *one, two, three, four*, from right to left.

The troopers then mount by the *times*, and without explanation.

## ARTICLE FIRST.

### GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF ALIGNMENT.

198.—The troopers, to align themselves, should regulate their shoulders upon those of the men on the side of the alignment, and for this purpose they should turn the head, remaining square upon their horses, and so correct their positions as just to perceive the breast of the second trooper from them, and keep the horses straight in the ranks, that all may have a parallel direction.

### SUCCESSIVE ALIGNMENT OF FILES IN THE PLATOON.

199.—The two files of the right or of the left are moved forward 10 paces, and aligned parallel to the platoon by the commands: 1. *Two files from right (or left) forward*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Right (or left) DRESS*; 5. FRONT.

The instructor commands:

1. *By file—right (or left) DRESS.*
2. FRONT.

At the command DRESS, the files move forward successively and steadily, the troopers turning the head to the right, and taking the last steps slowly, in order to arrive abreast of the files already formed without passing beyond the alignment, observing then to halt, give the hand, relax the legs, and keep the head to the right until the command FRONT.

Each file executes the same movement when the pre-

ceding one has arrived on the base of alignment, so that only one file may align itself at the same time.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

200.—When the troopers execute correctly these alignments, this instruction is repeated in giving the two files of the right an oblique direction. For this purpose, the two files having marched forward 4 paces, as has been prescribed, execute a *half turn to the right, or to the left*, and march 6 paces in this new direction.

The platoon being unmasked, the remainder of the movement is executed by the commands and following the principles prescribed, No. 199, each file, as it arrives nearly opposite the place it is to occupy, executes a *half turn to the right, or to the left*, so that having left the platoon by one straight line, it arrives upon the new alignment by another.

201.—The two files of the right, or of the left, are made to rein back 4 paces, and align themselves parallel to the platoon and opposite the place they occupied in it, by the commands: 1. *Two files from right (or left) backwards*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Right (or left) Dress*; 5. FRONT.

The instructor commands:

1. *By file—right (or left) backward—Dress.*
2. FRONT.

At the command DRESS, each file reins back successively, keeping perfectly straight, the troopers turning the head to the right, and passing a little to the rear of the files already formed, in order to come up abreast of them by a movement to the front, which renders the alignment more easy.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

The alignment of the rear gives the means of repairing a fault by returning to the alignment when it has been passed over; but it should be avoided as much as possible.

202.—The alignment is then executed by twos (or by fours.) For this purpose, the two or four files of the right move forward as has been prescribed, and the instructor commands :

1. *By twos (or by fours)—right (or left)—DRESS.*
2. FRONT.

At the command DRESS, the files align themselves successively by twos (or by fours) following the principles prescribed for the alignment by file, being particular to set out and arrive upon the alignment together.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

203.—The instructor observes that the troopers align themselves on the breast of the second man towards the side of the alignment, and not upon the extremity of the rank, (which would prevent their remaining square in their seats;) that they are neither too much opened nor closed. The troopers are also required to align themselves promptly, that the horses may not be kept a long time *gathered*.

204.—When a platoon is not aligned, it arises from the fact, generally, that the horses are not straight in the ranks.

When a platoon dresses to the right, if the left wing is in rear, it is presumed that most of the horses are turned to the left; it is necessary to observe if this is the case, and to command the troopers to carry the hand slightly to the right, at the same time closing the right leg, which brings the horse upon the alignment.

When a platoon dresses to the right, if the left wing is in advance, it is presumed that the horses are turned to the right; the troopers are then required to carry the hand to the left, closing at the same time the left leg, which causes the horse to step back to his proper place.

In dressing to the left the same faults are corrected by inverse means.

205.—During the alignment, the instructor places himself in front of the troopers, to be assured that they execute the movement steadily, and do not turn the head more than is prescribed; that they preserve their intervals of 4 inches between the knees; that they take the last steps slowly; that they align themselves without losing time as they arrive; and that they give the hand and replace the legs immediately after being aligned.

206.—The instructor insists upon all these principles; but the alignments will be occasionally interrupted by marches in column, in order to calm the horses.

### ALIGNMENT OF THE PLATOON.

207.—The platoon being in line, the instructor places the corporal of the flank on which he wishes to align it in such a position that no trooper will be forced to rein back, and commands:

1. *Right (or left)*—DRESS.
2. FRONT.

At the command DRESS, all the troopers align themselves promptly, but with steadiness.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

208.—In all the alignments, the non-commissioned officers on the flanks of platoons align on each other, without respect to the individual alignment of the troopers.

### TO BREAK THE PLATOON BY FILE, BY TWOS, AND BY FOURS.

209.—The platoon being in line the instructor commands:

1. *By file, by twos, (or by fours.)*
2. MARCH.

At the first command, the first file, or files, gather their horses.

At the command MARCH, the right file, or set of twos or fours, moves straight to the front; the next moves forward, when the croups of the horses of the first are even with the heads of their horses, or—which is the same—when the first file or set has marched 3 paces; they march 3 paces straight to the front, then make an individual oblique turn to the right, (30 degrees,) march in that direction until they are in column; then they make an oblique turn to the left to follow the first; the other files or sets do the same, in succession.

A second set of fours, commencing the oblique movement one length behind the first, marches 24 feet, and gains 20.78 feet to the front, to enter the column; losing the fraction in the two turns, there will be 4 open feet between them; the same difference in the distances to be marched exists with other sets. This is the distance to be preserved, in each of the three columns.

If the platoon be marching, at the command MARCH, the right four, or two, move on: and all the others halt, and then proceed as described.

### DIRECT MARCH IN COLUMN BY FILE, TWOS, AND BY FOURS.

210.—The troopers should keep their horses straight, and their eyes to the front; marching exactly behind each other in the column, preserving the distance of 4 feet from croup to head. The greater the depth of the column the more attention is necessary to the equality of the gait, and the preservation of distances.

The trooper on the left of the first set, right in front, or on its right, left in front, is guide of the column; he moves straight forward, and—when the platoon is led—preserves a gait which keeps the set one pace behind the chief of the platoon. The troopers behind him are the guides of their sets; they preserve the distance; and the



others align themselves on him, preserving from that side their intervals.

### CHANGE OF DIRECTION.

211.—The column marching by file, twos, or fours, the instructor commands :

*Left*—TURN; or, *Right*—TURN.

At the first part of the command, the leading trooper, or set, gathers the horses.

At the command TURN, the leading set turns, the pivot taking care not to slacken his gait, and to march over a quarter circle of five paces extent, thus gaining both to the front, and to the new direction, a distance of 10 feet. The trooper on the opposite side trots—increasing his gait so that the set shall be squarely aligned during the turn; the dressing is to this side; intervals are preserved from the pivot. Having made a full turn, the troopers who have increased their gait resume the same gait they had been marching, and which is preserved by the pivots.

Each fraction marches steadily to the point where the first commenced the turn; and it should be explained to them that the *distance* on the outer flank must properly be much increased during the turn. The pivots are apt to lessen their speed, which, with the error of attempting to preserve distance unchanged, causes those in rear gradually to oblique.

### TO HALT, AND TO COMMENCE THE MARCH IN COLUMN.

212.—The column marching, the instructor commands :

*Column*—HALT.

To move off, the instructor commands :

*Forward*—MARCH.

## INDIVIDUAL OBLIQUE MARCH.

213.—The column marching by file, by twos, or by fours, the instructor commands:

1. *Left (or right) oblique.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, each trooper executes individually a third of a turn, or face, to the left, without checking his motion.

The trooper on the left of the first set, who is guide of the column, moves straight forward in the new direction; the trooper on the left of each of the other sets, who is its guide, moves forward also in the new direction, keeping in a perpendicular line to the proper front, passing through the guide of the column, and moving in a parallel direction with him.

The other troopers having turned, and marching in a parallel direction with their guide, align by him and keep their persons in a line parallel with that of their front before commencing to oblique; thus the horse's head of each will be opposite the shoulder of the next horse towards the guide, who, during the movement, is always on the flank towards which the oblique march is made.

To return to the primitive direction the instructor commands:

FORWARD.

At this command the troopers return to the original direction by an oblique turn while advancing, and move forward.

**THE PLATOON MARCHING IN COLUMN BY FILE,  
BY TWOS, AND BY FOURS, TO FORM LINE  
FACED TO THE FRONT, TO THE LEFT, AND  
TO THE RIGHT.**

214.—The platoon marching in column, right in front, to form line faced to the front, the instructor commands:

1. *Front into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.
4. DRESS.
5. FRONT.

At the command MARCH, the leading file or set continues to march forward, the others oblique to the left, march in that direction, and when opposite their places in line make an oblique turn to the right.

When the first files have marched twenty paces, the instructor commands: 1. HALT. 2. DRESS. The other files come up successively on their left, halt, and dress to the right until the command FRONT.

215.—A column marching left in front, the movement is executed on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the same commands.

216.—The column marching left in front, to form line faced to the left, upon the prolongation and in advance of its left flank, the instructor commands.

1. *On left into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.
4. DRESS.
5. FRONT.

At the command MARCH, the first file or set turns to the left and moves straight forward, the others march straight on, and each turns successively, one, two, or four paces beyond the point where the preceding one has turned.

When the first files have marched twenty paces, the instructor commands: 1. HALT. 2. DRESS. The other files successively halt and dress to the left until the command FRONT.

217.—The column marching right in front, to form line faced to the right, upon the prolongation and in advance

of its right flank, the movement is executed on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *On right into line.* 2. MARCH. 3. HALT. 4. DRESS. 5. FRONT.

218.—A column marching by file, or by twos, right in front, to form line faced to the left, the instructor commands:

1. *Left into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.
4. DRESS.
5. FRONT.

At the command MARCH, the first file or set of twos turns to the left and moves straight forward, the others continue to march on, and turn successively to the left three paces before arriving opposite the places they are to occupy in the line, which is each on the left of the preceding one.

When the first files have marched twenty paces, the instructor commands: 1. HALT. 2. DRESS. The other files come up, halt in succession, and dress until the command FRONT.

219.—The column, by file or by twos, marching left in front, to form line faced to the right, the movement is executed on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the command: 1. *Right into line.* 2. MARCH. 3. HALT. 4. DRESS. 5. FRONT.

220.—A column of fours right in front, marching or halted, to form line, faced to the left, on its left flank, the instructor commands:

1. *Left into line wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Right—DRESS.*
4. FRONT.

At the command MARCH, each set of fours executes its wheel to the left, according to the principles of the wheel, on a fixed pivot, No. 283; Nos. 4, &c., turn upon the fore feet of their horses; the other troopers, preserving their intervals from the pivot flank, regulate their alignment by the marching flank. At the command *right-DRESS*, the troopers halt, straighten their horses, and align themselves until the command FRONT.

221.—A column of fours left in front is formed in line, faced to the right, on its right flank, on the same principles, by inverse means, at the commands; 1. *Right into line wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Left-DRESS*; 4. FRONT.

222.—Line may also be formed to either side, without regard to right or left being in front. When the movements are executed with regularity at the *walk*, they are repeated at the *trot* and at the *gallop*.

## MANUAL OF ARMS.

223.—The troopers being in line, execute at a halt the manual of arms, as prescribed, No. 165, and following.

224.—The exercise being finished, the troopers are commanded to dismount and file off. The instructor remains mounted until the last horse in the platoon has filed off.

## ARTICLE SECOND.

### TO FORM TWOS AND FOURS AT THE SAME GAIT.

225.—The platoon marching in column by file, right in front, to form twos the instructor commands:

1. *Form twos.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the first trooper continues to march on, and halts when he has marched 12 paces; the second obliquely to the left, and comes up abreast of the first; on arriving there, he halts and dresses to the right. All the others continue to march straight forward, Nos. 2 and 4 executing their movement in the same manner, but successively, and when Nos. 1 and 3, upon which they should form, have nearly arrived at their proper distance, and are about to halt.

226.—The platoon marching in column by twos, right in front, to form fours the instructor commands:

1. *Form fours.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the first two troopers continue to march on, and halt when they have marched 12 paces; the two following oblique to the left, and come up abreast of the first two; on arriving there, they halt and dress to the right. All the others continue to march straight forward, Nos. 3 and 4 executing their movement in the same manner, but successively, and when Nos. 1 and 2, upon which they should form, have nearly arrived at their proper distance, and are about to halt.

227.—When the column is at a *trot* the formation of twos and fours at the same gait is executed, following the same principles. The first two troopers pass to the *walk*, at the command MARCH: the others continue to march at the *trot*; until they have arrived abreast of those on which they should form; then they pass to the *walk*.

When the column is at a *gallop* the movement is executed, following the same principles. The first, or first two troopers, pass to the *trot* at the command MARCH; the others continue to march at the *gallop*, until they have executed their formation; then they pass to the *trot*.

When twos or fours are formed at the *trot* or at the *gallop*, the guide is announced as soon as the first files

have doubled. In executing the same movements at a *walk*, as the head of the column halts, the guide is not announced.

The column marching left in front, these movements are executed, following the same principles and by inverse means, at the same command.

### TO BREAK BY TWOS AND BY FILE AT THE SAME GAIT.

228.—The platoon marching in column by fours, right in front, to break by twos, the instructor commands:

1. *By twos.*
2. MARCH.

At the command *by twos*, all the troopers prepare to halt, except the first numbers, 1 and 2.

At the command MARCH, these continue to march at the same gait; all the others halt. Nos. 3 and 4 of the leading rank oblique to the right the moment they are passed by the croup of the horses of Nos. 1 and 2, and place themselves in column behind them.

Each set of fours executes successively the same movement, Nos. 1 and 2 breaking as soon as files 3 and 4 of the rank which precedes them have commenced obliquing, in order to enter the column.

229.—The platoon marching in column by twos, right in front, to break by file, the instructor commands:

1. *By file.*
2. MARCH.

This is executed on the same principles as the preceding.

230.—When the column is at *the trot*, to break by twos or by file is executed on the same principles; the right files of the leading rank continue at *the trot*; all

the others take *the walk* at the command MARCH, and resume *the trot*, in order to enter the column; when the column is at *the gallop*, the files which are to break take *the trot* at the command MARCH, and afterwards resume *the gallop* on entering the column.

The instructor observes that the files which break, halt, change gait, and put themselves again in motion, with steadiness; that they keep their horses straight, so as not to retard the movements of those which only march forward, and that they retake successively their distances, their directions, and their original gait:

231.—The column marching left in front, the movement is executed, following the same principles but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By the left, by twos (or by file)*; 2. MARCH.

### TO FORM TWOS AND FOURS IN DOUBLING THE GAIT.

232.—The platoon marching in column by file, right in front, to form twos, the instructor commands:

1. *Form twos—trot.*
2. MARCH.

At the first command all the even numbers prepare to take *the trot*.

At the command MARCH, numbers two and four throughout take the *trot*, oblique to the left, and come up abreast of Nos. 1 and 3; then all *trot* except the first twos, who continue the *walk*; the others trot, until they arrive at their proper distance, when they pass to the *walk*.

233.—The platoon marching in column by twos, right in front, to form fours the instructor commands:

1. *Form fours—trot.*
2. MARCH.



At the first command all the numbers three and four prepare to take the *trot*.

At the command MARCH, numbers 3 and 4 throughout take the *trot*, oblique to the left, and come up abreast of numbers 1 and 2; the first set of fours continue the *walk*; all the others trot, until they arrive at their proper distance, when they pass to the *walk*.

234.—When the column is at *the trot*, the movement is executed on the same principles. At the command MARCH, numbers 3 and 4 throughout take the gallop, &c.; and all resume *the trot* when their formation is executed.

When the column is at *the gallop* the movement to form twos or fours is always executed at the same gait, as prescribed, No. 227.

235.—The column marching left in front, the movement is executed, following the same principles but by inverse means, at the same commands.

### TO BREAK BY TWOS AND BY FILE, IN DOUBLING THE GAIT:

236.—The platoon marching in column by fours, the instructor commands:

1. *By twos—trot.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, numbers 1 and 2 of the leading set of fours commence the *trot*; all the others continue to march at the *walk*; numbers 3 and 4, the moment the croups of the horses of numbers 1 and 2 pass their horses' heads, oblique to the right at the *trot*, to place themselves in column behind them; then the next numbers 1 and 2 take the *trot*; then the next numbers 3 and 4 trot and oblique as soon as they are passed, and so on.

237.—The platoon marching in column by twos, to break by file the instructor commands:

1. *By file—trot.*
2. MARCH.

This is executed on the same principles, No. 236.

238.—When the column is at *the trot*, to break in doubling the gait the instructor commands: 1. *By twos (or by file)—gallop*; 2. MARCH; which is executed on the same principles.

When the column is at *the gallop* the movement to break by twos or by file is executed at the same gait as prescribed, No. 230.

In these movements, the instructor observes that the head of the column changes gait with moderation, and that the troopers who follow do not permit their horses to move off before the moment prescribed.

239.—The column marching left in front, the movement is executed on the same principles, by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By the left—by twos (or by file;)* 2. MARCH.

## SABRE EXERCISE.

240.—The instructor causes the sabre exercise to be executed at a halt; for this purpose he orders the odd numbers to march forward 6 paces; he then commands:

1. *By the left (or by the right)—open files.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the right trooper of each rank moves forward 6 paces; the second and third oblique to the left, and come up abreast of the right files, with intervals of 4 paces; the others first turn to the left, march forward, and turn to the right so as to come into each line with the same intervals.

241.—When the instructor wishes to form the platoon, he commands:

1. *Second rank into line.*
2. MARCH.

At the second command, the troopers ride into the middle of their intervals; the instructor then commands:

1. *Close files to the right (or left.)*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the right file moves forward 6 paces; the second and third oblique to their places; the others turn to the right, march forward, and turn to the left, into their places.

---

### ARTICLE THIRD.

#### DIRECT MARCH OF THE PLATOON IN LINE.

243.—The most important point in the *direct march* being to keep the horses straight in the ranks, it is indispensable that the troopers should preserve the head direct.

The troopers should yield to all pressure coming from the side of the guide, and resist that coming from the opposite side.

The guide should always march at a free and steady gait, and change it with steadiness, in order to avoid irregularity in the ranks.

If the troopers are too near or too far from the man on the side of the guide, they move from or approach him very gradually, and in gaining ground to the front, but not immediately; the irregularity generally results from errors which will correct themselves, and which precipitancy will only aggravate.

When the guide feels himself thrown out of his direction, he extends his arm to the front to indicate that there is too much pressure towards him. Then the troopers carry the bridle hand towards the opposite side, give a glance to the guide, and straighten their horses as soon as the guide is relieved; but the troopers must be taught to correct the intervals of files more by the leg than by the hand.

244.—The corporal of the flank opposite to the guide is not required to preserve the head direct. He aligns himself upon the guide and the general front of the platoon.

The guide is commanded alternately to the right and to the left, that the troopers may have the habit of dressing equally towards either direction.

When the instructor wishes to exercise the platoon at the direct march, it is conducted to the extremity of a ground of sufficient extent to admit of its marching some time without changing the direction.

245.—The platoon being in line, the instructor commands :

1. *Open files to the left (or to the right.)*
2. MARCH.
3. *Right (or left)—DRESS.*
4. FRONT.

At the command MARCH, all the troopers, except the right file, passage to the left, as prescribed, No. 134; the second trooper straightens his horse and halts as soon as he has gained an interval of one pace between himself and the trooper of the right.

Each of the other troopers executes the same movement, regulating the interval by the trooper on his right.

The troopers being aligned, the instructor indicates to the guide of the right, or of the left, a fixed point in a direction perpendicular to the front of the platoon; he instructs him to take an intermediate point, never to

lose sight of these two points, in order to keep himself always in the proper direction, and to select a more distant point as he approaches the one nearest to him.

To give a point of direction, the instructor places himself exactly behind the right file, or the left file, and indicates to the trooper of the front rank an object on the ground which is immovable and can be distinctly seen, such as a tree or a rock.

246.--To march the platoon forward, the instructor commands:

1. *Forward.*
2. *Guide right (or left.)*
3. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, all the troopers move straight forward at the same gait with the men on the side of the guide.

The troopers should give a glance from time to time towards the guide.

During the march the instructor is sometimes at the side of the guide, to assure himself that the troopers march on the same line; and sometimes behind the guide, to observe that he follows the direction indicated.

247.--To halt the platoon, the instructor commands:

1. *Platoon.*
2. HALT.
3. *Right (or left)—DRESS.*
4. FRONT.

At the command HALT, the troopers stop.

At the command *right*—DRESS, they align themselves.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

248.—The troopers having been sufficiently exercised in marching with open files, the instructor halts the platoon, and commands:

1. *Close files to the right (or to the left.)*
2. MARCH.
3. *Right (or left)—DRESS.*
4. FRONT.

At the command MARCH, all the troopers except the right file passage to the right, and resume their places.

249.—When the troopers begin to manage their horses properly at *the walk*, they are required to open and close files, marching at the same gait, taking care not to repeat these movements too often, but to make them march some time after having opened the files, before closing them, and after having closed the files, before opening them; for this purpose the instructor commands:

1. *Open files to the left (or to the right.)*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, all the troopers except the right file make an *oblique turn to the left*, at the same time advancing and preserving their alignment. When they are at one pace from the man on the right, they straighten their horses and move forward.

250.—To close files, the instructor commands:

1. *Close files to the right (or to the left.)*
2. MARCH.

This movement is executed following the same principles, but by inverse means. Each trooper should close the leg in sufficient time to preserve his interval from the file to which he closes.

251.—These movements having been executed to the right and to the left in marching at *the walk*, they are repeated at *the trot*.

The platoon is then exercised in commencing *the trot* from a halt, and in halting while marching at this gait.

252.--After the troopers have been exercised sufficiently in the direct march to confirm them in the principles, the instructor makes use of the following means, which consist in causing faults to be committed that the troopers may learn how to correct them.

The platoon being on the march, the instructor directs the guide to augment or slacken his gait by degrees, and from time to time, without command. He gives notice to the troopers that they must employ the means prescribed to replace themselves upon the alignment.

The instructor next instructs the guide to take a direction which carries him a little out, repeating to the troopers that they should gain ground to the side only in advancing.

When the troopers learn to reclose with steadiness, the instructor directs the guide to take a direction that will cause crowding in the ranks; then the troopers yield to the pressure, and gain insensibly ground towards the opposite direction.

The instructor reminds them that to repair irregularities too rapidly would create new ones.

When the troops have acquired, in the execution of these movements at *the walk*, the necessary skill to avoid confusion, they are repeated at *the trot*.

253.--As one of the most necessary instructions for preparing the soldier to act in squadron, is the method of marching perfectly straight, by keeping in line two objects, for this purpose each man will be successively placed on the directing flank.

254.--To exercise the troopers in the direct march at *the gallop*, the progression established for the exercise at *the walk* and at *the trot* is followed, except that the ranks are neither opened nor closed, nor are faults committed to be again repaired.

When marching at a *gallop*, the platoon should habitually pass to *the trot* and *the walk* before being halted; but when the troopers are masters of their horses, it may be halted sometimes without changing the gait.

## COUNTERMARCH.

255.—The platoon having arrived at the extremity of the ground, in order to change its direction to face to the rear, the instructor commands:

1. *Countermarch—by the right flank.*
2. MARCH.
3. FRONT.

At the command MARCH, the non-commissioned officer on the right turns to the right-about, No. 93, moves to the rear, and turns to the right, and moves forward, so as to pass one pace in rear of the croups of the horses of the platoon; arriving near the flank he turns to the left, and halts behind the left file, with two paces between the croups of their horses. The other troopers move, each when the one on his right has gone five paces, (nearly completed his about turn,) performs his right-about and right turn from his own ground independently, and will thus find himself one pace behind the trooper who had been on his right; and each turns to the left so as to come into his place in line as before, halts, and dresses to the right. But the troopers who are at the left of the centre of the platoon, make at first a *right turn*, moving so as to follow each other with distances of one pace, and turn again to the right opposite their places, and move up into line, dressing by the right.

At the command FRONT, all turn their eyes to the front.

256.—The countermarch is executed by the left flank on the same principles.

The countermarch should generally be executed at *the trot*; the instructor adding that word to the first command.

## WHEELINGS.

257.—There are two kinds of wheels: *the wheel on a fixed pivot*, and *the wheel on a movable pivot*.



The wheel is always on a *fixed pivot*, except when the command is *right* (or *left*)—TURN.

The troopers should execute this movement without disuniting, and without ceasing to observe the alignment.

In every kind of wheel, the conductor of the marching flank should measure with his eye the arc of the circle he is to pass over, so that it may not be necessary for the files either to open or close. He turns his head occasionally towards the pivot; if he perceives that the troopers are too much crowded, or too open, he increases or diminishes gradually the extent of his circle in gaining more or less ground to the front than to the side.

Each trooper should describe his circle in the ratio of the distance at which he may be from the pivot. As these different arcs are all passed over in the same time, it is necessary that each trooper should slacken his pace in proportion to the distance from the marching flank.

During the wheel, the troopers should turn the head slightly towards the marching flank, to regulate the rapidity of their march, and to keep themselves aligned; they must also preserve the intervals of files on the side of the pivot, in order to remain closed to that side. They should nevertheless yield to pressure coming from the pivot, and resist that from the opposite direction. The horses are slightly turned towards the pivot, in order to keep them upon the circular line they have to pass over.

When the troopers have opened, they should approach the pivot insensibly, diminishing their circle by degrees, in gaining more ground to the front than to the side. In this case, they give alternately a glance to the pivot and to the marching flank, taking care not to force the pivot.

When the troopers, have closed too much, they should endeavor to correct the fault gradually in increasing their circle by degrees, in gaining more ground to the front than to the side. For this purpose, they give alternately a glance to the marching flank and to the pivot.

In every kind of wheel, the troopers should cease

wheeling and retake the direct march at the command FORWARD, at whatever point of the wheel they may be. It is necessary to observe, also, that the flanks which become pivots, or marching flanks, do not slacken or augment the pace before the command of execution, a very common fault, arising chiefly from want of care in giving the commands with exactness as to time.

### TO WHEEL ON A FIXED PIVOT.

258.—The use of a wheel on a fixed pivot is, when the platoon forms a part of the squadron, to pass from the order of battle to the order of column, and from the order of column to the order of battle.

The trooper who forms the pivot of the wheel turns his horse upon his fore feet, keeps his ground, and comes gradually round with the rank.

When the platoon is marching, the pivot halts, and the marching flank executes its movement at the same gait as before the wheel.

If the instructor indicates a new gait, in order to wheel, the marching flank wheels at this gait; all the other troopers regulate the rapidity of their march in accordance with their distance from the marching flank, and take freely the new gait at the command FORWARD.

When the platoon is halted after a wheel on a fixed pivot, the alignment is always ordered towards the side of the marching flank.

259.—The platoon being formed in line, the instructor commands:

1. *In circle right (or left) wheel.*
2. MARCH

At the command MARCH, the troopers put themselves in motion; the non-commissioned officer who conducts the moving flank marches at a *walk*, measuring with the eye the extent of the circle he is to pass over, that nei-

ther opening nor closing may be caused in the rank, and that the troopers may keep aligned. The pivot man turns upon his own ground, regulating himself upon the marching flank.

260.—When the platoon has executed several wheels, to halt it, the instructor commands:

1. *Platoon.*
2. HALT.
3. *Left (or right)*—DRESS.
4. FRONT.

At the command HALT, the troopers straighten their horses and halt with steadiness.

At the command *left (or right)*—DRESS, they align themselves towards the side indicated.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

261.—The platoon is then marched forward, and made to recommence the wheel. When the instructor wishes the platoon to take the direct march, he commands:

1. FORWARD.
2. *Guide left (or right.)*

At the command FORWARD, the pivot resumes the gait at which it was previously marching.

All the other troopers straighten their horses, and the two flanks move forward at the same gait, conforming to the principles of the direct march.

At the command *guide left (or right)* the troops regulate their movement towards the side indicated.

262.—When the troopers have executed several wheels to the right and to the left, interrupted occasionally by direct marches, and when the horses become calm, the instructor causes them to pass to *the trot*; after several wheels at *the trot*, they resume *the walk*.

263.—If the platoon is wheeling to the right, and the instructor wishes it to change the wheel to the left without halting, he commands:

1. *In circle left wheel.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the left flank halts, and becomes the pivot. The right flank, assuming the gait at which the left flank was marching, describes a circle proportionate to the extent of the front. All the other troopers, first straightening their horses, guide them so as to pass over the new circles.

264.—The platoon being halted, to place it in a direction perpendicular to the original front, the instructor commands:

1. *Right (or left) wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.
4. *Left (or right)—DRESS.*
5. FRONT.

Which is executed on the same principles of the wheel on a fixed pivot.

The instructor gives the command HALT, when the marching flank has nearly terminated its wheel.

265.—The platoon being halted, to wheel it about, or to place in an oblique direction to the right or left, the instructor gives the command:

1. *Right about (or left about) wheel; or, right half (or left half) wheel;*
2. MARCH;
3. HALT;
4. *Left (or right) —DRESS;*
5. FRONT.

Which is executed on the principles of the wheel on a fixed pivot, No, 258.

Before dressing the platoon, the trooper on the marching flank is made to come up, if necessary, abreast of the pivot man, so that the other troopers will not have to rein back in order to align themselves.

266.—The platoon being on the march, the same movements are executed at the commands: 1. *Right (or left) wheel; right about (or left about) wheel; right half (or left half) wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD.

At the command MARCH, the wheeling flank wheels at the gait at which the platoon was marching; the pivot flank halts.

At the command FORWARD, the pivot resumes its original pace, and the two flanks move forward at the same gait, with the guide as before.

These movements being properly executed from a halt and at *the walk*, are repeated at *the trot*.

### TO WHEEL ON A MOVABLE PIVOT.

267.—The wheel on a movable pivot is employed in the successive changes of direction in column.

In this wheel, the object of the movable pivot is to leave by degrees the ground on which the movement commences; it allows each platoon to wheel on the same ground, without altering distances or retarding the column.

The conductor of the marching flank should increase his gait and describe his arc of circle so as to cause the files neither to open nor close. The pivot describes *an arc of a circle*, the radius being about 10 feet; and consequently, in a *right or left turn*; the trooper on the flank gains about 10 feet to the front, and as much to a flank, his quarter circle being 5 paces. The troopers from the centre to the marching flank increase the gait progressively; the centre man preserves the gait at which the platoon was marching. The troopers from the centre to the pivot slacken the gait progressively; the pivot trooper slackens his gait, so as to pass over his 5 paces in the same time that the centre man takes to pass round his arc without changing his gait. At the end of the wheel on a movable pivot, the portion of the rank which had augmented its gait should slacken it,

and that which had slackened its gait should augment it. All the troopers straighten their horses; the marching flank and the pivot resume the gait at which they originally marched.

268.--The platoon being on the march, to cause it to change direction, the instructor commands:

1. *Left (or right)*--TURN.
2. FORWARD.

At the first command, the platoon turns to the left or to the right, the pivot slackening its gait, in describing *an arc of five paces*; the marching flank augments its gait, and regulates itself by the pivot during the whole of the wheel.

At the command FORWARD, all the troopers straighten their horses, the pivot and marching flank moving forward in the gait at which the platoon was originally marching.

The troopers not having been exercised to wheel *at the gallop* on a fixed pivot, they are made to wheel on a movable pivot only in marching *at the walk*, that the marching flank, which should increase its gait, will have to take only *the trot*.

269.—To exercise the troopers in wheeling *at the gallop* on a fixed pivot, the progression established for the exercise *at the walk* and *at the trot* is followed; but the platoon is always halted before changing the direction of the wheel.

The instructor changes the gait frequently, and avoids galloping too long to the same hand.

The platoon is exercised also to wheel *at the trot* and *at the gallop*, in setting out from a halt, and to halt while wheeling at these gaits.

## INDIVIDUAL OBLIQUE MARCH.

270.—The platoon marching in line, to cause it to gain ground towards one of its flanks, without changing the front, the instructor commands :

1. *Right (or left) oblique.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the troopers execute, all at the same time, a *turn of 30 degrees to the right*, so that the head of each horse may be opposite the shoulder of the horse on his right, and that the right knee of each trooper may be in rear of the left knee of the trooper on his right. This first movement being executed, the troopers move forward in the new direction, regulating themselves upon the guide.

When the platoon has obliqued sufficiently, the instructor commands :

## FORWARD.

At this command, the troopers straighten their horses and move forward, regulating themselves upon the guide.

In the oblique march, the guide is always on the obliquing side, without being indicated; and after the command FORWARD, the guide returns, without indication, to the side on which it was originally.

When the troopers are not closed, they should increase progressively the gait, in order to approach the side towards which they march; they should insensibly slacken the gait if they are too much closed, or more advanced than the flank towards which they oblique.

271.—The platoon marching at *the walk*, to execute the oblique at *the trot* the instructor commands: 1. *Right (or left) oblique—trot*; 2. MARCH.

When the platoon has obliqued sufficiently, the instructor commands: FORWARD.

The guide observes particularly to commence *the trot* without precipitation.

The same course is observed if the platoon is marching at *the trot*, and the object is to oblique at *the gallop*.

### THE PLATOON MARCHING IN LINE, TO BREAK IT BY FOURS OR BY TWOS AT THE SAME GAIT.

272.—The instructor commands:

1. *By fours* (or *by twos*.)
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the first four (or two) files to the right continue to march forward at the same gait; the other files halt and break successively by fours (or by twos) as prescribed, No. 209.

The platoon marching in line, to break it by file the movement is executed on the same principles, the first file only continuing to march forward.

273.—The platoon marching at *the trot*, it is broken on the same principles, the first files continuing to march at the same gait, all the other files assume *the walk* at the command MARCH, and resume *the trot* as they break from the platoon.

The same course is observed when the platoon marches at *the gallop*; the first files continue to march at that gait; the others assume the trot at the command MARCH, and resume *the gallop* as they commence to oblique.

274.—To break the platoon by the left, the movement is executed following the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By the left—by fours* (or *by twos*.) 2. MARCH.



THE PLATOON MARCHING IN COLUMN BY TWOS  
OR BY FOURS, TO FORM IT AT THE SAME  
GAIT.

275.—The platoon marching in column, right or left in front, the instructor commands :

1. *Form platoon.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.

The movement is executed as prescribed for *front into line*, No. 214.

276.—The platoon marching in column at *the trot*, right or left in front, the instructor commands :

1. *Form platoon:*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right (or left.)* . . . .

At the command MARCH, the first two (or four) files pass to *the walk*; the other files continue to march at the same gait, oblique immediately to the left, march straight in this direction, make an oblique turn to *the right* on coming opposite the place they are to occupy in the platoon, and pass to *the walk* on arriving upon the alignment of the first.

At the command *guide right*, they correct their alignment towards the right.

277.—When the command is at *the gallop*, the platoon is formed on the same principles. The first two (or four) files take *the trot* at the command MARCH; the other files continue to march at *the gallop*, and take *the trot* on arriving upon the alignment of the first.

When the column is marching by file, the platoon is formed on the same principles.

THE PLATOON MARCHING IN LINE, TO BREAK IT BY FOURS OR BY TWOS IN DOUBLING THE GAIT.

278.—The instructor commands :

1. *By fours (or by twos)—trot.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the first four (or two) files of the right take *the trot* ; the others continue to march at *the walk*, and take successively *the trot* when they oblique to the right, in order to enter the column.

279.—The platoon marching at *the trot*, the instructor commands :

1. *By fours (or by twos)—gallop.*
2. MARCH.

Which is executed as prescribed, No. 278.

The platoon marching in line, to break it by file, the movement is executed on the same principles.

When the platoon marches at *the gallop*, it is always broken without doubling the gait.

280.—To break the platoon by the left, the movement is executed on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By the left, by fours (or by twos)—trot (or gallop.)* 2. MARCH.

THE PLATOON MARCHING IN COLUMN BY TWOS OR BY FOURS, TO FORM IT IN DOUBLING THE GAIT,

281.—The platoon marching in column, right or left in front, the instructor commands :

1. *Form platoon—trot.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right (or left.)*

At the command MARCH, the first two (or four) files continue to march forward at the same gait; the other files take *the trot*, oblique immediately to the left, march in this direction, make an oblique turn to *the right* on coming opposite to the place they are to occupy in the platoon, and pass to *the walk* on arriving upon the alignment of the first.

282.—The platoon marching in column at *the trot*, right or left in front, the instructor commands :

1. *Form platoon—gallop.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right (or left.)*

Which is executed as prescribed, No. 281.

When the column is at *the gallop*, the platoon is always formed at the same gait.

When the column is marching by file, the platoon is formed on the same principles.

## MOVEMENTS BY FOURS, THE PLATOON BEING IN COLUMN OR IN LINE.

283.—The platoon being in line, to form it in a column of fours the instructor commands :

1. *Fours, right, (or left.)*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.

At the command MARCH, each set of fours executes its wheel of a quarter of a circle, on the principles prescribed for the wheel on the fixed pivot; Nos. 1 or Nos. 4 turn upon the fore feet of their horses gradually, keep-

ing square with the other flank; the others preserve their intervals from the pivot, and also regulate their alignment by the marching flank. At the command HALT, the troopers straighten their horses and halt. If the command HALT is omitted, they move off straight in the new direction at the gait of the marching flank.

284.—The platoon marching in column of fours, to march it in line to a flank, the instructor commands:

1. *Fours*--RIGHT, (or *Fours*--LEFT.)
2. *Guide left* (or *right*.)

At the first command the pivots halt, and the wheels are executed on the same principles (No. 283), and at the moment of their completion all move forward in line.

285.—The platoon marching in line, to cause it to march to either flank, the instructor commands:

*Fours*--RIGHT, (or *Fours*--LEFT.)

This command is executed on the same principles as in the preceding, No. 284.

286.—The platoon being in line, or column of fours, to face it to the rear, the instructor commands:

1. *Fours left* (or *right*) *about*.
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.

At the command MARCH, each set of fours wheels to the *left about*, on the principles prescribed for the wheel to the right or left, No. 283.

At the command HALT, the troopers straighten their horses and halt in line or column, faced to the rear.

If the command HALT be omitted, they move straight off in the new direction, at the gait of the wheeling

flank of the fours. If they are in line, the instructor then adds, *guide right*.

287.—The platoon marching in line, or column of fours, to cause it, to face and march in the opposite direction, the instructor commands:

1. *Fours*—LEFT ABOUT (OR RIGHT ABOUT.)

And if in line:

2. *Guide right* (or *left*.)

At the command LEFT ABOUT, OR RIGHT ABOUT, each set of fours, its pivots halting, executes the wheel of a half circle, on the principles prescribed, No. 283, and having completed it, moves off in the new direction. The wheel being nearly completed, the instructor may command: 2. HALT.

288.—The wheels by fours must be executed with care and steadiness, regulating, in wheels from line, by the left when wheeling to the left, by the right when wheeling to the right; in the about wheels from column, the first half of the wheel by the fours in front, and the last half by those that are becoming the front. Thus all the wheels, commenced gently, must be completed by the fours at the same moment. It is absolutely necessary that the pivots should not move, except to turn their horses on the fore feet. When previously in motion, it is the more important that the instructor should observe and insist upon this point.

289.—These movements being correctly executed at the *walk*, they are taught at the *trot*. Not at the *gallop*.

## ARTICLE FOURTH.

## RUNNING AT THE HEADS, AND PISTOL PRACTICE.

290.--To perfect the troopers in the use of their arms and in managing their horses, they are exercised at running at heads and rings, connected with target firing.

For this purpose a quadrangular track will be laid out, 90 yards long and 30 wide, or larger; movable posts will be prepared--two, 9 feet high, will have a horizontal bar from the top, about 3 feet long, from the end of which an iron ring about three inches in diameter is suspended--for the practice of the points; one post 6 feet high, with a vertical pin in the top, on which will revolve a block of wood about 18 inches long, balancing a light pole about 5 feet long, inserted in one end, to represent a lance or sabre, and which will be easily turned by a parry, but will have the end blunted; one post 4 feet high, made otherwise the same, the pole to represent a bayonet; there will also be three posts 7 feet high and three  $4\frac{1}{2}$  feet high, to represent horsemen and infantry; these six to be surmounted by rawhide or canvas heads (balls) stuffed with hay.

Heads will also be used, resting on the ground, for the practice of the points against infantry; (they, and more commonly Indians or other irregulars, often throwing themselves flat to escape the blows, &c., of cavalry.)

For blank cartridge firing smaller balls may be used, placed upon the posts.

At 3 paces diagonally outside an angle of the track, a round post, 12 inches in diameter, 8 feet high, will stand for a pistol target.

The posts will be placed about 3 feet from the track, on either side or end; the pole, representing a bayonet, will be placed perpendicular to the track, reaching

about one foot from it; that representing a sabre, pointing towards the rider, but nearly parallel with the track; next to each will be placed a post with a head, for the delivery of a thrust or cut; these will be the closer as the troopers improve in skill, until they are as near as 6 feet.

The track should turn the angles in a quarter circle of 15 feet; the disposition of posts, at or very near the turn, will be suitable to advanced practice; the target post being placed as directed, the balls will range within one quarter of the surrounding grounds.

The platoon will be formed in two lines near the ends, facing the centre. At first not more than two troopers exercise at once; moving, at the same time, at the signal of the instructor, from the left of each line— if to ride to the right hand—and returning to their right flank. They will, in general, at the uninterrupted canter, first draw pistol and fire a blank cartridge at a head, return pistol, draw sabre, and commence its use as soon as possible—the decreasing distance from the firing point marking the improvement and skill of the trooper, as also his promptness in firing after using the sabre.

In every squadron, at a period of exercises, there will be exercises in this article for one hour and a half one day in every week.

The captains will, on the 1st of June and 1st of December, each year, report to the commander of the regiment, in writing, the names of the two best troopers at these exercises. They will be announced in regimental orders.

On application the colonel may grant trials of skill between squadrons, and also between members of different squadrons. He will preside and judge, or appoint judges, who will make report to him.

## TO LEAP THE DITCH AND THE FENCE.

291.—The instructor causes the troopers to leap

ditches and low fences, by twos and by fours, and then by platoon; observing the principles prescribed, No. 185 and following.

### TO CHARGE BY PLATOON.

292.—The charge will be practiced by twos, fours, and half platoons, before the charge by platoon.

To charge by platoon, the instructor orders the sabres to be drawn; he commands:

1. *Forward.*
2. *Guide right (or left.)*
3. MARCH.

When the platoon has marched 20 paces, the instructor commands:

1. *Trot.*
2. MARCH.

At 60 paces further, he commands:

1. *Gallop.*
2. MARCH.

At 80 paces further, he commands:

CHARGE.

At this command, the troopers take the position of *charge*—SABRE. They give hand and lengthen the gallop without losing control of their horses or disuniting.

When the platoon has charged 60 paces, the instructor commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Platoon.*
3. HALT.
4. *Right (or left)--DRESS.*
5. FRONT.



At the command *attention*, the troopers carry the sabre to the shoulder.

At the command *platoon*, they take the *trot*.

At the command *HALT*, they stop.

293.—The troopers should be exercised at the charge with the greatest care, without being required to repeat it too often.

The instructor requires *the gallop* to be kept up; he sees that the troopers preserve ease in the ranks; that they hold a light hand, so that the horses not being constrained in their movements, may not become too restive; and, on the other hand, that the intervals between files is not increased; the guide must at first have an object pointed out, towards which to direct his whole course.

### RALLYING.

294.—To exercise the troopers in rallying, the platoon is formed at the extremity of the ground, the sabres are drawn, and the signal *charge as foragers* is sounded; at this signal, the troopers gallop forward in couples and charge as foragers; the instructor and the flank files remain in place, to mark out the rallying point. When the troopers have marched 150 or 200 paces, the instructor orders *the rally* to be sounded. At this signal, the troopers *wheel to the left about*, and, as rapidly as possible to be well in hand, pass to the rear outside of the flanks, to return again and resume their places in rank. As soon as two-thirds of the troopers have joined, the instructor commands the platoon to move forward. At first the platoon is rallied at *the trot*, and then at *the gallop*. This movement is repeated without retaining the flank files; in this case the troopers rally behind the instructor.

### SKIRMISHING.

295.—The objects of employing skirmishers are to cover movements and evolutions, to gain time, to watch

the movements of the enemy, to keep him in check, to prevent his approaching so close to the main body as to annoy the line of march, and to weaken and harass him by their fire; to prepare the way for the charge on infantry, by rendering them unsteady, or drawing their fire.

In flank movements they cover the front and flank of the column nearest to the enemy. The trooper skirmishing is much thrown upon his own intelligence and resources; as much coolness as watchfulness is required of him; and he should especially guard against exciting his horse.

On service, regularity in skirmishing and correctness of distance cannot always be maintained, on account of the movements of the enemy, and the nature of the ground; but the general rules and practice will be easily conformed to, and applied according to circumstances.

Skirmishers should be much practiced in conforming to changes of front, or position and movements in column, without requiring orders and commands for the purpose. Above all, they must be instructed to look to the nature of the ground, and the supposed opposite movements of the enemy. Skirmishers must be very exact and alert in noticing and instantly obeying the signals made for their guidance, whether proceeding from their immediate commander—as by a wave of the arm and sabre—or from the trumpet. It should be impressed upon the troopers on all occasions to level low, and never to fire without deliberate aim, having first come steadily to a halt. The fire-arms will never be cocked until the time comes for firing; and on actual service, officers and non-commissioned officers, when the signal to commence firing is heard, must watch that only those men fire who see the enemy within suitable range.

296.—The platoon being supposed to form a part of the squadron, it is dispersed as skirmishers, in order to cover the front and flanks of the squadron.

The platoon being in line at the extremity of the ground, arms loaded and sabres drawn, the instructor marches the platoon forward, and when he wishes to disperse the troopers as skirmishers, he commands:

1. *Eight files from right, as skirmishers.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the left guide commands the four or more files, of the left, to halt; they constitute the reserve. At the same command, the eight files of the right continue to march forward; after going ten paces, they disperse as skirmishers, extending themselves so as to cover the supposed front of a squadron, and some paces beyond each of its flanks. The right troopers oblique to the right, the left troopers to the left. As soon as they are in line they return sabre, and take the position of *raise—pistol*. They continue to march until the signal *halt*, No. 2. The instructor causes the *halt* to be sounded, when the skirmishers are 100 or 150 paces from the reserve. The troopers keep 10 paces interval, regulating themselves towards the guide during the whole time they act as skirmishers.

If a less or greater interval is desired, the command would be given:

1. *Eight files from right as skirmishers, at (so many) paces.*
2. MARCH.

The guide for lines of skirmishers will habitually be at the centre, and so need not be designated in the command; the instructor names the man. But if it be desired that the guide should be right or left, it will be expressed after the command MARCH.

297.—The chief of the platoon, followed by his trumpeter, places himself habitually half-way between the skirmishers and the reserve; he moves along the line wherever he thinks his presence most necessary. The

reserve and the skirmishers execute their movements at the signals of the trumpeter, who follows the officer, or at his commands.

If the chief of the platoon wishes the skirmishers to move forward, he causes the *forward*, No 1, to be sounded; each skirmisher moves forward, regulating his movements by those of the guide, and preserving his interval; the reserve follows them, keeping at its proper distance.

To move the skirmishers who are at a halt, or moving forward, by their right flank, *to the right*, No. 4 is sounded; each trooper turns to the right and marches in the direction of those who precede him, preserving his distance; the reserve also turns to the right.

To face the skirmishers again to the front and to move forward, *to the left*, No. 3 is sounded; the skirmishers and the reserve turn to the left.

To move the skirmishers who are at a halt, or moving forward by their left flank, *to the left*, No. 3 is sounded; each skirmisher turns to the left and marches in the direction of those who precede him, preserving his distance; the reserve also turns to the left.

To move the skirmishers again to the front, *to the right*, No. 4 is sounded; the skirmishers and the reserve turn to the right.

The direction of the flank march of the skirmishers will be changed at the order of their commander.

To change the front of the line, *change direction to the right*, No 6, or *change direction to the left*, No. 7 is sounded; the first flank will halt, and the wheeling flank continue its previous gait.

At the signal *halt*, under all circumstances the skirmishers face to the front, (to the enemy.)

If the skirmishers are to retire without firing, *the about* No 5 is sounded.

During the flank movements, if the troopers are to fire, they leave the column a few paces and face the enemy for that purpose; as soon as they have fired, they resume their places in the column in doubling the gait.

298.—When it is desired that a line of skirmishers engaged should retire firing, the commander of the platoon orders the *retreat* to be sounded. At this signal all the troopers who are numbers 1 and 3, fire, if loaded, together, then turn to the left about and move to the rear. They turn by trooper to the right about on the most favorable ground from 40 to 60 yards in rear, to cover the retreat of the line of twos and fours; which then immediately fires, (an enemy being within fire,) and turns by trooper to the left about and retires through the intervals of, and turns when it is 40 to 60 yards in rear of, the line of ones and threes; who then fire and retire, and so on. The troopers of the line next to the enemy keep up the fire if opportunities offer; and it is only the files which have opportunity of effective fire, who fire at the moment before the line turns about, which it does all together.

The reserve retires and faces to the front, regulating its movement by that of the skirmishers, so as to be about 60 paces from the 2d line.

At a signal, *forward* No. 1, or *halt* No. 2, the line of skirmishers in rear move up.

If the line be retreating without firing, at the signal, *commence firing*, Nos. 1 and 3 would move on, whilst No. 2 and 4 would halt and face the enemy, and all would act as prescribed for firing in retreat. If the line be firing in retreat, at the signal to *cease fire* the line most retired would await the other, and the retreat would be continued in one line.

299.—The rallying of skirmishers is always made on the point occupied by the officer.

To rally the skirmishers, the officer places himself habitually in front of the reserve, and causes the *rally* to be sounded. At this signal the skirmishers *turn left about*, rally on the reserve by the shortest route, and draw sabre.

If the officer is not with the reserve when *the rally* is sounded, the skirmishers rally upon him, and the reserve

comes up and joins them. The troopers are thus exercised to rally upon any point whatever of the line.

300.—If a defile is presented in advance of the front of the line, and orders are given to pass it, the troopers who are opposite first enter it; they are followed by the other troopers, who *turn, by trooper, to the left and to the right* for that purpose.

As soon as the first have passed the defile, they move 50 or 60 paces to the front and halt; the others come up abreast of them by obliquing, those of the right to the right, and those of the left to the left. The reserve follows.

If the skirmishers are to pass a defile in their rear, the reserve passes it rapidly, and posts itself 50 or 60 paces on the side of its outlet, facing it. When the line is within 50 or 60 paces, the two troopers, who are on the flanks, turn about and move toward the entrance of the defile; and entering together immediately pass it. They are followed closely by the other troopers, who execute, in succession, the same movements; the centre troopers, who cover the passage of the defile being last.

On emerging from the defile, the troopers oblique to the right and left, reforming the line with the same intervals.

301.—These movements are first executed at the *walk*, then at the *trot*, and finally at the *gallop*. When the troopers have learned to perform these movements well, they are exercised at them in firing. When the troopers are at the *walk* or *gallop*, and the instructor wishes them to pass to the *trot*, the *trot* No. 8 is sounded; when at the *trot* or *gallop*, and he wishes them to *walk*, he orders the *halt* No. 2, and the *forward* No. 1 to be sounded.

302.—To commence, or cease firing, the signal is sounded. All the troopers do not fire at once, but one after another, commencing at the guide. They afterward continue firing without waiting for each other, except by couples Nos. 1 and 2, and Nos. 3 and 4; these

have an understanding that they fire alternately, giving each other a mutual support.

303.—When the platoon skirmishes without gaining ground to the front, the skirmishers should nevertheless, when under fire, if not behind a cover, keep in motion, each about his own ground.

304.—If the commander of the platoon wishes the skirmishers to charge, he orders the *charge as foragers*, No. 12, to be sounded; the troopers return pistol, draw sabre, and charge.

In the charge as foragers, the even numbers approach within 2 or 3 paces of their companions, Nos. 1 and 3, to be able to support and protect each other.

As soon as the skirmishers charge, the reserve moves forward to support them.

The skirmishers retire by *turning about to the left*, and face again to the front by *turning about to the right*. When they have reformed in platoon, they return the pistol to the holster and draw the sabre.

305.—To relieve skirmishers, the instructor commands to the reserve:

1. *As skirmishers.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the reserve disperses and moves with regular intervals five paces beyond the line of old skirmishers. The old skirmishers *turn left about* and rally at a *trot* on the officer, who during the movement is placed at the point where the 8 files now become the reserve should reform.

The platoon right guide then takes command of them:

306.—The troopers having been sufficiently exercised in all the movements of skirmishing, will be taught to dismount and form with celerity to fight on foot.

At the commencement all the movements of this instruction will be decomposed, in order to make them better understood.

The platoon being in line, the instructor commands:

*Prepare to fight—ON FOOT.*

*1 time, 3 motions.*

1. At the command, all prepare to dismount, except Nos. 4.

2. Dismount, except Nos. 4, and form rank.

3. Nos. 1, 2, and 3 pass the reins with the right hand over the horses' heads; Nos. 3 hand their reins to Nos. 4 to hold, and Nos. 1 and 2 tie their reins to the cheek piece and nose band of the halters and bridles of the horses of Nos. 2 and 3 by a tight slip knot, and with only about one foot play; then all face to the front, and hook up their sabres.

The instructor then commands:

*Into—LINE.*

*1 time.*

At this command, move twelve paces to the front, and close in on the centre.

Nos. 4, who remain on horseback, have charge of the dismounted horses; they take the end of the reins of the first dismounted horse in the left hand, holding them near the bit with the right hand, the nails downward; a non-commissioned officer remains with the dismounted horses to direct them.

The troopers having been sufficiently exercised at the different movements of this instruction, will be required to execute them rapidly without stopping at the several motions, and at the single command *prepare to fight—ON FOOT*, given by the instructor.



The platoon being formed, it will be conducted where it is to fight on foot.

The dismounted horses will also be exercised in changing position, by marching by rank and by fours.

When the instructor wishes the troopers to remount, he will rally them if they are dispersed as skirmishers.

The platoon being rallied and formed, the instructor commands:

*About—FACE.*

He conducts the platoon to within twelve paces of the horses, and commands:

MOUNT.

At this command the troopers return to their horses rapidly, without alarming them; return pistol, mount, and draw sabre.

The command MOUNT, at the commencement, will be executed in 4 motions, and from a halt, that the troopers may better understand it. For this purpose, the platoon being rallied and marching to the rear, is halted twelve paces from the horses; the instructor then commands:

MOUNT.

*1 time, 4 motions.*

1. At the last part of the command, which is MOUNT, return pistol.

2. Rejoin the horses, untie the horse, pass the reins over the neck, unhook the sabre and take the position of the trooper before mounting, prescribed, No. 79.

3. Execute the two times of *prepare to mount*, as prescribed, No. 80.

4. MOUNT, as prescribed, No. 80; adjust the reins, and draw the sabre.

When bridles are furnished with links, instead of tying the reins to the nose bands of the halters, Nos. 1 and 2 should link to the horses of Nos. 2 and 3, as follows:— After dismounting, the man stands to horse, faces about to the rear, takes the link which hangs from the halter-ring of the horse of his left file in his right hand, seizes his own horse by the bit near the mouth and draws the horse of his left file towards his own until he can hook the snap into the curb ring; in hooking, the nails of his right hand are down.

When he dismounts, he leaves the reins over the pommel of the saddle. To facilitate the linking, the horse-holder should bear his horse well towards No. 3.

## SCHOOL OF THE SQUADRON, MOUNTED.

307.—The object of the *school of the squadron* is to instruct the platoons to execute together what they have been taught separately; and so, to prepare the squadron to act independently, or perform what it will be required to do when a part of the regiment.

The squadron is composed as prescribed, title 1st, article 1st.

The *school of the squadron* being the base of the *evolutions of the regiment*, the Captain observes that the chiefs of platoons execute with regularity what is required of them, and that they give the commands at the proper time and in the proper tone. He requires the guides to act with calmness and without hesitation in the different movements.

The Captain causes the officers to alternate in the command of the platoons, that they may become familiar with all the positions in the squadron. He observes the same course with the non-commissioned officers who command platoons.

To make the formations in line better understood, they are executed at first from a halt. In this case each platoon performs its movements separately and successively, at the command of its chief, on receiving notice from the Captain.

Each movement, after having been correctly executed by the right, is repeated by the left. Habitual formations and dressing by the right, cause the horses to carry a habit to a vicious extreme, and crowd and press that flank.

When the squadron has acquired calmness and confidence, and one article is well understood, this article is

repeated with sabres drawn, and alternately at all the gaits, except the *wheels to the right, to the left, to the right about, and to the left about by fours, the counter march, the wheels on a movable pivot by squadron, the individual oblique marches when marching by squadron*, which are executed only *at the walk and at the trot*.

The troopers *mount and dismount* by the times, but without explanation.

The squadron is exercised at the manual of arms and sabre exercise once a week.

The Captain requires the distance between the platoons to be observed exactly in all the movements; he sees that the troopers preserve the required intervals between the knees; the distances in column of fours; and especially the pivots of platoons, who must understand the necessity of, and practice, exactitude.

The Captain moves wherever his presence is most required; the troopers are required to observe absolute silence, and all rectifications are done by signs, or in a low voice. After the command *halt*, every individual must remain motionless.

All columns *right in front* having the guide left, and when *left in front* having the guide right, as a *general rule*, the troopers will understand it; and the guide is not commanded unless in exceptional cases. When a commander sees it necessary, he will direct attention to the alignment by commanding: *Guide left, or guide right*.

A platoon being an integral force, it can march or fight, equally, whether at the right or the left of any other platoon.

The squadron will be accustomed to feel equally confident in sudden formations in every direction.

Columns are *right in front* when the subdivisions originally on the right in line are in front; and *left in front* when those of the original left are in front.

308.—The squadron being formed in line, the non-commissioned officers and troopers at the head of their horses, the chiefs of platoon mounted, at 8 paces from,

and facing the centre of their platoons, the Captain commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Right—DRESS.*
3. FRONT.

He then commands:

*In each platoon—COUNT—FOURS.*

At this command the troopers count off in the four platoons at once, commencing on the right.

The Captain then gives the command to mount.

At the command *form—RANK*, the chiefs of platoon move forward, face to the front by *turning to the right about*, and place themselves before the centre of their platoons, the croup of their horses one pace from the heads of the horses of the platoon.

## SUCCESSIVE ALIGNMENT OF PLATOONS IN THE SQUADRON.

309.—The squadron being in line, the Captain places the two non-commissioned officers, guides of the right and left, upon a line parallel to, and 30 paces in front of, the squadron, facing each other, and 3 platoon fronts apart.

On receiving notice from the Captain, the chief of the first platoon commands; 1. *Forward*; 2. *Guide right*; 3. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the platoon moves forward; at one pace from the guide, the chief of the platoon commands: 1. HALT; 2. *Right—DRESS.*

At the command HALT, the chief of the platoon moves on and halts with the head of his horse against the boot of the guide of the right. The platoon is aligned so that

the heads of their horses are in a line one pace behind the croup of the horse of the chief of platoon.

The first platoon being correctly aligned the Captain commands:

1. *By platoon*—DRESS.

At the first command, the chief of the second platoon commands: 1. *Forward*; 2. *Guide right*; 3. MARCH. The heads of the platoon horses having reached the line of the croups of the horses of the platoon on the right, he commands: 1. HALT; 2. DRESS; and, at the same time, moves forward on the line of the chief of that platoon.

At the command HALT, the platoon stops. At the command DRESS, all the troopers move forward together upon the alignment.

Each chief of platoon executes successively the same movement, commanding MARCH when the one who precedes him has commanded HALT.

The chief of the fourth platoon brings the head of his horse to the boot of the left guide.

The squadron being aligned, the Captain commands:

FRONT.

310.—The Captain observes that the officers align themselves promptly on the base of the alignment; that they do not suffer too much time to elapse between the commands HALT and DRESS, so as not to retard the successive alignments; he also observes that the non-commissioned officers pay attention to the general and not individual alignment.

ALIGNMENT OF THE SQUADRON.

311.—The Captain, after having placed the right guide so that no trooper will be compelled to rein-back, commands:

1. *Right*—DRESS.
2. FRONT.

At the command *right*—DRESS, all the troopers correct their distance from the chiefs of platoon, and align themselves steadily but promptly to the right.

### THE SQUADRON BEING IN LINE, TO FORM A COLUMN OF FOURS.

312.—The squadron being in line, the captain commands :

1. *Fours right* (or *left*.)
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.

At the command MARCH, each set of fours wheels to to the right as prescribed, No. 283; the chief of the first platoon places himself in front of the column, the right guide on his right. The chiefs of the other platoons one pace from the flank of the heads of their platoons.

If the captain omit the command HALT, the column moves forward.

The squadron marching in line, the captain commands :

*Fours*—RIGHT (or LEFT.)

The squadron conforms throughout to what is prescribed, No. 285.

### TO BREAK THE SQUADRON BY FOURS TO THE RIGHT OR LEFT TO MARCH TO THE FRONT.

313.—The squadron being in line, the captain commands :

1. *Right (or left) forward—fours right (or left.)*
2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chief of the platoon and guide place themselves in front of the four on the right (or left) of the squadron.

At the command MARCH, they move straight forward; every other set of fours in the line wheels to the right (or left) and moves forward; but that next to the flank set turns when it has made two-thirds of its wheel (four yards), following the flank set; and all the others, in succession, turn on the same ground.

314.—The squadron marching in line, the captain commands:

*Right (or left) forward—FOURS RIGHT (or LEFT.)*

Which will be executed on the same principles.

### TO BREAK THE SQUADRON BY FOURS FROM THE RIGHT TO MARCH TO THE LEFT.

315.—The squadron being in line, the captain commands:

1. *Fours from the right—to march to the left.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the four on the right move forward, and having marched six paces, the chief of the first platoon commands: *Left—TURN.* When the turn is half completed the next set of fours moves forward, and so each, in succession, marching 6 paces forward and turning to the left without command.

The squadron will break from the left to march to the



right, on the same principles, at the command: 1. *Fours from the left—to march to the right.* 2. MARCH.

This is a movement of mere occasional convenience.

### DIRECT MARCH IN COLUMN OF FOURS.

316.—When the column is halted, the captain assures himself that the officers and men are placed as prescribed; he commands:

1. *Forward.*
2. MARCH.

317.—The object of this march in column being to calm the horses and make them uniform and steady in the different gaits, the troopers will endeavor to keep their horses as quiet as possible; but the captain requires them to conform to all the principles of the direct march; he observes that the ranks of fours are exactly aligned; that the files march in the same direction; that the troopers preserve intervals and distances; conduct their horses without employing more force than necessary, and preserve the proper position of the body and bridle-hand.

318.—The column having marched a quarter of an hour at least, the captain commands:

1. *Trot.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the troopers take *the trot*, always taking care not to fret their horses.

When the column has marched about 1000 paces at *the trot*, the captain commands:

1. *Walk.*
2. MARCH.

Having marched some time at *the walk*, they resume *the trot*, and after marching again about 1000 paces, they pass to *the walk*.

To change the gait, the captain selects a moment when the horses are calm and march uniformly; all the troopers assume, at the same time and with steadiness, the gait indicated.

319.—To halt the column the captain commands:

1. *Column.*
2. HALT.

### CHANGE OF DIRECTION.

320.—The squadron marching in column of fours, or twos, or file, to change the direction the captain commands:

*Column left (or right.)*

Which is executed as prescribed, No. 211, the chief of the leading platoon giving the command:

*Left*—TURN.

### INDIVIDUAL OBLIQUE MARCH.

321.—The squadron marching in column of fours or twos, to cause it to execute the individual oblique march, the captain commands:

1. *Left (or right) oblique.*
2. MARCH.

Which is executed as prescribed, No. 213.

### THE SQUADRON MARCHING IN COLUMN OF FOURS, TO MARCH TO THE REAR.

322.—The squadron marching in column of fours, the captain commands:

*Fours*—LEFT ABOUT (OR RIGHT ABOUT.)

The fours wheeling about and moving forward; the column being changed from right to left in front, or the reverse.

## TO BREAK BY FOURS TO THE RIGHT, COLUMN HALF LEFT, RIGHT, OR HALF RIGHT.

323.—The squadron being in line, the captain commands :

1. *Fours right—column half left (right, or half right.)*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, each set of fours wheels to the right, and the chief of the first platoon instantly commands: 1. *Left*—TURN. 2. FORWARD. (Omitting the 2d command if it be a full turn—to the “right.”)

The squadron is broken to the left; and the direction changed to the *half-right, left, or half-left*, on the same principles.

## THE SQUADRON MARCHING IN COLUMN BY FOURS, BY TWOS, AND BY FILE, TO FORM LINE FACED TO THE FRONT, TO THE LEFT, TO THE RIGHT, AND TO THE REAR.

324.—The squadron marching in column by fours, right in front, the captain commands:

1. *Left—front into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. DRESS.
4. FRONT.

At the command MARCH, the first four files continue to

march straight forward; when they have marched 30 paces, the chief of the first platoon commands: HALT.

At this command the first four halt square to the front; the right guide returns to the right of the squadron. All the other files oblique and come up successively, and without the commands of the chief of platoon, form to the left and upon the alignment of the first, as prescribed, No. 214.

The captain, who moves to the right flank after the command MARCH, commands the alignment when the chief of the first platoon commands HALT.

As soon as the chiefs of platoon arrive upon the line, they place themselves at the centre of their platoons, and align themselves.

The left guide takes his post on the left of the squadron, when the four last files arrive upon the line.

The columns of twos, and by file, are formed into line by the same principles and at the same commands.

325.—The column of fours marching right in front, or at a halt, to form it in line, faced the left, on its left flank, the captain commands:

1. *Left into line wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Right—DRESS.*
4. FRONT.

It is executed throughout as prescribed, No. 220.

The chiefs of platoons not repeating the commands, they align themselves, and the guides take their places on the right and left.

326.—The column of fours marching right in front, to form line faced to the right, upon the prolongation and in advance of its right flank, the captain commands:

1. *On right into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. DRESS.
4. FRONT.

At the command MARCH, the leading four turn to the right, and march straight forward; when they have marched 20 paces, the chief of the first platoon commands HALT.

At this command they halt, and the right guide takes his place on the right of the squadron. All the other fours continue to march forward, and turn and come up successively, without the commands of the chiefs of platoon, forming to the left and upon the alignment of the first, as prescribed, No. 217, observing to keep themselves square in the same direction before turning to the right, so as not to approach the new line before the proper time.

The captain, the chiefs of platoon, and the left guide, conform to what is prescribed for *left—front into line*, No. 324. The column by file, or twos, forms line on the same principles, and at the same commands.

327.—The column of fours, marching, right in front, to form line faced to the rear, on the rear of the column; the captain first commands: *Fours—LEFT ABOUT*; which is executed as in No. 277; and then: 1. *Right—front into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. DRESS; 4. FRONT; which is executed as prescribed, No. 324. To form the line on the head of the column, the captain first commands: 1. *Right—front into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. DRESS; 4. FRONT; and then: 1. *Fours left about*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Right—DRESS*; 5. FRONT.

328.—The columns marching left in front, to form line faced to the front, left, right and rear, Nos. 324, 325, 326 and 327, is executed on the same principles, by inverse commands and means.

329.—A squadron in column of fours, right in front, having occasion to make instant face to the right, the captain commands: 1. *Right into line wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Right—DRESS*; 4. FRONT; and there being a necessity to form front into line, with an obstacle to the left-front,

the captain commands: 1. *Right--front into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. DRESS; 4. FRONT; which would be executed as has been prescribed; the proper left would be considered the "right;" the left, the "right guide," &c., as long as that formation continued.

The column being *left in front*, under inverse circumstances, lines would be formed on the same principles as above, and by inverse commands and means.

The same principle applies to the formation of line faced to the rear, but generally with an obstacle to the left--right in front--line might be formed on the head of the column; or, with obstacle to the right, on the rear of the column; and left in front, the reverse.

330.--The squadron marching in column by twos, or by file, right in front, to form line faced to the left the captain commands:

1. *Left into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. DRESS.
4. FRONT.

Which is executed by the leading platoon, as prescribed, No. 218, the chief giving the command HALT, only; the other platoons form also the same, but without any further commands; the chiefs of platoon align themselves, and the guides take their posts on the right and left.

331.—The column by twos, or by file, left in front, to form line faced to the right the captain commands: 1. *Right into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. DRESS; 4. FRONT; which is executed on the same principle by inverse means.

332.—In all these formations greater regularity is required in the execution, as the troopers become more habituated to them, and the horses become more calm.

The first instruction is repeated several successive days: and when the principles of the direct march in

column by fours, the changes of direction, the obliques, and the different formations in line, are firmly impressed, all these movements are executed at *the trot*, and then at *the gallop*.

## TO REGULATE THE RAPIDITY OF THE GAITS.

333.—When the marches and formations, prescribed above, have given sufficient uniformity and precision to the gait, the captain will regulate their rapidity. For this purpose he measures off a mile, if practicable, and marches over it at all the gaits; the mile at a *walk*, in sixteen minutes; at a *trot*, in eight minutes; and at the *gallop*, in six minutes.

## SABRE EXERCISE.

334.—To practice the sabre exercise at a halt, the squadron being in line, the captain commands:

*For sabre exercise*—CALL OFF.

At this command, the trooper on the right calls out, "20;" the next man calls out, "15;" the third man, "10;" the fourth, "5;" the fifth man, "stand fast;" the sixth, "20;" the seventh, "15;" the eighth, "10;" the ninth "5;" the tenth, "stand fast;" and in the same manner through to the left.

The captain then commands:

*Sabre exercise*—MARCH.

At this command, those troopers who have called out "20," march forward 20 paces and halt; those who have called "15," march forward 15 paces and halt, and so on, the fifth man standing fast.

During the exercise, the commander of the 2d platoon is placed 10 paces in front of the right of it; of the third

platoon, 10 paces in front of its left; they face their platoons. The commanders of the 1st and 4th platoons superintend their platoons from the right and left flank.

335.—The exercise being concluded, the captain commands :

1. *Into line*—MARCH.
2. *Right*—DRESS.
3. FRONT.

At the command MARCH, the troopers who advanced 20 paces standing fast, the others move forward and halt abreast of them.

336.—The squadron being in line, the captain commands it to dismount, and to file off. The captain and chiefs of platoons remain mounted in order to superintend the movement; the latter until the last trooper of their platoons has filed off.

## ARTICLE SECOND.

### THE SQUADRON BEING IN LINE, TO FORM IT IN OPEN COLUMN,

337.—The captain commands ;

1. *Platoons right wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT (OR 3. FORWARD.)

At the command MARCH, each platoon executes its wheel to the right, following the principles of the wheel on a fixed pivot, the marching flanks taking care to step off promptly together; the three left platoons carefully



regulating by the right, so that they all complete the quarter circle at the same moment.

At the command HALT, the marching flanks and all the troopers halt at the same instant, and remain motionless.

The captain commands HALT, so that, when executed, the wheels will be completed.

The chiefs of platoon, without leaving the centre of their platoons, observe that the movement is correctly executed; after the wheels, if any guide finds himself not in the direction of the one preceding him, he should not endeavor to correct his position until after the march is commenced.

During the movement, the guide passes to the rear of the second file from the left of the fourth platoon.

The captain assures himself that each officer and non-commissioned officer preserves the place assigned to him in this order of column. (Title 1st, article 2d.)

If the captain instead of HALT, gives the command, 3. FORWARD, the platoons move straight forward; the command FORWARD being given the moment before the wheels are completed. The captain then gives a point of direction to the guide of the column.

338.—The squadron marching in line, to form it in open column, it is done on the same principles, at the same commands, the pivots halting at the command, MARCH.

To form the open column left in front is executed on the same principle, by inverse means, at the commands, 1. *Platoons left wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT.

## TO MARCH IN OPEN COLUMN.

339.—In this order of column, the guides should preserve between them a distance equal to the front of their platoons, and regulate their gait upon that of the preceding guide; his gait is regulated by the chief of the leading platoon.

The preservation of the distances being the most essential point of the march in column, everything else should yield to it; but the guides must endeavor to avoid changing the gait as much as possible, without the command; and if it happens that their distance is increased or diminished, the fault is repaired gradually and with steadiness.

The chiefs of platoon are answerable for the preservation of the distance, which, measured from the croup of the horses of one platoon to the head of the horses of the next platoon, is 3 paces or yards less than the number of troopers in the platoon.

The unevenness of the ground may make it sometimes impossible to preserve the direction of the guides; it is then sufficient to require the guide of each platoon to pass by the same points as the guide of the preceding platoon.

The leading platoon of a column should always commence the march moderately, in order to give the column time, from head to foot, to take a uniform and regular movement.

340.—The squadron being in open column, the captain commands:

1. *Forward.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, all the platoons put themselves in motion at the same time.

Before the column commences the march, the captain gives the guide of the first platoon a point of direction; this non-commissioned officer selects intermediate points, so as to be sure of marching straight. The fixed object given to the guide of the first platoon is also pointed out to the guide of the second. These two non-commissioned officers preserve, during the march, the direction which has been given to them.

The guides of the third and fourth platoons keep exactly in the same direction.

## CHANGES OF DIRECTION BY SUCCESSIVE WHEELS.

341.—In the open column the changes of direction are executed by successive wheels *on a movable pivot*, so that the march of the column may not be retarded. *The arc of circle described by the pivots should be of five paces long.*

The column being in march, to change the direction, the captain commands:

*Column left, or half left, (or right or half right.)*

At this command, the chief of the leading platoon commands: 1. *Left*—TURN; 2. FORWARD; which is executed on the principles of the wheel upon a movable pivot.

Each chief of platoon gives the same command successively, *so that his platoon may turn upon the same ground.*

Immediately after having changed the direction of the column, the captain gives a new point of direction to the guide of the first platoon.

The exact preservation of distances, after the changes of direction, depends upon the equality of the increase given to the gait by the marching flanks. It is then important that the leading platoon should turn neither too rapidly nor too slowly; and that each platoon should regulate the rapidity of its wheel by that of the one which precedes it.

## INDIVIDUAL OBLIQUE MARCH.

342.—The squadron marching in open column, right in front, to cause it to gain ground towards one of its

flanks, without changing the front of the column, the captain commands:

1. *Left (or right) oblique.*
2. MARCH.

Which is executed at the same time, in each platoon, as prescribed, No. 270.

The guides of the three last platoons pay attention to preserve their distances, and to keep in a direction exactly parallel to that of the guide of the first platoon.

To resume the primitive direction, the captain commands:

#### FORWARD.

Which is executed at the same time, in each platoon, as prescribed, No. 270.

### CHANGE OF GAIT IN OPEN COLUMN.

343.—The column is made to pass from the *walk* to the *trot*, and from the *trot* to the *walk*; and when the platoons execute these changes of gait with uniformity and steadiness, the column is made to commence the march at a *trot*; and to halt while marching at the *trot*.

The captain observes that the platoons halt, step off, and change the gait at the same instant.

He directs the head of the column sometimes to increase or diminish the gait slightly, without command, to judge of the attention of the guides, and to habituate them to conforming to the movements of the guides who precede them.

TO BREAK BY FOURS, BY TWOS, AND BY FILE, TO FORM TWOS, FOURS, AND PLATOONS, AT THE SAME GAIT.

344.—The squadron marching in open column, right in front, to break by fours at the same gait, the captain commands:

1. *By fours.*
2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon places himself one pace in front of the third file from the right; the right guide places himself on his right.

At the command MARCH, each platoon breaks by fours, as prescribed, No. 209.

345.—The squadron marching in column by fours, right in front, to break by twos, at the same gait, the captain commands:

1. *By twos.*
2. MARCH.

This is executed throughout the squadron, as prescribed for the platoon, No. 228.

346.—The squadron marching in column by twos, right in front, to break by file at the same gait, the captain commands:

1. *By file.*
2. MARCH.

Which is executed as prescribed, No. 345, to break by twos; the right guide placing himself behind the chief of the first platoon.

347.—The squadron marching in open column at the *trot*, right in front, to break by fours, at the same gait, the captain commands:

1: *By fours.*

2: MARCH.

At the command MARCH, each platoon breaks by fours, as prescribed, No. 273.

The same principles are applicable to breaking by twos and by file; throughout the squadron, as in the platoon, No. 230.

348.—When the open column is at the *gallop*, these movements are executed on the principles just prescribed, each platoon, except its right set of fours, passing to the *trot*, and resuming successively the *gallop*, as the fours oblique, in order to enter the column; and to break by twos or file, the whole column, except the leading two, or one, passing to the *trot*, and resuming the *gallop* as the files break, in order to enter the column.

349.—The squadron marching in column by file, right in front, to form twos at the same gait, the captain commands:

1. *Form twos.*

2. MARCH.

This is executed throughout the squadron, as prescribed for the platoon, No. 225.

350.—The squadron marching in column by twos, right in front, to form fours, at the same gait, the captain commands:

1. *Form fours.*

2. MARCH.

Which is executed as prescribed, No. 349, in order to form twos.

351. The squadron marching in column by fours, right in front, to form platoon at the same gait the captain commands:

1. *Form platoons.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.

At the command MARCH, each platoon is formed as prescribed, No. 275; after marching 20 paces, the captain gives the command HALT, when each platoon halts.

352.—When the column of fours is at the *trot*, each platoon at once conforms to No. 276; the captain omits the command *guide left*.

In the column by file, or by twos, at the *trot*, to form twos or fours, those leading the squadron pass to the *walk*.

When the column is at the *gallop*, to form twos, fours and platoons, the same principles are observed.

TO BREAK BY FOURS, BY TWOS, AND BY FILE;  
TO FORM TWOS, FOURS, AND PLATOONS, IN  
DOUBLING THE GAIT.

353.—The squadron marching in open column, right in front, to break by fours, in doubling the gait, the captain commands:

1. *By fours—trot.*
2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon and the right guide place themselves as prescribed, No. 344.

At the command MARCH, each platoon breaks by fours, as prescribed, No. 278.

To break by twos and by file is executed throughout the squadron, as prescribed for the platoon, numbers 236, 237.

354.—When the column is at the *trot*, to break at the *gallop*, the same principles are observed at the commands: 1. *By fours—gallop*; 2. MARCH.

When the column is at the *gallop*, these movements are always executed at the same gait, as prescribed. No. 348.

355.—The squadron marching in column by file, to form twos, in doubling the gait, the captain commands:

1. *Form twos—trot*.
2. MARCH.

This is executed throughout the squadron as prescribed for the platoon, No. 232.

356.—The squadron marching in column by twos, to form fours, in doubling the gait, the captain commands:

1. *Form fours—trot*.
2. MARCH.

Which is executed as prescribed, No. 355, in order to form twos.

357.—The squadron marching in column by fours, to form platoon, in doubling the gait, the captain commands:

1. *Form platoons—trot*.
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, each platoon is formed at once, as prescribed, No. 281.

358.—When the column is at the *trot*, these formations are executed at the *gallop*, following the same principles.



When the column is at the *gallop*, these movements are executed as prescribed, No. 352, the head of the column, or the heads of platoons, as the case may be, passing to the *trot* at the command MARCH.

The open column marching left in front, it breaks by fours, by twos and by file, at the same gait, and in doubling the gait, on the same principles by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By the left—by fours (by twos or by file.)* 2. MARCH.

359.—The foregoing movements are employed in passing defiles, the captain placing himself always at the head of his squadron, in order to direct the movements of it according to the localities.

#### THE SQUADRON MARCHING IN OPEN COLUMN, TO MARCH TO THE REAR.

360.—The squadron marching in open column, the captain commands :

1. *Platoons left about wheel (or right about wheel.)*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.

At the first command, the trooper on the left of each platoon, who becomes the pivot, prepares to halt, without, however, slackening his pace.

At the command MARCH, the pivots halt, and the marching flanks wheel at the gait in which the column was marching, regulating themselves upon the outer flank of the platoon at the head of the column, so as to complete the first half of the movement at the same instant.

The marching flanks are then governed by the platoon which becomes the head of the column after the movement is completed.

The movement being nearly finished, the captain commands: FORWARD.

During this movement, the right and left guides of the squadron invert their positions; the one in front being always aligned with the platoon, the one in rear behind the last platoon.

### TO HALT THE COLUMN.

361.—The column being on the march, to halt it the captain commands:

1. *Column.*
2. HALT.

At the first command, all the platoons prepare to halt.

At the command HALT, all the platoons halt at the same time.

After the command HALT, there should be no movement in the platoons; the distances and directions should be corrected only in marching.

The captain places himself behind the guide of the second platoon, to see if the guides of the first and second platoon have marched upon the point indicated; he also observes if the prescribed distances have been preserved. If they have not been, and if the guides have not marched upon the point indicated, the column is put again in march, in order to correct their distances and direction.

### THE SQUADRON MARCHING IN OPEN COLUMN, TO FORM LINE, FACED TO THE LEFT, TO THE RIGHT, TO THE FRONT, AND TO THE REAR.

362.—The squadron being in open column, right in front, to form it in line faced to the left, on its left flank, the captain commands:

1. *Left into line wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Right—DRESS.*
4. FRONT.

At the first command, the right guide moves upon the prolongation of the direction of the guides of the column, at the distance of the front of a platoon, facing the side towards which the line will be formed.

At the command MARCH, the squadron wheels into line, the trooper on the left of each platoon serving as pivot, and turning upon his own ground and the fore feet of his horses.

The captain commands, *Right—DRESS*, the moment the marching flanks have nearly completed their movement.

At this command all the platoons align themselves.

The squadron being aligned, the captain commands, FRONT.

During the wheel the left guide resumes his place in line.

363.—The captain observes that the pivots execute their movements properly, and that the officers and troopers align themselves correctly.

The guide, who moves upon the prolongation of the guides of the column, should take rather too much ground than not enough. The conductor of the marching flank of the leading platoon should align himself upon this guide, without endeavoring to approach him.

364.—To form line to the left, on its left flank, from open column, left in front, the commands are the same, and are executed in the same manner, except that the left guide takes his place where the right of the fourth platoon is to rest; and the right guide resumes his place in line (on the left).

365.—To form the squadron in open column, left in front, the captain commands: 1. *Platoons left wheel;*

2. MARCH; 3. HALT; which is executed as prescribed, No. 337, but by inverse means.

366.—The squadron being in open column, left in front, to form it in line, faced to the right, on its right flank, the captain commands: 1. *Right into line wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Left—DRESS*; 4. FRONT; which is executed as prescribed, No. 362, but by inverse means.

367.—To form line to the right, on its right flank, from open column, right in front, the commands are the same, and are executed in the same manner, with the exception of No. 364; the actions of the right and left guides being inverse.

368.—The column marching, the formations of line to the left and right may be made the same, and at the same commands; the pivots halting at the command MARCH.

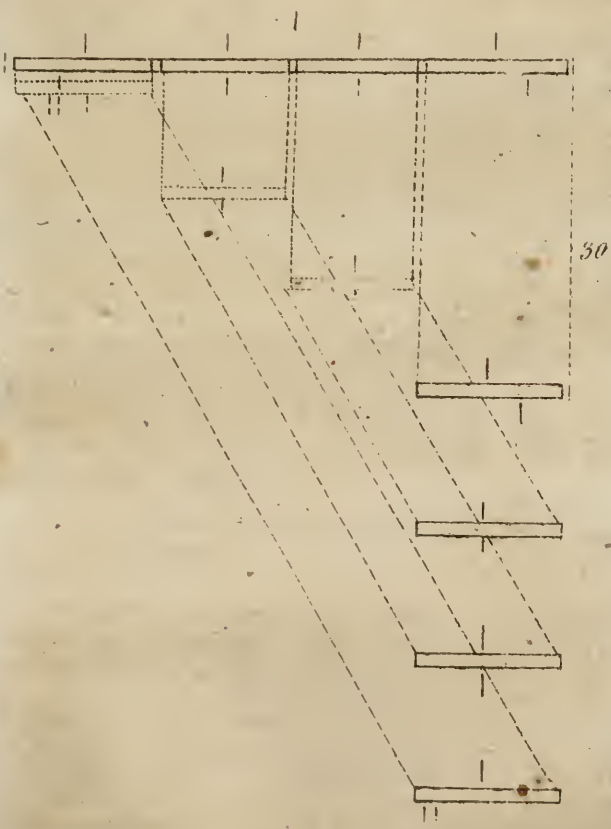
369.—The squadron marching in open column, right or left in front, to form line to the left or right, without halting, the captain commands:

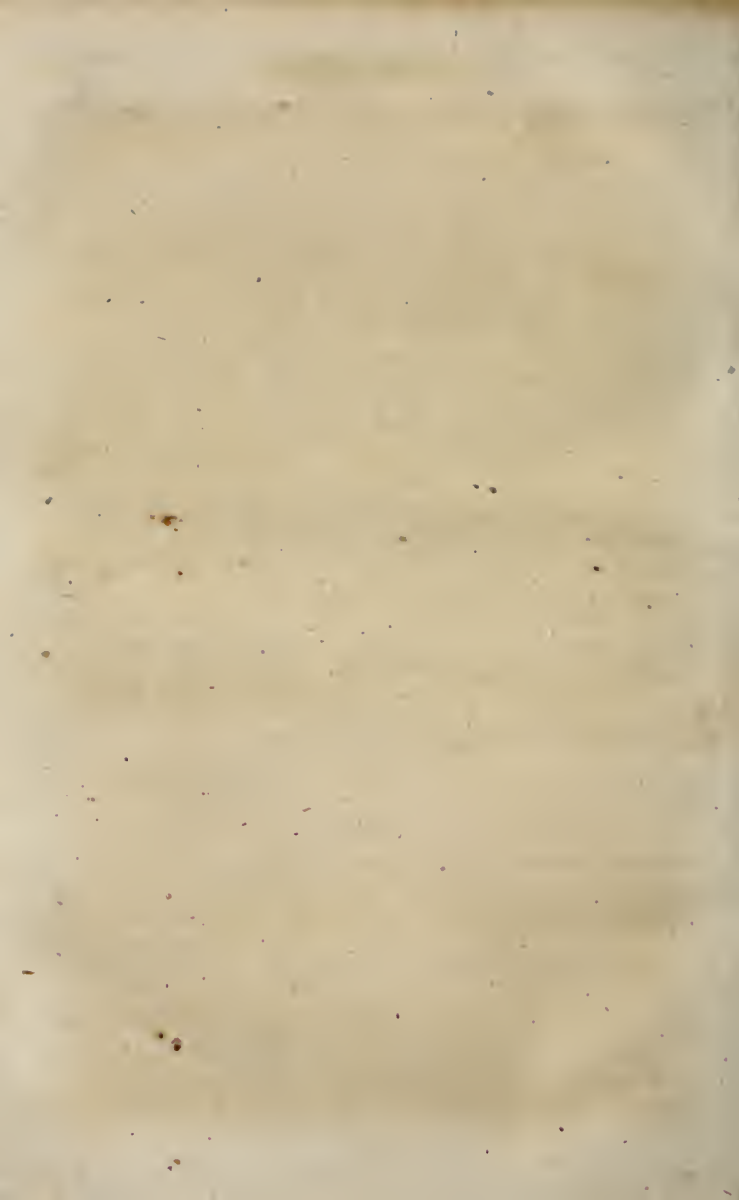
1. *Platoons left (or right) wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide right (or left.)*

The marching flanks will regulate by that of the platoon at the head of the column. The pivots, halting at the word MARCH, promptly move off together at the command FORWARD.

This movement is executed at all the gaits.

370.—The squadron marching in open column, to form line, faced to the right or left, on the prolongation and in advance of its right or left flank, the captain commands:





1. *On right into line (or, on left into line.)*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right (or left.)*
4. FRONT.

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands: *Right*.

At the command MARCH, he commands: TURN; the platoon turns to the right and moves forward at the command FORWARD; when it has marched 20 paces, its chief commands: HALT, and then: *Right—DRESS*.

The other platoons continue to march forward without approaching the line; as soon as each one arrives abreast of the fourth file from the left of the platoon which should be on its right, its chief commands: 1. *Right—TURN*; 2. FORWARD; this platoon then directs itself towards the place it is to occupy in line, and on arriving abreast of the croups of the horses in line its chief commands: 1. HALT; 2. DRESS. The squadron being aligned, the captain commands: FRONT.

371.—The squadron being in open column, halted or marching, to form it in line, faced to the front, upon the head and to the left, or to the right, of the column, the captain commands:

1. *Left front into line (or right front into line.)*
2. MARCH.
3. FRONT.

At the first command, the chief of the platoon in front, commands, if at a halt, *Forward*; the chiefs of the other platoons command: *Left oblique*.

The command MARCH, is repeated by these officers; (the chief of the leading platoon omits it if his platoon is in motion;) when it has marched 30 paces, he commands: 1. HALT; 2. *Right—DRESS*.

Each of the other chiefs of platoon, when his platoon arrives opposite its place in line, commands, FORWARD; when his platoon arrives with its horses' heads in line

of the groups of the horses on the right, he commands :  
1. HALT; 2. DRESS.

The squadron being aligned, the captain commands :  
FRONT.

372.—The squadron being at a halt, or in motion, in open column, to form line faced to the rear, on the rear and to the left, or on the rear and to the right, of the column, the captain first wheels the platoons about, No. 360, and then commands: *Right—front into line*; or *left—front into line*; which are executed as prescribed in No. 371.

In the first case, he should usually wheel the platoons to the *left about*; in the last, to the *right about*; in either case, he may first halt, or he may give the command to be executed at the moment the wheels are completed; or he may move forward a space before beginning the second movement.

373.—The squadron being halted, or in motion, in open column, to form line faced to the rear, on the head and to the right of the column, the captain forms, *right—front into line*, No. 371, and then commands :

1. *Platoons left about (or right about) wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.
4. *Right—DRESS.*
5. FRONT.

To form the line on the head and to the left of the column, the captain forms, *left—front into line*; and then wheels the platoons to the *right about*.

#### TO BREAK BY PLATOONS TO THE FRONT.

374.—The squadron being in line, the captain commands :



1. *By platoon.*
2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands, *forward*; the others command, *right oblique*.

The chief of the first platoon repeats the command, MARCH; the chief of the second platoon, and successively those of the third and fourth, command MARCH, when the platoon on his right has moved a distance equal to three-fourths of a platoon front.

When the second platoon arrives directly in rear of the first, its chief commands, FORWARD; and so in succession with the third and fourth platoons, at the moments of their arrival directly in rear of the second and third.

When the movement is to be made at the trot, that word is added to the preparatory command.

The squadron is broken by the left on the same principle, by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By the left—by platoon*; 2. MARCH.

If, in line, the fourth platoon be on the right, the third next, and so on, and the command be *by platoon*, the fourth platoon, on the right, leads; if the command be *by the left—by platoon*, the first platoon, on the left, leads.

## TO BREAK BY PLATOONS TO THE REAR FROM THE RIGHT TO MARCH TO THE LEFT.

375.—The squadron being in line, the captain commands:

1. *Platoons from right to rear—to march to the left.*
2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands, *right about wheel*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by him, this platoon executes its wheel to the right about; when nearly terminated, its chief commands: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left*. After marching 10 paces straight forward, he commands: 1. *Right—TURN*; 2. FORWARD.

The chief of the second platoon, and successively those of the third and fourth, commands, *right about wheel*, when the chief of the platoon on his right commands, MARCH, when that platoon has passed over two-thirds of its first wheel; each wheels about, marches 10 paces to the rear, and turns the same.

The squadron being in line, it is broken from the left to the rear to march to the right, on the same principle, by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Platoons from left to rear—to march to the right*; 2. MARCH.

### MOVEMENTS BY FOURS, THE SQUADRON BEING IN OPEN COLUMN.

376.—The squadron being in open column, to cause it to move to its left flank, the captain commands:

1. *Fours—Left*.
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right*.

At the command MARCH, the wheels are executed in each platoon by fours, and the column marches by its left flank, as prescribed, No. 283.

377.—If the column be marching, the commands are: 1. *Fours—LEFT*; 2. *Guide right*, No. 284.

To resume the direct march, in open column, the captain commands:

*Fours—RIGHT*.

At this command the fours all wheel to the right, and move forward, with the guide *left* or *right*, as the right or left may be in front.

The open column gains ground to its right flank by inverse means and commands. To resume its first direction, without moving forward, the commands are: 1. *Fours*—LEFT; 2. HALT.

378.—The squadron being in open column, it may gain ground to the rear by a movement by fours; the captain commands:

1. *Fours*—Left about.
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right*.

If the left is in front, the command habitually would be: 1. *Fours*—Right about; and 3. *Guide left*.

The column being in motion to the rear, to resume the march to the front, the captain commands: *Fours*—RIGHT ABOUT.

If he wishes it to halt, he adds: 2. HALT.

379.—In these movements, *to the left*, or *to the right* by fours, the chiefs of platoons move abreast of the first fours; the right and left guides preserve their places, facing in the new direction.

The fours being wheeled *about*, the chiefs of platoons march behind their platoons; the squadron guide with the platoon that has become in front, marches now on its flank as its guide; the other keeps his place on the flank of the platoon now in rear.

During the march by flank, the captain observes that the fours preserve their distances of four feet, and that the chiefs of platoons preserve the proper interval toward the side of the guide.

## ARTICLE THIRD.

## DIRECT MARCH OF THE SQUADRON IN LINE.

380.—The principles of the direct march, prescribed, No. 242, and following, are applicable to the squadron.

When the troopers keep their horses' heads, and their own, square to the front, the alignment, as well as the steady march, will be easily preserved; whether too far advanced or retired, or whether their interval be too great, is readily ascertained by a glance of the eye, without moving the head.

The non-commissioned officers on the flanks of platoons will endeavor to preserve the general alignment, by aligning themselves on each other instead of the next files towards the guide; and with the object of keeping the line of horses' heads one yard behind the line of the groups of the horses of the platoon commanders.

The guide should not put himself in motion with precipitancy, but commence the gait rather slowly; and the same in passing from a quick to a slower gait.

The direction taken by the guide has the greatest influence on the regularity of the march; a distant fixed point should be given him, in a line perpendicular to the front of the squadron; this is done by the captain, and the object is selected with the greatest accuracy from a position some distance in rear of the guide; but the non-commissioned officers must learn by great attention and practice to judge themselves, and select an object directly to the front; for greater accuracy, some slight intermediate object, or a succession of them, should be kept in the eye, in the line to the distant object.

The captain should observe that the whole line moves together at the command of execution.

During the march if it is seen that the troopers carry the bridle hand to the left, it is proof that the point of direction is to the left of a perpendicular, and the reverse.

381.—The platoon officers remain aligned towards the guide; the one nearest is responsible for the gait; and the next, the *most* responsible for the alignment, as he regulates its base. The troopers in the platoons keep abreast with the flank files.

When the guide is *centre*, the sergeant on the left of the second platoon, who bears the guidon, becomes the guide; the chief of the second platoon regulates the gait, and the chief of the third platoon regulates the base of the alignment.

382.—The regularity of the march in line depending much upon the officers and flank files of platoons, they, with the right and left guides, should be exercised and practiced as a "skeleton" squadron; much attention must be paid to the preservation of intervals; absent platoon commanders will be replaced by sergeants.

This exercise becomes more important when the number of privates in a squadron may be so reduced as to preclude the exercises of the school of the squadron; then other squadron movements will also be practiced.

383.—The squadron being in line, to move forward, the captain commands:

1. *Forward.*
2. *Guide right, or Guide left, or Guide centre.*
3. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the squadron moves forward.

384.—To halt the squadron, the captain commands:

1. *Squadron.*
2. HALT.
3. *Right—DRESS, or 3. Centre—DRESS.*

At the second command, the squadron halts.

At the third command, the squadron aligns itself as prescribed, No. 311.

The squadron being aligned, the captain commands:  
FRONT.

385.—The squadron marching at the *walk*, before passing to the *trot*, the captain assures himself that the point of direction is good, and that the squadron marches with uniformity and steadiness.

When the squadron marches steadily at the *trot*, it passes to the *gallop*.

The captain observes that the troopers keep their horses quiet, and do not quicken the gait more than necessary; a common fault in the march at the *gallop*. For this purpose the chiefs of platoon, the guide and the flank files pay attention to keep their horses evenly, at the prescribed rate of *gallop*.

In the march at the *gallop*, it is necessary to slacken the pace as soon as disorder is discovered.

To march at the *gallop*, the squadron commences at the *walk*, then passes to the *trot*; the same progression is observed in order to halt when marching at the *gallop*; the squadron is then exercised in moving off from a halt at the *trot* and at the *gallop*, and in halting when marching at these gaits.

### COUNTER-MARCH.

386.—The squadron being in line, to face it in the opposite direction, the captain commands:

1. *Counter-march by the right flank.*
2. MARCH.
3. FRONT.

At the first command, the chiefs of platoons turn to the right and place themselves in front of and near their right files; the members of the squadron behind the line pass into line on its left.

At the command MARCH, the chief of the first platoon

leads the movement, which is executed as prescribed, No. 255; the right guide follows the lieutenant, but turns to place himself behind the left guide, with two paces between the croups of their horses; the chief of platoon taking place on his right, and superintending the alignment of his platoon; the chiefs of the other platoons move with their right files and halt, faced to the right, near the centre of their platoons in the new line, and close to the heads of the horses.

Those who took post on the left of the line follow the movement, and take their proper positions as they arrive at them; at the command **FRONT**, the chiefs of the platoons take their usual positions.

The counter-march should be executed generally at the *trot*. For this purpose, after the first command, the captain indicates the gait.

This movement is executed by the left flank on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Counter-march by the left flank*; 2. **MARCH**; 3. **FRONT**.

## WHEELINGS.

387.—The principles prescribed for the platoon, Nos. 257 and following, are applicable to the squadron wheeling on a fixed or a movable pivot. The execution of it becomes more difficult as the front is extended; it requires, on the part of officers and troopers, a particular and constant attention.

During the wheel, the chiefs of platoon keep at the centre of their platoons, and correctly aligned upon each other, keeping their horses upon the arc of circle more or less great, in proportion to their distance from the pivot. The chief of the platoon on which the wheel is made regulates himself upon the chief of the platoon on the marching flank, observing to move progressively, as the latter advances in the new direction.

The chief of the platoon on the marching flank describes his circle so as neither to move from, nor approach, the other chiefs of platoon.

The files on flanks of platoons dress upon each other, all observing the progression of the marching flank, and keeping upon the arcs they should describe.

The guide placed on the side of the pivot is the actual pivot, although he is not counted in the rank.

In every kind of wheel, the marching flank of a squadron should measure with accuracy its arc of circle; if it is too great, the files are made to open and disunite, and the wheel becomes longer; if it is too small, the files are crowded, there is confusion, and the pivot is forced.

#### TO WHEEL ON A FIXED PIVOT.

388.—The squadron is exercised in wheeling on a fixed pivot, first at the *walk*; then at the *trot*; also at the *gallop*, when the troopers are confirmed in all the principles.

The squadron being halted and correctly aligned, the captain commands:

1. *In circle right wheel.*
2. MARCH.

Which is executed on the principles prescribed, Nos. 257 and 387.

389.—To halt the squadron during the wheel, the captain commands:

1. *Squadron.*
2. HALT.
3. *Left—DRESS.*
4. FRONT.

At the second command, all the troopers halt.

390.—If, instead of halting, the captain wishes to resume the direct march, he commands:



1. FORWARD.
2. *Guide left.*

At the first command, the whole squadron moves forward at the gait in which it was marching before the wheel.

391.—The squadron is halted if confusion arises during the wheel; the captain explains the origin of the fault, and the means of repairing it.

When the troopers begin to understand these movements, the whole circle is passed over several times without halting.

392.—The squadron wheeling steadily at the *walk*, to pass to the *trot*, the captain chooses a moment in which the horses are calm. After one or two turns, the squadron is made to resume the *walk*. The squadron wheeling well at the *trot* is exercised to wheel at the *gallop*, upon the same principles. After one or two turns, it passes to the *trot*, then to the *walk*.

The squadron is afterwards exercised to wheel at the *trot* and at the *gallop*, in commencing from a halt, and to halt while wheeling at those gaits.

393.—The squadron is also exercised to commence the wheel, when marching. The captain commands:

1. *Right (or left) wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT (OR FORWARD.)

Which is executed on the same principles as in No. 286.

These movements are executed at the different gaits; but they should not be repeated too frequently at the *gallop*, in order not to fatigue the horses.

394.—The squadron being on the march, to cause it

to wheel in doubling the gait, the captain gives the command *trot* or *gallop* before that of MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the pivot stops short; the marching flank takes the gait indicated.

At the command FORWARD, both move forward at the gait indicated for the wheel.

### TO WHEEL ON A MOVABLE PIVOT.

395.—In wheels on a movable pivot, the pivot moves in an arc of a circle of 13 paces radius, (gaining about 13 paces to the front and the same distance to the right, in a *right*—WHEEL) at the same time it slackens the gait; the marching flank increases its gait. The sixth file of the second platoon from the pivot, which is the middle of the radius of the wheel, preserves the gait at which the squadron was marching. The troopers placed between this file and the pivot diminish proportionally their gait; those placed between this file and the marching flank augment proportionally theirs.

The troopers preserve their intervals from the pivot, and their alignment by the opposite flank. After the wheel, the guide remains where it was before the wheel, and is given a new point of direction.

396.—The squadron marching in line, to change direction to the right, the captain commands :

1. *Right*—TURN.
2. FORWARD.

At the command *right*, the pivot prepares to slacken and the wheeling flank to increase the gait. At the command TURN, the latter trots; the pivot decreases his gait, so that he shall pass over a quarter circle of 20 paces in the same time that the middle of the second platoon passes its quarter circle (about 47 paces).

without change of gait. Whatever error occurs, the pivot should not leave, or alter his quarter circle.

When this wheel is executed at the *trot*, the marching flank *gallops*.

To change the direction to the left, the movement is executed on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Left*—TURN; 2. FORWARD.

## INDIVIDUAL OBLIQUE MARCH.

397.—The squadron marching in line, to cause it to gain ground towards a flank, without changing the front of the squadron, the captain commands:

1. *Right oblique* (or *left oblique*.)
2. MARCH.

To resume the primitive direction, the captain commands:

FORWARD.

Which is executed as prescribed No. 270.

During the oblique march, the captain observes that the chiefs of platoon keep on the same line, preserve between them the same interval, and follow parallel directions, in order to preserve the general alignment.

This movement is executed at the *walk* or at the *trot*; not at the *gallop*.

## OBLIQUE MARCH BY PLATOONS.

398.—The squadron being in line, to cause it to gain ground towards a flank, by the oblique march by platoons, the captain commands:

1. *Platoons right half-wheel (or left half-wheel.)*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.

At the command MARCH, each platoon executes its *half wheel to the right*, on a fixed pivot.

At the third command each platoon moves forward, conforming to the principles of the direct march.

To cause the squadron to resume the primitive direction, the captain commands:

1. *Platoons left half-wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide right (or left.)*

Which is executed as just prescribed, but by inverse means.

In the oblique march by platoons, the pivots of the platoons should all halt at the same instant, at the command MARCH, so that all the wheels may terminate at the same time.

At the command FORWARD, the right guide on the right of the first platoon, marches straight forward, or upon the point which is indicated to him; the guides of the other platoons follow the fourth trooper from the left of the platoon which precedes them, and keep at five paces from him; (this for a platoon of 12 files.)

The captain places himself habitually at two paces outside and abreast of the second platoon.

The chiefs of platoon at the centre of their platoons.

The guides remain at their places in line.

The oblique march by platoons is executed at the *walk*, at the *trot*, and at the *gallop*, the squadron being halted or in motion.

THE SQUADRON BEING IN LINE, TO CAUSE IT TO GAIN GROUND TO THE REAR, AND FACE IT AGAIN TO THE FRONT, BY FOURS.

399.—The captain commands :

1. *Fours left about* (or *right about*.)
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right* (or *left*.)

Which is executed as prescribed, No. 286.

The chiefs of platoons, guides, trumpeters, &c., wheel about individually ; the first named marching in rear of their platoons, the latter in front.

(The squadron marching thus: at the command *left forward*—FOURS LEFT, it marches in column, right in front.)

The squadron marching in line, to cause it to march to the rear, the captain commands: 1. *Fours—LEFT ABOUT*, (OR *RIGHT ABOUT*;) 2. *Guide right* (or *left*.)

These movements by fours are executed also at the *trot*.

THE SQUADRON MARCHING IN LINE, TO MARCH IT TO THE REAR BY WHEELING THE PLATOONS ABOUT.

400.—The squadron marching in line, the captain commands:

1. *Platoons right about wheel*, (or *left about wheel*.)
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide left*, (or *right*.)

At the command MARCH, the pivots halt short, and turn upon themselves; the marching flanks regulate them-

selves by the right during the first half of the wheel, so as to arrive together in column, and by the left during the second half, so as to arrive together in line.

At the command FORWARD, the squadron resumes the direct march.

If, after wheeling about, the captain wishes to halt, he commands: 3. HALT. 4. *Left*—DRESS. 5. FRONT.

In the wheels to the *right about*, the right guide turns to the right, moves straight forward, a platoon front and turns again to the right, and places himself on the left of the squadron; the left guide executes the same movements, which place him on the right of the squadron.

These movements are executed from a halt, and at the *trot* and *gallop*.

### THE SQUADRON MARCHING IN LINE, TO BREAK IT TO THE FRONT BY PLATOON, AND TO REFORM IT.

401.—The captain commands:

1. *By platoon*.
2. MARCH.

The first platoon marches on, its chief giving no words of command. The chiefs of the other platoons command HALT; and each, in succession, commands: 1. *Right oblique*, and adds, 2. MARCH, when the platoon on his right has marched three-fourths of a platoon front; the rest of the movement is executed as in No. 374.

At the *trot* or *gallop* the movement is executed on the same principles; the chiefs of the 2d, 3d and 4th platoons commanding, instead of HALT, *walk*—MARCH, or *trot*—MARCH; and when the platoon on the right has gained the prescribed distance, indicating the original gait in the next command.

402.—The squadron marching, or at a halt, in open column, right or left in front, to form it at the same gait, the captain commands:

1. *Form squadron—left, (or right.)*
2. MARCH.

Which is executed as in No. 371.

403.—The column marching at the *trot*, this movement is executed on the same principles, except that the chief of the first platoon commands: 1. *Walk*; 2. MARCH; and each of the other chiefs of platoon commands: 1. *Walk*; 2. MARCH; on arriving in line. The movement is executed in the same manner when the column is at the *gallop*, each platoon passing successively to the *trot*.

The squadron marching in line, it is broken by the left, on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By the left—by platoon.* 2. MARCH.

#### THE SQUADRON MARCHING IN LINE, TO BREAK IT TO THE FRONT BY PLATOON, IN DOUBLING THE GAIT; AND TO REFORM IT.

404.—The captain commands:

1. *By platoon—trot.*
2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands: *Trot*; and he repeats the command, MARCH; the chief of each of the other platoons commands, in succession, 1. *Right oblique—trot*; and adds, 2. MARCH, when the platoon on his right has marched a distance equal to three-fourths of a platoon front.

The squadron marching in line at the *trot*, the movement is executed at the *gallop*, on the same principles.

405.—The squadron marching in open column, right or left in front, to form it in doubling the gait, the captain commands:

1. *Form squadron—left (or right)—trot.*
2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chiefs of the three last platoons command: *Left oblique—trot.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by the chiefs of the three last platoons, the first platoon continues to march straight forward at the *walk*, and the rest of the movement is executed as in No. 403:

The column being at the *trot*, this movement is executed on the same principle at the *gallop*.

The squadron marching in line, it is broken *by the left by platoon*, in doubling the gait, on the principles prescribed, No. 404, but, by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By the left by platoon—trot, (or gallop;)* 2. MARCH.

## PASSAGE OF OBSTACLES.

406.—The squadron marching in line and encountering an obstacle impassable by either of the platoons in line, its chief will oblique it behind the next platoon, (if it be a central one, behind a flank platoon,) in the manner and by the commands of No. 401. The obstacle being passed, the chief of the platoon will return it to its position, as in No. 405. If the obstacle admit of it, the chief of platoon will, instead, command, *by fours*, or *by the left—by fours*.

407.—The squadron marching in line, to pass broken ground by the head of each platoon, the captain commands:



1. *In each platoon—by fours, (or by twos.)*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right, (or left.)*

At the command MARCH, each platoon breaks by fours as prescribed, No. 278; the chiefs of platoon march in front of the first set of fours or twos; the right and left guides as in column by fours or twos, trumpeters, &c., in rear of their platoons.

If the ground requires a platoon to deviate from its direction, it should return to it as soon as possible, and recover its proper interval and alignment.

In marching thus, the captain may cause the squadron to break *by twos* and *by file*, observing to *form twos* and *fours* as soon as the ground will permit.

These movements are executed in increasing the gait, or when the squadron is marching at the *trot* or at the *gallop*.

408.—To reform the squadron, the captain commands:

1. *Form platoons.*
2. MARCH.

Or he will add to the first command the indication of the increased gait.

These movements are executed by the left, on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands:

1. *In each platoon, by the left—by fours (or by twos;)*
2. MARCH;
3. *Guide left (or right.)*

## ARTICLE FOURTH.

### CHARGE.

409.—In the charge, as in every other direct march, it is important to keep the horses straight. As soon as any confusion is observed, it is necessary to halt and recommence the movement.

The squadron is exercised at the charge: 1. *In line*; 2. *In column*; 3. *As foragers*.

*The charge in line* is executed by the squadron when in line; it should be as short as possible, so as to reach an enemy in good order, and without fatiguing the horses.

*The charge in column* is executed by the squadron broken in open column.

To execute *the charge as foragers*, all the troopers of the squadron disperse, and direct themselves in couples upon the point each wishes to attack, observing not to lose sight of their officers, who charge with them.

410.—The squadron being in line, the captain orders the sabres to be drawn, and the platoons to charge one after another, commencing by the right.

For this purpose the captain advances 240 paces to the front, taking the squadron guides, to make the line on which the platoons halt and dress after charging; and when he wishes the movement to commence, he gives a signal.

The first platoon then moves forward at the commands of its chief, as prescribed, No. 292. It passes successively from the *walk* to the *trot*, from the *trot* to the *gallop*, and from the *gallop* to the *charge*.

The three other platoons break in their turn, when the preceding one has halted.

411.—To execute the charge by the entire squadron, the captain places himself in front of the centre of his squadron, and commands:

1. *Forward.*
2. *Guide centre.*
3. MARCH.

When the squadron has marched forward 20 paces, he commands:

1. *Trot.*
2. MARCH.

At 60 paces further, he commands :

1. *Gallop.*
2. MARCH.

At 80 paces further, he commands :

CHARGE.

At this command, repeated by the chiefs of platoon, the troopers take the position of *charge sabre*.

When the squadron has passed over 60 paces at the charge, the captain commands :

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadron.*
3. HALT.
4. *Centre—DRESS.*
5. FRONT.

At the command *attention*, repeated by the chiefs of platoon, the troopers slacken the pace, and *carry sabre*.

At the command *squadron*, the chiefs of platoon command, *platoon*, and the troopers pass to the *trot*.

At the command HALT, repeated by the chiefs of platoon, the troopers halt.

At the command *centre—DRESS*, they align themselves to the centre.

The squadron being aligned, the captain commands :  
FRONT.

To assure himself that the principles prescribed, No. 298, are exactly followed, the captain sometimes places himself in front of the squadron, facing it, and at the distance that will enable him to remark better the faults. In this case, the next in command gives the commands.

412.—When the squadron executes the charge correctly, instead of halting when the charge is finished, the captain commands :

1. *Attention.*
2. *Trot.*
3. MARCH.

At these commands, repeated by the chiefs of platoon, the squadron passes to the *trot*, and at 20 paces beyond the commands :

1. *First (or fourth) platoon—as foragers.*
2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chief of the platoon-commands, *gallop*; he repeats the command MARCH, and having gained 20 yards in advance of the line, he commands, CHARGE AS FORAGERS. The platoon then disperses and charges as foragers. The trumpeter follows the chief of the platoon.

The squadron follows this platoon at the *trot*; when it has passed over 150 paces, the captain causes the *rally* to be sounded. At this signal, repeated by the trumpeter of the platoon dispersed as foragers, the latter rallies upon the squadron, as prescribed, No. 294, and when three-fourths of the platoon have rallied, and are in line, the captain commands :

1. *Attention.*
2. *Gallop.*
3. MARCH.
4. CHARGE.

The squadron executes again the charge in line; the troopers who have not been able to rally charge upon the flanks of the squadron.

The captain may order, *two right (or left) platoons as foragers.*

413.—To exercise the troopers in rallying upon any point whatever, the captain, during the march at the *trot*, causes the squadron to gain ground towards one of its flanks, by executing a *half-wheel to the right* or to

*the left, or by breaking by platoons to the right or to the left, and reforming immediately in a new direction.*

414.—The squadron marching in open column at the *trot*, the captain commands :

1. *To the charge.*
2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands, *gallop*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the chief of the first platoon, this platoon commences the *gallop*.

The other platoons follow at the *trot*, each taking the *gallop* when the platoon which precedes it is at the distance of 60 paces.

When the first platoon has passed over 80 paces at the *gallop*, its chief commands, CHARGE.

At this command, the platoon executes the charge; and when it has passed over 60 paces, its chief causes it to pass to the *trot* by the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Trot*; 3. MARCH.

The other platoons pay attention to the movements of the platoon which precedes them, so as to change the gait in time, and to resume their ordinary distance; the captain halts the column when he thinks proper.

These charges are executed, each platoon taking in its turn the head of the column.

A platoon that has failed in this charge, or is dispersed, would rally *in rear of the column*.

415.—The squadron marching in open column at the *trot*, the captain commands :

1. *First platoon—as foragers.*
2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chief of the platoon com-

mands, *gallop*; he repeats the command MARCH, and having gained 20 yards, he commands, CHARGE AS FORAGERS.

The squadron continues to march at the *trot*, and when it has passed over 100 or 150 paces, the captain causes the *rally* to be sounded.

At this signal the platoon rallies and reforms at the rear of the column, or at its place in line if the squadron has been put in line.

The charge as foragers is used against artillery, or in pursuit. A squadron skirmishing, or from line, ordered to charge a battery, might, when within range of grape, especially if hidden by smoke, open from the centre, and make for its flanks. The reserve advances to charge, if necessary, the support of the battery.

### RALLYING.

416.—To give the troopers the habit of rallying promptly, after having been dispersed, the captain places the squadron at the extremity of the ground; and after giving notice to the files on the flanks of platoons to remain upon the line with him, he causes the *charge as foragers* to be sounded. At this signal the troopers disperse and charge as foragers; when they are at the distance of 150 or 200 paces, the captain causes the *rally* to be sounded, which is executed as prescribed, No. 294.

The captain observes that the troopers disperse without confusion; that, in rallying, they direct themselves to the right and to the left, outside of the flanks of the squadron, in order to unmask promptly the front of the squadron, and to reform in passing by the rear.

When the troopers rally without confusion, this movement is repeated without requiring the flank files to remain on the line of the squadron.

At the signal to *charge as foragers*, the squadron disperses in every direction to the front.

When the squadron is dispersed, the captain causes the *rally* to be sounded.

At this signal, the officers, the non-commissioned officers, and the troopers, rejoin rapidly; the officers align themselves promptly upon the captain, and the non-commissioned officers mark immediately the flanks of the platoons.

As soon as the captain has formed two-thirds of the squadron, he moves forward, charges again and halts.

When the squadron is dispersed as foragers, the captain should sometimes establish himself *to the right* or *to the left* of the direction followed by the troopers, and then order the *rally* to be sounded, to accustom them to rally upon any point he may select.

These movements are first executed at the *trot*, and then at the *gallop*.

Troopers being dispersed and closely pursued, must avoid the defenceless confusion of a *crowd*. They must scatter as they go, and will thus soon put themselves on an equality with their pursuers. These may, in their turn, be the pursued.

## SKIRMISHING.

417.—When the squadron acts independently, it will usually send out one platoon to skirmish; circumstances may require two or three platoons to be sent.

When the squadron is in sight of the skirmishers, the captain orders no signal except the rally. The chief of the skirmishers observes the movements of the squadron he covers, and conforms to them as soon as practicable, requiring his trumpeter to sound the necessary signals.

When the squadron changes front, the chief of the skirmishers moves upon the new front, unless the captain gives orders to the contrary.

The trumpeter who follows the chief of the skirmishers should give the signals only upon the order of that

officer. The skirmishers should execute their movements only by the signals of the trumpeter who accompanies the officer who commands them.

What is prescribed in the *school of the platoon, mounted*, is conformed to by the troopers, and by the squadron line of skirmishers.

When several platoons act as skirmishers, the firing commences at the guide in the centre of the line, progressing to the right and left.

When a squadron is acting as skirmishers, the captain is always followed by a trumpeter; the other is placed several steps in rear of the centre of the line of skirmishers, in order to repeat as soon as possible the signals given by the trumpeter of the captain.

418.—The squadron being in line, the captain commands :

1. *First (or fourth) platoon as skirmishers.*
2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon, if not already drawn, orders sabres to be drawn, and then commands : 1. *Forward* ; 2. *Trot*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the chief of the platoon, it moves forward. After marching 100 paces to the front, the chief of the platoon commands : 1. *Eight files from right (or from left)—as skirmishers* ; 2. MARCH ; which is executed as prescribed, No. 295.

419.—When the captain wishes the skirmishers to re-enter the squadron, he causes the *rally* to be sounded.

At this signal the chief of the skirmishers, joining the reserve, or placing himself conveniently for resuming his place in the squadron, repeats the signal, and the platoon being rallied, he joins it at the *gallop* or *trot*.

420.—When the captain wishes to relieve a platoon which is skirmishing, the chief of the new platoon



moves forward upon the reserve of the platoon which is acting as skirmishers. On coming up abreast of it, he orders out 8 files as skirmishers, as has been explained.

As soon as the new skirmishers have passed 5 paces beyond those they are to relieve, the latter *turn about* and rally upon their reserve at a *trot*. The platoon having rallied, is conducted back to the squadron at the *trot*.

421.—When the entire squadron is to act as skirmishers, the captain orders the sabres to be drawn. He then commands:

1. *Forward—trot.*
2. MARCH.

Having arrived at the point where the reserve is to be established, about 100 paces from the front of the body to be covered, and more if it has been commanded, the captain commands:

1. *Three right (or three left) platoons—as skirmishers.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the chief of the platoon, which is to support the skirmishers, halts that platoon; the right guide joins the skirmishers, and when they deploy, takes his place in the centre, there to be the guide of the whole line; the left guide accompanies the captain. The chiefs of the three right platoons continue to march on, each directing himself by the shortest route, 100 paces to the front towards the part of the line his platoon is to occupy, and having reached it, he deploys his platoon at the commands: 1. *As skirmishers*; 2. MARCH.

The right platoon covers the right of the regiment, and extends 20 or 30 paces beyond it; another platoon covers the centre, and the left platoon covers the left, extending also 20 or 30 paces beyond; the extremities

of the line are thrown back. The chiefs of these platoons remain 25 paces in rear of the line of skirmishers, and pass over the extent occupied by the troopers of their platoons.

The reserve takes position in rear of the centre of the line of skirmishers. The captain's habitual post is half-way from the reserve to the skirmishers.

422.—If the extent of the regiment and circumstances require it, two squadrons are sent as skirmishers. Six platoons, "*as skirmishers at 4 paces,*" will cover six squadrons in line. Thus a squadron from each flank, with a platoon in reserve, would cover each its wing of the regiment. The colonel would order the skirmishers to be commanded by the senior captain, or by a field officer; but they always rally by squadron, and at the flank from which they come.

The proportionate strength of reserves will depend upon circumstances, especially the distance of strong support. The chief objects of a reserve are their moral effect—for rallying points—for supplying vacancies and re-enforcing, and for relieving the skirmishers. The main body may be so near that sometimes skirmishers may be deployed without a reserve.

423.—The squadron being dispersed as skirmishers, to rally it the captain orders the *rally* to be sounded; at this signal the officers, the skirmishers, and the reserve rally upon the point occupied by the captain.

If the *rally* sounds from the commander of the regiment, it will be repeated by the commander of the skirmishers, at a position ordered by the colonel, or chosen by his own judgment of the circumstances. Unless otherwise ordered, the squadron, or squadrons, having rallied, will then be conducted at the trot in the nearest and quickest way to their place in the regiment; if the regiment be advancing, they would not retire to re-join it.

424.—The troopers being dispersed as skirmishers, if the captain wishes them to *charge as foragers*, he causes the signal to be sounded.

At the signal the chiefs of platoons move forward into line, and the skirmishers draw sabres; they charge immediately. The reserve follows at the *trot* or at the *gallop*, as may be necessary.

After the charge the captain orders the *rally* to be sounded, when the troopers rally in rear of the reserve, if he is with it; the reserve may have changed. The captain may rally the troopers *advancing*.

425.—If, in a squadron, one or two platoons are to dismount to fight on foot, the captain commands:

1. *First (or fourth) platoon, (or such platoons)—*  
*to fight on foot.*
2. MARCH.

At the first command, the commander orders the sabres to be returned, and gives the command *forward*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by him, the platoon moves forward; having marched 20 paces, the chief halts it and commands:

*Prepare to fight—ON FOOT.*

Which is executed as prescribed, No. 306. The platoon being formed on foot, it is conducted to the point it is to defend.

The horses without riders will be led in rear of the centre of the squadron.

When the captain wishes the dismounted platoon to remount, he orders the *rally* to be sounded. At this signal, the chief of this platoon places himself at the point on which he wishes to rally, if dispersed as skirmishers, and the rally is executed as prescribed, No. 399.

The platoon being formed, is conducted to within 12 paces of the ground occupied by their horses, and the

chief of this platoon gives the command, *mount*, which is executed as prescribed, No. 306; it resumes its place in the squadron.

When two platoons dismount, the junior commander remains with the horses.

If the whole squadron dismounts to fight on foot, the captain commands :

*Prepare to fight—ON FOOT.*

Which is executed by the whole squadron, as prescribed for a platoon, No. 306.

An officer remains with the horses; the left guide, one trumpeter, and the right and left troopers of the squadron remain mounted. The horses of the officers who dismount are held as follows: Those of the captain and chief of the first platoon, by the trumpeter; those of the other chiefs of platoon, the right guide and dismounted trumpeter, by the right and left troopers.

The captain moves his dismounted squadron to perform the duty required of it, No. 75.

The squadron remounts by the commands, and on the principles prescribed for a platoon, No. 306.

426.—A column of *twos* or *fours*, passing a defile, if suddenly attacked or threatened on either flank, if they receive the command, *prepare to fight—on foot*, would instantly dismount, leaving their horses with the numbers 4, who remain mounted, and form a line of skirmishers, with from two to three paces intervals, faced toward the enemy.

Generally the skirmishers should charge with the revolver; they have the sabre for the last resort.

# CAVALRY TACTICS.

---

## PART SECOND.

---

### TITLE FOURTH.

#### EVOLUTIONS OF A REGIMENT.

---

##### GENERAL RULES.

427.—The colonel is in the position in which he judges his presence most important, and from whence his commands can best be heard. He is accompanied by the adjutant, the regimental quartermaster, and a chief trumpeter.

When the colonel gives the command HALT, he at the same instant raises his right arm and sabre vertically to their full extent.

The commands, ATTENTION and FRONT, are not repeated.

The preparatory commands are immediately repeated by the field officers.

The field officers superintend the due execution of the evolutions, and of commands generally, in their wings, or under their observation; correct errors, carelessness, &c. They assist the colonel in giving the desired direction to lines, and to guides the direction of

the march. When the colonel does not, they will superintend the dressing and alignment of the regiment.

The markers for evolutions are the sergeant major, the regimental marker, and the squadron right and left guides.

In the formation of lines, the base consists of the sergeant major, a guide of the base squadron, and the regimental marker.

On the preparatory command, the sergeant major and the squadron guide are posted by the adjutant or the nearest field officer; the former to mark the position of the flank of the base squadron, which will become the flank of the regiment—or in central formations its right flank—and facing toward the other flank of that squadron; the latter—the guide of that other flank—to mark its position, and at three platoon fronts distance, facing the sergeant major.

At the same time the regimental marker will gallop to the most distant flank, and will there take post under the direction of the colonel, the adjutant or the field officer, on the prolongation of the base line, and facing the base.

At the approach of the squadrons, the squadron guides of the flank which will be most distant from the point of formation will rapidly take post on the prolongation of the base line, and face toward the other flank of their squadron, (or the point of formation).

The regimental marker serves to mark the general direction of the line, for the government of the squadron columns in their march.

All these markers, on taking post, will raise the hilts of their sabres as high as the cheek, keeping the sabre vertical, the edge to their left.

Chiefs of platoons corresponding to the positions of the markers will vary somewhat from their central positions, if necessary, so as to bring their horses' heads to the boot of the marker.

In all formations of lines the squadron commanders face their squadrons in their positions opposite their

centres, until the command FRONT, from the colonel or field officer; they then all face about, turning toward the side of formation, and all the markers of the line then take their posts.

In all successive formations of line, the dressing being toward the side of formation, the command DRESS will be so understood. Marching in line, the squadrons always regulate intervals and alignment by the squadron of direction.

The command FRONT will be given, on the alignment of the regiment, by the senior field officer; in the absence of field officers, by the adjutant. This being invariable, it will be omitted in the evolutions.

The guide of a flank squadron, which forms on the regimental marker, will not take position to mark the line.

In the formation of a close column on a flank squadron without changing front, and in the change of direction of a close column by a flank, the regimental marker is posted on the new line of direction of the guides, a little beyond the new position of the most distant squadron from the one which determines the movement. In the flank movement he always marks the nearest flank of the new position. The field officer at the rear of the column superintends his placing.

The guide being on the left, when the right is in front, and on the right, when the left is in front, it is not announced; the colonel may, however, remind them of it when he thinks proper; but only while the column is marching. If for any reason the colonel wishes the guide on the side opposite to the established rule, he announces it in his command.

In each case the indication of the guide is repeated by the field officers and the captains.

When a line or column is to move at the same time by the same movement, the captains immediately repeat the preparatory commands.

In the case of successive movements, they repeat the preparatory commands sufficiently soon to give that of

execution at the moment when the movement should commence in their squadron.

If an evolution requires a particular movement of some squadron, the captain commands this movement instead of repeating the preparatory command given by the colonel.

The commands of *execution* are repeated simultaneously by the field officers. They are repeated in the same manner by the captains commanding, except in the movements which require successive commands.

In successive alignments, the captains command, *FRONT*. These invariable rules render repetition unnecessary in the details of the evolutions.

If it should happen that a command is not heard, each captain conforms as promptly as possible to the movements of the squadron which precedes him in the direction of the formation or breaking.

To change the gait of the regiment marching, the colonel commands it by trumpet signal.

The regiment *draws the sabre, returns it, or presents it*; at the command of the colonel, which is not repeated.

In a formation in line, or in a deployment, when one or several fractions of the troop cannot find room to enter the line, these fractions remain, or pass in rear of the line.

When the colonel wishes the regiment to march, either in line or column, he gives the point of direction if he thinks it necessary. A field officer points it out to the guide, or gives him one, if the colonel does not direct it himself, or by the adjutant.

A base line may be marked at a distance from the regiment by the sergeant major and regimental marker, posted by the colonel, a field officer, or the adjutant.

The regimental marker is a non-commissioned officer, selected for the duty by the colonel from one of the squadrons present.

Markers are not used in correcting the alignment of the regiment; nor for the line formed by the simultaneous wheel of subdivisions—that from double column



included. The commanders of the flank platoons of the squadron to which the alignment is directed, raise their sabres vertically, the hand as high as the cheek, the edge to the front.

If the command do not prescribe the gait, the simple march of the regiment, including the movements in echelon, is at the *walk*.

Movements which change the order of the regiment are executed at the *trot*, unless specially excepted, or unless the colonel's command designate a different gait.

That gait is recommended for all, except the formations *front into line*; for this the *gallop* may be used; and perhaps, in some cases, for the deployment of a close column.

In all formations of line to the right of a column right in front, or left of a column left in front, the colonel will, before the preparatory command, or as soon as convenient, pass to that side of the column; the field officers will do so at the preparatory command.

While a squadron is acting in line, with its original fourth platoon on the right, the original left guide will be "right guide," (and the right, the left).

When a column changes direction, each subdivision commander fixes his eyes on the spot which the guide of the division before him was passing at the instant of the command *turn*; and is very careful to give his command when his guide reaches it.

Platoon commanders are answerable for the distances in open columns.

Columns formed for changing front may be by fours or platoons, according to circumstances; but never by fours when the column, right in front, is to form *right—front into line*; or left in front, *left—front into line*. Columns of platoons are safer near the enemy, unless, by possibility, he should appear towards the original front, when the columns of fours can be instantly converted into echelons, (the *safest* is the movement by squadrons, in oblique echelon).

The *order of battle*, according to the strength or organ-

ization of the regiment, being known, in all formations of line, the colonel, when he wishes it in a line of battle, gives or sends orders accordingly, or announces it in his command; for instance: *Left—front into line of battle*; then, if it be two lines, the second is formed at the head of its leading squadron; by the shortest route and simplest means the flanking squadrons move to their posts.

The squadrons which are to form the second line will seldom move to the rear, *for distance*, without orders; for the first line may immediately advance.

428.—If commanded, it is always easy in the squadron column to form in two ranks; it is only necessary to order the 2d, 4th, 6th, &c., squadrons from the front to close to one pace from the 1st, 3d, 5th, &c., squadrons. If there be two captains present, the junior takes place in rear of the centre; the platoon commanders of the even numbered squadrons take place upon the flanks, and as file closers.

At the command *CHARGE*, the guide of the squadron, under all circumstances, if not so previously, instantly becomes *centre*; the troopers carefully preserve their intervals by that point.

---

## ARTICLE FIRST.

### FORMATION OF COLUMNS, THEIR MARCH AND CHANGES.

#### *Alignment of the Regiment.*

429.—The regiment being in line, as prescribed, (Tit. 1, Art. 1,) the colonel causes the platoon commanders of one of the flank squadrons to be aligned, and in a direction by which no portion of the regiment will have to rein back, and commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Right—DRESS, or Left—DRESS.*

At the second command, repeated by the field officers, (only,) the squadron commanders turn to the right about, to superintend their squadrons; the chiefs of platoons align themselves, as also the flank files and troopers one pace in their rear.

At the command **FRONT**, the captains turn to the left about.

430.—For instruction and practice the colonel will establish a base line 30 paces in front of the regiment, marked by the sergeant major, the inner guide of a flank squadron, and the regimental marker opposite the other flank of the regiment, and cause a successive alignment of the squadrons, by similar commands, and on the same principles as in the successive alignment of platoons in the squadron, No. 309.

### TO FORM A COLUMN OF FOURS—ITS MARCH, AND CHANGE OF DIRECTION.

431.—The regiment being in line, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Fours right, (or left.)*
3. **MARCH.**
4. **HALT.**

It is executed in each squadron as prescribed for the squadron, No. 312.

If the colonel wish the regiment to move forward, he omits the command **HALT**.

The colonel observes that all have their prescribed positions, (Tit. I. Art. I.)

432.—To put the column in motion, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Forward.*
3. MARCH.

To change the direction of the column, the colonel commands:

*Column left, (or right.)*

This command is only repeated by the field officer near the head of the column; (the remark applies to all similar cases.) The movement is made as prescribed, No. 320.

433.—The regiment marching in a column of fours, to face and march the column to the rear, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Fours*—LEFT ABOUT; or *Fours*—RIGHT ABOUT.

### TO FORM AN OPEN COLUMN--ITS MARCH, AND CHANGE OF DIRECTION.

434.—The regiment at a halt, or marching in line, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Platoons right wheel, (or left wheel.)*
3. MARCH.

At the second command the captains command, *platoons right wheel—trot*. The wheel being nearly completed they command HALT.

The movement is executed at the same time in each squadron as prescribed, No. 337.

If the colonel wishes the column to move forward immediately he commands, after three-fourths of the wheel: 4. FORWARD.

If the colonel commands platoons right wheel--*Column right* (or *left, &c.*) the wheels being nearly completed, the captains command FORWARD, the colonel omitting it.

435.—To put the column in march, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Forward.*
3. MARCH.

436.—To change the direction of the column, the colonel commands:

*Column left, (or right.)*

The movement is made throughout as prescribed, No. 341.

437.—To halt the column, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Column.*
3. HALT.

438.—The regiment being in line to form open column by successive movements, and to march by the rear—which is done to make the passage of a defile in rear of a flank—the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Platoons, from right to rear—to march to the left.*
3. MARCH.

The movement is made in each squadron as prescribed, No. 375; the captains add to the second command *trot*. The captains not at the flank give the command MARCH, when the chief of the last platoon of the next squadron, after marching ten paces to the rear, commands *right*—TURN.

The regiment is broken by the left to the rear to march to the right, on the same principles, by inverse commands and means.

439.—The movement may be made from both flanks at once; to cover, by the centre squadrons, the passage of a defile behind them, the colonel then commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Platoon from the flanks—to the rear pass defile*; 3. MARCH. At the command *march*, the movement is commenced from right and left, as prescribed above; the columns opposite the defile turn to pass it abreast, and after passing it turn to the left and right, at the point which the colonel directs; they halt and wheel into line at his commands.

440.—The regiment at a halt or marching in open column, left, or right in front, to face it and move in the opposite direction, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention*.
2. *Platoons right (or left) about wheel*.
3. MARCH.
4. FORWARD; (OR HALT.)

The movement is executed in each squadron as prescribed, No. 360. The sergeant major and regimental marker change to the head of the column. (This is a general remark.)

441.—The regiment marching in open column, to gain ground to one of its flanks, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention*.
2. *Fours*—RIGHT, OR LEFT.

If the column is at a halt, he commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Fours—right, or Left.*
3. MARCH.

These movements are executed as in the squadron, Nos. 376 and 377.

442.—The regiment marching in open column to gain ground obliquely to the right or left, without changing front, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Right (or left) oblique.*
3. MARCH.

It is executed as in the squadron, No. 342.

To resume the direct march, the colonel commands:

FORWARD.

## TO FORM A COLUMN OF SQUADRONS, AND A CLOSE COLUMN.

443.—The regiment halted; or marching in line, to form a column of squadrons, faced to the left, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons left wheel.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captain's command, *left wheel—trot*; when the wheels are completed they command, HALT.

Each squadron executes the wheel as prescribed, Nos. 388, 393; but they regulate their wheels by the left squadron.

If the colonel desires a more accurate alignment, he commands :

DRESS.

The captains command: 1. *Right*—DRESS; 2. FRONT; and take post, as in line.

If the colonel desires the column to move forward, without halting, when the wheels are three-fourths completed, he commands :

4. FORWARD.

Which the captains repeat at the completion of the wheels.

The column is formed face to the right, on the same principles, by inverse commands and means.

444.—The colonel wishing to close a column of squadrons, commands :

1. *Attention*.
2. *Close column*.
3. MARCH.

The captain of the leading squadron proceeds to the pivot flank of his squadron; and, if he deems it necessary, corrects its alignment.

At the second command, the other captains command: 1. *Forward*; 2. *Trot*; they repeat the command MARCH. At platoon distance from the preceding squadron, each commands: 1. HALT; 2. DRESS; 3. FRONT.

The column of squadrons being in march, the colonel closes the column by the same commands.

At the second command, the captain of the leading squadron proceeds to its flank.

The other captains command: 1. *Trot*, and repeat the command MARCH. At platoon distance each commands, *walk*—MARCH.

If the column is marching at the *trot*, the captain of



the leading squadron commands, *walk*—MARCH; and the other captains the same, on reaching their proper distance.

445.—The regiment marching or halted in close column, to take squadron distance the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Take squadron distance.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captain of the leading squadron commands, *Forward*—*trot* (omitting *forward* if the column be in motion). He repeats the command MARCH, and takes post at the centre of the squadron.

Each captain, in succession, gives the same commands, when the squadron which precedes him has got the distance of five platoon fronts.

446.—If the close column be trotting, and the colonel's commands are the same, at the second command all but the leading captain command, *walk*, and repeat the command MARCH; they are then governed as in the foregoing paragraph.

If the close column be trotting, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Take squadron distance—Gallop.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the leading captain commands, *gallop*, and repeats the command MARCH. Each, in succession, commands, *gallop*—MARCH, when the squadron before him has got its distance.

447.—The regiment being in line, to form it in close column, faced to the right, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons right wheel—form close column.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captains command, *right wheel—trot.*

At the third command, (repeated, of course, under the rule,) all the squadrons wheel to the right.

The wheels being nearly completed, the captain of the 1st squadron commands: 1. HALT; and being at the left of the squadron, 2. DRESS; 3. FRONT.

The captains of the other squadrons command, FORWARD; and at platoon distance from the squadron which precedes and has halted: 1. HALT; 2. DRESS; 3. FRONT.

The formation of the close column, to face to the left, is executed on the same principles, by inverse commands and means.

The regiment marching in line, the colonel gives the same commands. After the first squadron has completed its wheel, its captain commands, *walk—MARCH.* The captains of the other squadrons command, *walk—MARCH,* when they have reached platoon distance.

448.—The regiment being in line, close column is formed without changing front, on the right, left, or a central squadron.

The colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *On right squadron—close column.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captain of the right squadron moves to the left of his squadron, and, if necessary, corrects its dressing.

The captains of the other squadrons command: 1. *Tours right—Column half-right;* 2. *Trot.* At the command MARCH, all their squadrons execute the movement as in the school of the squadron. The second squadron turns more than *half-right;* the commander

of its first platoon, at the head of the column, conducts it so as to turn, without command from the captain, behind and parallel to the first squadron, at a point 10 yards in rear of its left guide; (or a little outside of it.) The captain halts at this point, and when the rear of his column is opposite, he commands: 1. *Left into line wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. DRESS; 4. FRONT. The left guide being immediately behind that of the first squadron, at platoon distance.

All the other squadrons are conducted over the nearest lines, each to turn or pass at the same distance behind the left of the preceding one, the captains conforming to what is prescribed for the second squadron.

The captains direct the columns. If one judges his passing too far to the rear, he commands: *Column—half-left*. The column is always formed in rear of the right.

449.—To form close column on the left squadron, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention*.
2. *On left squadron—close column*.
3. MARCH.

It is executed on the same principles, by inverse means and commands. The column is always formed in rear of the left squadron.

450.—The regiment being in line, to form close column on a central squadron the colonel commands:

1. *Attention*.
2. *On fifth (or other) squadron—close column*.
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captain of the fifth squadron takes post on its left.

The captains of the right squadrons command: 1. *Fours left—Column half-right—Trot*.

The captains of the left squadrons command: 1. *Fours right*--*Column half-right*--*Trot*.

At the command MARCH, the movement commences on both flanks. The chief of platoon at the head of the fourth squadron conducts it so as to turn in front of the right of the fifth squadron, or, at a point a little outside, into a direction parallel with it, and so as to pass about three paces from the heads of its officers' horses. The captain marches at the head of the column, and, when it reaches the flank of the fifth squadron, he commands: 1. *Right into line wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. DRESS; 4. FRONT; correcting, if necessary, his left guide to platoon distance in front of the one behind him.

The other squadrons on the right are conducted over the nearest lines, turn, and pass at an equal distance in front of the preceding one, the captains conforming to what is prescribed for the fourth squadron. If necessary, they all command: *Column half-left*, to enter the column at the right distance.

The left squadrons are conducted and placed in rear of the fifth, by the same commands and means prescribed for the left squadrons, No. 448.

The right squadrons always go in front, no matter the order in which they stood.

451.—The regiment marching in line, to form close column without changing front and without halting, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention*.
2. *On right (or left) squadron--close column*.
3. MARCH.

The named squadron continues to walk. (If the line is trotting, its captain commands, *walk--MARCH*.)

The captains of the other squadrons command, at the second command, 1. *Fours--Right*; 2. *Trot*; (omitting the second command if the line is trotting) and repeat, 3. MARCH.

Each captain halts directly in rear of the left of the first squadron, and commands: *Fours--LEFT*, when the rear of his column reaches him.

The squadrons then marching to close distance, each captain commands: 1. *Walk*; 2. *MARCH*; when his squadron arrives at platoon distance from the one which precedes him.

To form the close column on the left squadron, the principle is the same; the commands and means inverse.

### TO MARCH IN A COLUMN OF SQUADRONS AND IN CLOSE COLUMN, AND TO CHANGE THEIR DIRECTIONS.

452.—The principles of the direct march of the squadron in line, No. 380, are applicable to the regiment in column of squadrons or close column. If the colonel do not himself, or by the adjutant—the field officer at the head of the column will, if necessary, give direction to the leading guide, and observe the correct march of the next one.

453.—To put either column in march the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Forward.*
3. *MARCH.*

If the colonel wishes the guide centre, he commands: 3. *Guide—centre*; 4. *MARCH.*

454.—To change the direction of the march of the column of squadrons, or the close column, the colonel commands:

*Column left, (or right.)*

The captain of the leading squadron immediately commands: *Left (or right)—TURN*; and when the wheel is nearly completed, *FORWARD*.

Each captain, in succession, gives the command to turn on the same ground; and *FORWARD*, when his turn is nearly complete.

In the column of squadrons, the regimental marker instantly places himself facing, and his horse's head one pace from, the pivot flank, to mark the point of turning for each squadron.

Each squadron performs its wheel in the manner prescribed for the squadron, No. 396.

455.—The regiment being in close column, to change direction by a flank movement, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Change direction by the right (or left) flank.*
3. *MARCH.*

At the second command, the captain of the leading squadron commands: *Fours right—column left, (or half left)—trot.* The captains of the other squadrons command: *fours right—column half left—trot.*

At the command *MARCH*, the movement commences throughout.

The squadron in front turns parallel with the new front, at whatever angle, which has been established by the colonel's direction.

The other squadrons conducted by their captains, move by the shortest line to the point at which they should enter the column.

All the captains halt at these points, where the left flanks of their squadrons shall rest—in a line with the left guide leading squadron, and the regimental marker—and, in succession as the rear of the columns reach them, command: 1. *Left into line wheel*; 2. *MARCH*; 3. *Left—DRESS*; 4. *FRONT.*

The chiefs of leading platoons command a second turn, if necessary.

The change of direction by the left flank is executed by the same principles, by inverse means.

456 --To change the direction of a close column, or a column of squadrons to face to the rear, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Countermarch by the right (or left) flank.*
3. MARCH.

The countermarch is executed at the same time in each squadron, as prescribed, No. 386; the captains adding *trot*, to the second command.

The column of squadrons may be wheeled about, by squadron, or by platoons.

457.—The regiment marching in column of squadrons, or close column, to gain ground to one of the flanks, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Fours*--RIGHT, (OR LEFT.)

If the column is at a halt, the colonel adds:

3. MARCH.

These movements are executed throughout as in the squadron; but the chiefs of the leading platoons march by the *side* of the leading set of fours, and preserve distances and alignment with the squadron that was in front.

458.--The regiment marching in column of squadrons, or close column, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Right (or left) oblique.*
3. MARCH.

Which is executed throughout, as in squadron, No. 397. To resume the first direction, the colonel commands:

#### FORWARD.

459.—The regiment being in close column, to gain ground to the rear, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Fours—Left about, (or right about.)*
3. MARCH.

Which is executed throughout as prescribed for the squadron, No. 399.

#### TO FORM A DOUBLE COLUMN—ITS MARCH, AND CHANGE OF DIRECTION.

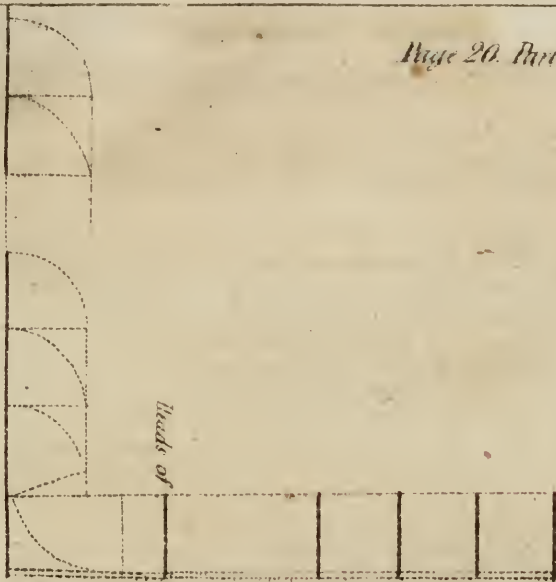
460.—The regiment being in line, double column is formed on the left platoon of the right, and right platoon of the left centre squadrons; if the number of squadrons be uneven, it is formed in the same manner on the centre, and next squadron to its left.

To advance in double column, the colonel commands:

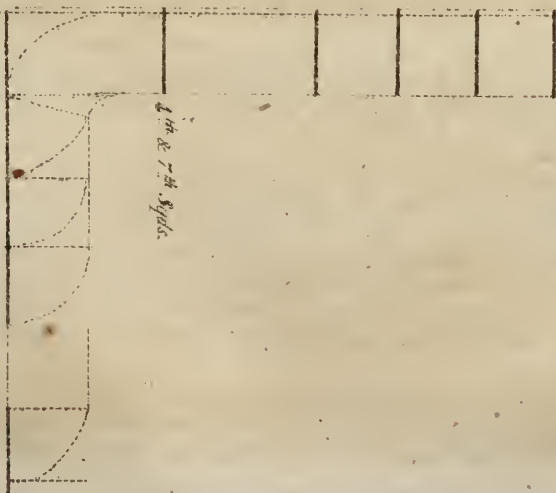
1. *Attention.*
2. *Advance in double column.*
3. MARCH.
4. *Guide right, (or left.)*

At the second command, the captain of the right centre squadron commands: *Platoons left wheel—left platoon forward.*

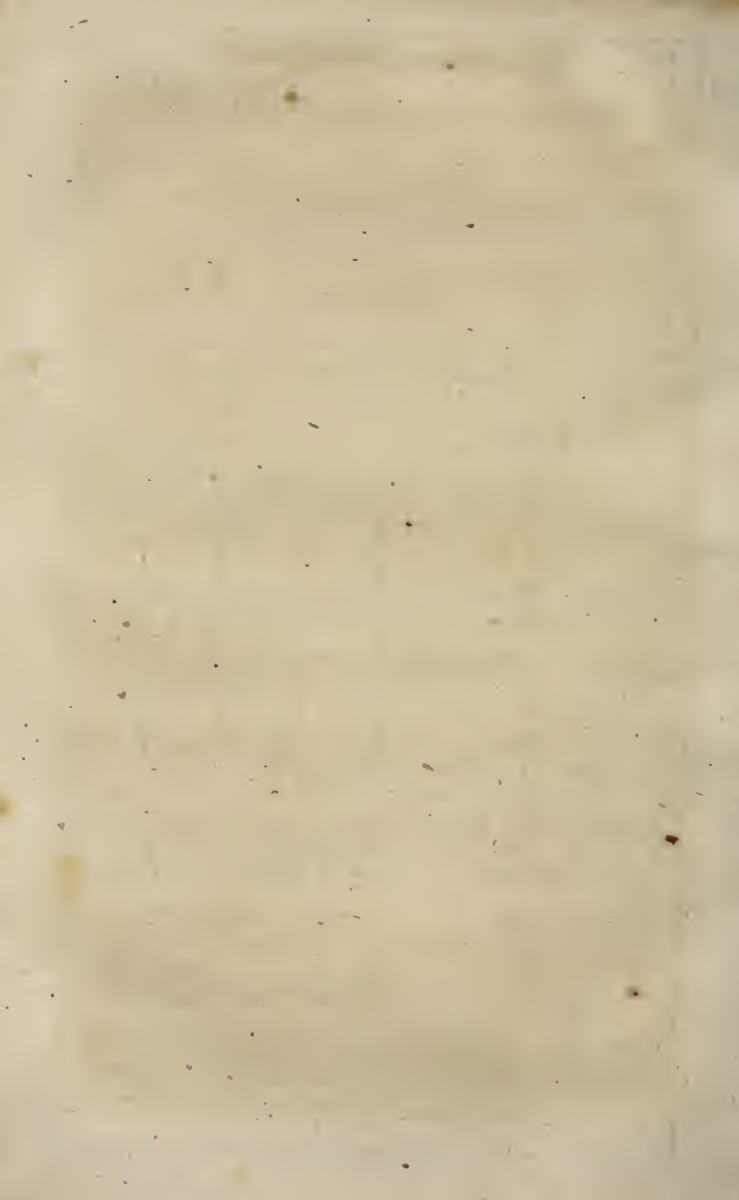




Heads of



1<sup>st</sup> & 7<sup>th</sup> Spds.



The captains to his right command: *Platoons left wheel.*

The captains of the left centre squadron commands: *Platoons right wheel—right platoon forward.*

The captains to his left command: *Platoons—right wheel.*

At the command MARCH, the movement begins throughout; the chief of the platoon next to the left of the right centre squadron commands *right—TURN*, when the flank of his platoon would have three paces to march to complete its wheel; in turning it gains three paces, which brings its right flank on the line of march of that of the left platoon; the next to the right platoon of the left centre squadron is conducted on the same principles, by inverse means; the other platoons of each squadron turn on the same ground as these platoons.

The captains of the squadrons to the right and left, when the wheels by platoon are completed, command FORWARD; and all, in succession, command the *turn* to the front, on the same ground that the rear platoons of the central squadrons have turned on; and their squadrons follow them in open column, with the prescribed distance.

The guide being commanded *right*, it is so in each column; the right squadron guides of the left column, on the right of the leading platoons, approach to within 10 paces of the left squadron guides of the right column, who are on the left of the leading platoons. This gives an interval of platoon front between the flanks of the other platoons; all the guides of the left column preserve the intervals from the right column, and align themselves on the corresponding platoons. If the guide be *left*, interval and alignment is regulated on the platoons of the left column. The chief of the leading platoon on the side of the guide regulates the gait.

461.—The double column is advantageous for the formation *front into line* more prompt than in the single open column; and also to the *rear*, to the *right* or *left*,

in a single line, or in two lines, or in echelon; it is therefore especially safe for the passage of defiles to the front, where the enemy's dispositions are unknown. If the defile is too narrow, the interval can be reduced to one pace, and the column reduced to fronts of fours and twos.

462.—The regiment marching in double column, to reduce the front to a double column of fours, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *By fours.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captains of the left column command: *By fours—trot*; the captains of the right column command: *By the left—by fours—trot.*

At the command MARCH, the movement is executed in each squadron as prescribed in the school of the squadron.

To reduce the front to columns of twos, and to reform them in fours and platoons, is executed in each column, as prescribed for the single column.

463.—The double column marching, to change direction, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Column right (or left); half-right, (or half-left.)*

The second command being repeated *only* by the senior captain of the leading squadrons, the senior chief of front platoons commands: 1. *Right—TURN*; 2. *FORWARD*; and so with the subdivisions throughout. The pivot describes a quarter circle of 12 yards; the inner flank of the outer platoon continues to march at the same gait; all preserve intervals from the pivot, and alignment by the wheeling flank.

464.—The regiment being in double column halted or marching, it is faced and marched in the opposite direction by the same commands, and in the same manner as the open column, No. 440. But the colonel commands the guide anew; and if the columns are of unequal length, he commands *guide left*, (on the outer flank of the longest column,) and the column remains as it wheeled about.

465.—The double column marching gains ground to one of its flanks, and gains ground to the right or left without changing front, by the same commands and means as in the open column, Nos. 441 and 442.

TO PASS FROM A COLUMN OF TWOS TO A COLUMN OF FOURS, TO AN OPEN COLUMN, AND TO A COLUMN OF SQUADRONS, AND A CLOSE COLUMN.

466.—The regiment, marching in a column of twos, to pass to a column of fours, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Form fours.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captain of the leading squadron commands: *Form fours—trot.*

The other captains commands: *Trot.*

At the third command, the leading squadron executes the formation as prescribed, No. 356; that squadron being formed, the captain of the next squadron commands: 1. *Form fours*; 2. MARCH; which is executed as prescribed, No. 352. And so each captain in succession.

If the column is trotting, and the colonel wishes to form fours by galloping, his second command is, *form fours—gallop*; and it is done on the same principles.

467.—The column of twos trotting; the colonel gives the same commands, No. 466.

The second and third commands are repeated immediately by the captain of the leading squadron, and by each of the others; in succession, when the squadron preceding him is formed. It is executed in each squadron as prescribed, No. 352.

468.—The regiment, marching in a column of fours, to pass to a column of platoons, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Form platoons.*
3. MARCH.

All the captains, in repeating the second command, add, *trot.*

At the command MARCH, it is executed in each platoon and squadron throughout the regiment, as prescribed, No. 357.

The intervals between the squadrons remain correct. (Tit. I, Art. II.)

The column of fours marching at the *trot*, unless the command indicate the *gallop*, the colonel gives the same commands. They are repeated and executed in each squadron as prescribed, No. 352.

469.—The regiment being in open column, halted or marching at a *walk*, to form an open column of squadrons the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Form squadrons—left (or right.)*
3. MARCH.

The captains, in repeating the second command, add, *trot.*

At the third command, each squadron is formed as in the school of the squadron, No. 402.

If the column is trotting, to make the formation in doubling the gait, the colonel adds, *gallop*, to the second command, and the movement is executed on the same principles.

The open column trotting, if the colonel give the commands without indicating the gait, they are repeated by the captains without addition; the squadrons are formed throughout at the same time, as prescribed, No. 403.

470.—The regiment being in open column, to form close column the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Form close column—left (or right.)*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, all the captains command, *form squadron—left—trot.*

At the command MARCH, the squadrons are all formed as in the school of the squadron; the captains of all but the leading squadron command: 1. *Forward—trot*, in time to add, 2. MARCH, so that their rearmost platoon shall not halt. On reaching, in succession, platoon distance, they command: 1. HALT; 2. DRESS; 3. FRONT.

The open column marching at a walk, the colonel's commands and the captains' first commands are the same as above; the squadrons being formed, the captains of all but the one leading command, *trot—MARCH*, just before their last platoons should be commanded to walk; and reaching their distance, each, in succession, *walk—MARCH.*

The open column marching at a trot, and the colonel commands: 2. *Form close column—left (or right);* 3. MARCH. All the captains' commands are the same.

At the command MARCH, all the squadrons are formed as prescribed, No. 352, and then all but the leading captain commands, *trot—MARCH*; and on reaching their distance, *walk—MARCH*, as above.

TO PASS FROM A COLUMN OF SQUADRONS AND  
A CLOSE COLUMN, TO AN OPEN COLUMN,  
AND A COLUMN OF FOURS AND TWOS.

471.—The regiment being in column of squadrons halted or marching, to diminish the front of the column the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *By platoon* (or *by the left—by platoon*).
3. MARCH.

In repeating the second command, each captain adds *trot*.

At the command MARCH, the movement is executed throughout as in the squadron.

If the colonel adds, *walk*, to the second command, the captains command *by platoon*.

If the column be trotting, and the colonel adds *gallop*, to his second command, it is repeated by the captains, and the movement is executed on the same principle.

If the column be trotting and the colonel gives the same commands, they are repeated by the captains, without addition, and the movement is executed as in No. 402.

472.—The regiment being in a close column, to march by platoons, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *By platoon*, (or *By the left—by platoon*.)
3. MARCH.

The second and third commands are repeated by the captain of the leading squadron, adding *trot* to the second.

The captains of the other squadrons repeat them with the same addition, in succession, giving the command



**MARCH**, when the last platoon of the preceding squadron has obliqued about two platoon fronts, so as to take its place in column at proper distance. If the colonel adds *walk* to the second command, the captains command *by platoon*.

If the column be marching at the walk, the commands of the colonel and captains are the same, and are executed as prescribed for the squadron, the captains giving the command of execution when the last platoon of the preceding squadron has *increased its distance* about two platoon fronts.

If the column be trotting, the movement in doubling the gait is made on the same principle.

But if, the column trotting, the colonel gives the same commands as above, the second and third commands are repeated by the captain of the leading squadron; the other captains, at the second command of the colonel, command *walk*, and repeat the command **MARCH**. They then, in succession, command: 1. *By platoons—trot*; 2. **MARCH**, as above.

473.—The regiment being in open column, halted or marching, to reduce the front the colonel commands:

1. *Attention*.
2. *By fours* (or *by the left—by fours*).
3. **MARCH**.

At the second command, each captain commands, *by fours—trot*.

At the third command, the movement is executed in each squadron at the same time, as in the school of the squadron.

If the colonel add *walk* to his second command, the captains command, *by fours*.

If the command be trotting, the movement in doubling the gait is made on the same principle; but if the colonel give the same commands, the captains repeat them, and the movement is executed throughout as in squadron.

474.—The regiment, marching in column of fours, to reduce its front the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *By twos* (or *by the left—by twos*).
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captain of the leading squadron commands, *by twos—trot*; and he repeats the third command.

The other captains give the same commands in succession, when the rear of the preceding squadron begins to trot.

If the colonel adds *walk* to his second command, the leading captain commands, *by twos*; the others command, HALT, and break in succession when the rear of the preceding squadron moves.

If the column be trotting, the movement in doubling the gait is made on the same principle; but if the gait is not indicated, the captains do not add *trot* to the colonel's second command; and the other captains command *walk*, and they afterwards conform to the above.

475.—If the necessity arise, the column is reduced to the *file*; it is done on the same principles as the foregoing, and the same commands, substituting *file* for "twos." And it is reformed *by twos*, on the same principles, of No. 466, and following.

## ARTICLE SECOND.

## FORMATION OF LINE FROM THE DIFFERENT COLUMNS.

TO FORM LINE FROM THE COLUMN OF FOURS, AND OPEN COLUMN, FACED TO THE FRONT, OBLIQUELY, TO THE LEFT, RIGHT, AND REAR.

476.—The regiment being in column of fours, or open column, halted or marching, to form line to the front and left, or front and right, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Left—front into line; or, right—front into line.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captain of the leading squadron commands: *Left (or right)—front into line—trot.*

The other captains command: *Forward, (if halted)—column half-left (or right)—trot.*

At the command MARCH, the leading squadron conforms to the school of the squadron.

The captains of the other squadrons, in repeating the third command, add, *Guide right (or left);* and each directs the diagonal march of his column so as to pass about 30 yards more than the depth of the column in rear of the point where its right (or left) will rest in line.

At these points they command: *Column half-right (or left);* and then *left (or right)—front into line,* in time to command MARCH, when the head of the column is 30 yards in rear of its place in line.

If the colonel adds *walk* to the second command, or if the column is at the trot, the captains do not add "trot" to their commands, as in the foregoing paragraph. If the colonel commands *gallop*, it is repeated in their commands.

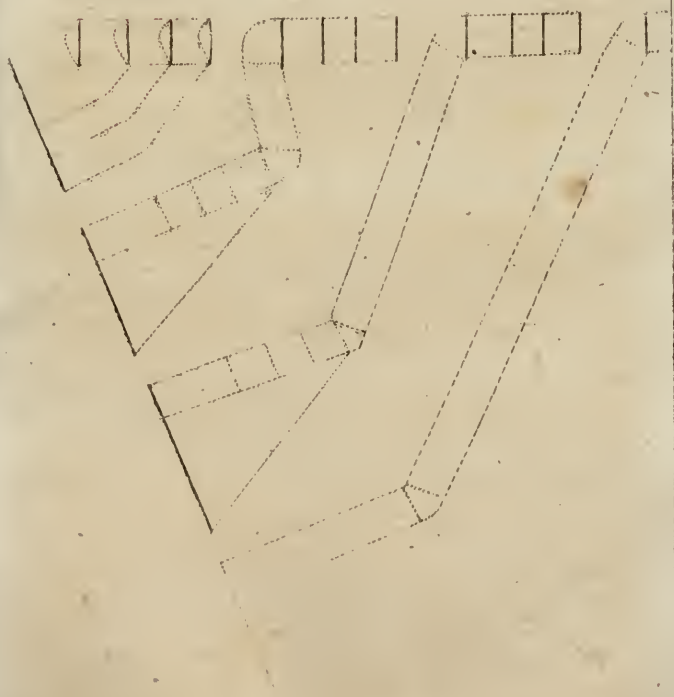
When the regiment is in column of fours, right in front, to form *right--front into line*, the colonel first forms platoons; the same when left is in front, to form *left--front into line*.

If the colonel desire to form a line of squadron columns, he commands: 2. *Left (or right)--front into line of columns*; the leading squadron moves forward 30 paces and halts; the other captains, proceeding as above, direct the heads of columns their depth in rear of their positions in line, turn *half-right*, and halt on the line.

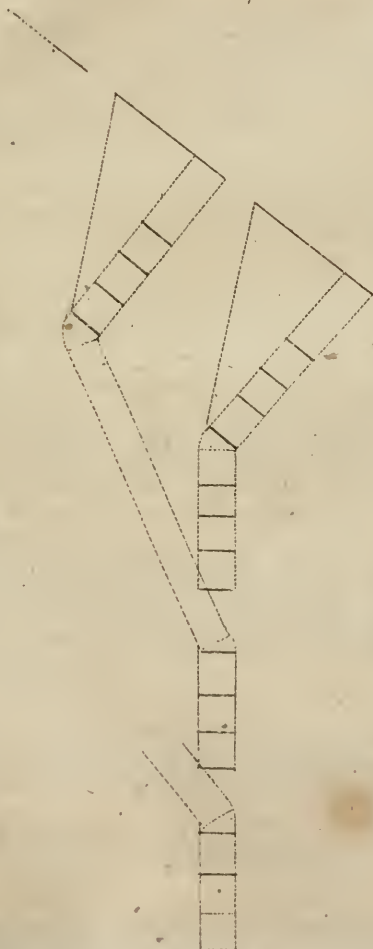
477.—The line may be formed obliquely. When to the left front, the left may be back or forward forty-five degrees, or better, any less angle. When the colonel wishes the line back, he himself, or by a field officer, or the adjutant, commands to the leading squadron, in column of platoons: 1. *Platoons--left wheel*; 2. MARCH; and when the leading platoon has the required obliquity, commands, HALT. If in column of fours: 1. *Fours--left*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT.

The commands are then given as in No. 476; adding to the second command, if the obliquity be great, *left back*; the leading platoon, or set of fours, marches *straight* forward, and the squadron is formed at the same angle; the other squadrons make their first turn greater; and if the left be *far back*, may form line without a second turn.

478.—If the colonel wish to throw the left forward, a large angle beyond the perpendicular line to the direction of his column, he first causes the leading squadron to march and turn its depth perpendicular to the desired line; he adds to the second command, the obliquity being so great, *left forward*. The squadrons in this case











make a less turn than in the square formation, and all make a second turn.

To form obliquely to the *right-front*, is done on the same principles, and inverse means.

In these cases, if the column be marching, the colonel indicates to the captain to take, while in motion, the necessary obliquity for his position.

479.---The regiment being in column of fours, or open column, halted or marching, to form line on either flank, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Left (or right) into line wheel.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, each captain commands: *Left (or right) into line wheel---trot*, (omitting *trot* in the column of fours.) The wheels being near completion, they command: *Right, (or left)---DRESS.* (In this case the captains do not command *FRONT.*) When the lieutenant colonel or adjutant commands *FRONT*, they turn about to the front.

If the column of fours right in front, the colonel forms line by wheeling fours to the right, only in emergency; the same as to forming the line to the left, left in front. In either case he accomplishes his object best by first forming platoons.

480.---The regiment marching in column of fours, or open column, to form line to the right or left, beyond the head of the column, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *On right (or left) into line.*
3. MARCH.

The captain of the leading squadron adds *trot*, to the second command.

The other captains command *trot*.

At the command MARCH, the leading squadron forms line as in the school of the squadron.

The other captains, if the guide is not there already, announce him on the flank next to the new line, and proceed to the heads of their squadrons.

They command, in succession: 1. *On right (or left) into line*; 2. MARCH, when the head of the squadron arrives at the point where it should turn to form the line.

481.----When the regiment is in a column of *fours* right in front, to form *on left into line*, the colonel first forms platoons; the same left in front, before forming *on right into line*.

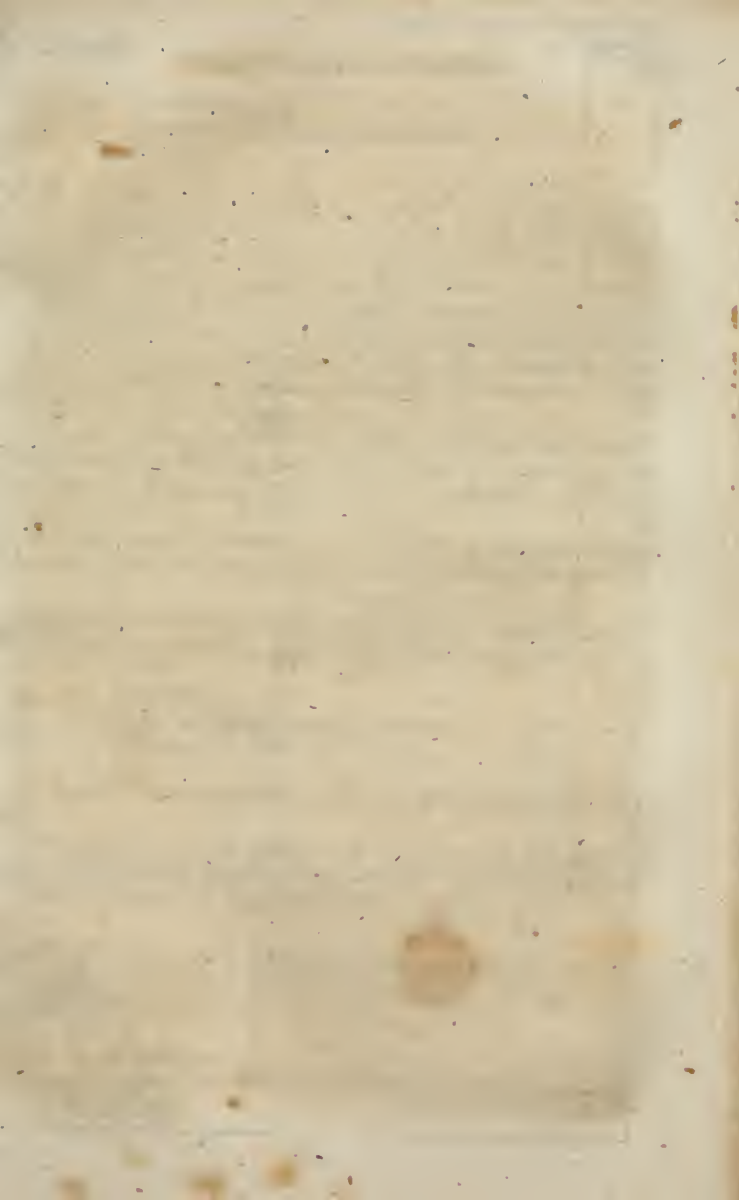
482.----The colonel may vary the direction of the line considerably to the right or left; the captains change the direction of their columns to the necessary degree as they pass the right (or left) of the line, without orders.

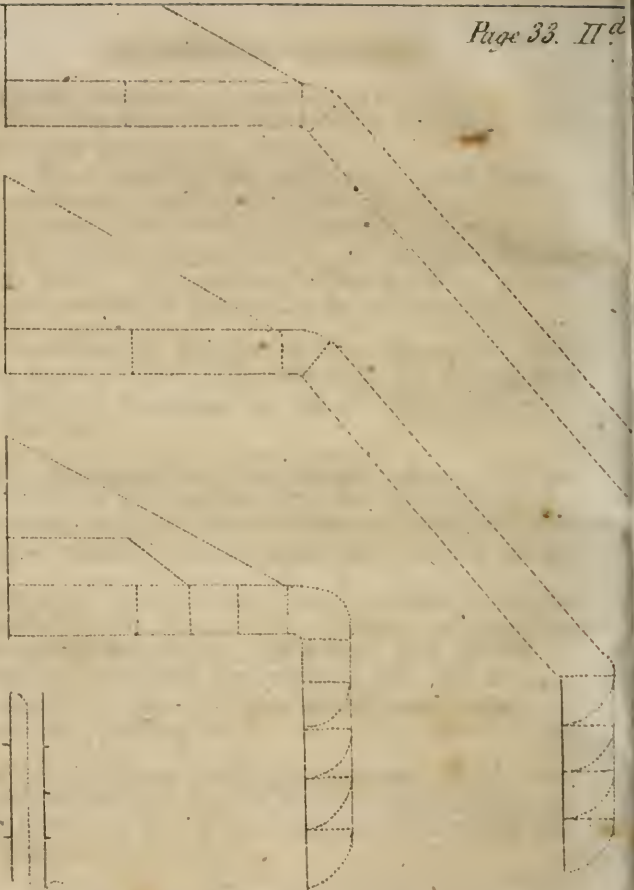
483.----The regiment being in open column, or column of fours to form line faced to the right-rear, or left-rear, on the rear of the column, the colonel first wheels by platoons or fours about, Nos. 440 and 433, and immediately commands as in No. 476; he governs himself by the numbers following it.

484.----The regiment being in open column, to form line faced to the rear, on the head of the column, the colonel first forms line to the front; and then wheels platoons about.

#### TO FORM LINE FROM A COLUMN OF SQUADRONS, (OR COLUMN OF ATTACK,) FACED TO THE FRONT, LEFT, RIGHT, AND REAR.

485.----The regiment marching, or at a halt, in column of squadrons is to form line to the front, the colonel commands:





1. *Attention.*
2. *Left (or right) front into line.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captain of the leading squadron commands, (if at a halt,) *forward*, and repeats the third command; he marches thirty paces and commands: 1. HALT; 2. *Right, (or left) Dress*; 3. FRONT.

The captains of the other squadrons command, *left (or right) wheel—TROT*; they repeat the third command; and having made a half wheel (45 degrees) command FORWARD; and if the guide is not already on the side of formation, command it there.

As each squadron arrives with its advanced flank opposite its place in line, each captain in succession commands: 1. *Right, (or left) Wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. HALT; 5. DRESS; 6. FRONT.

If the nature of the ground prevent this evolution, the colonel would form close column, and deploy it.

486.—The regiment being in column of squadrons, to form line to the left or right, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Left (or right) into line wheel.*
3. MARCH.

The captains in repeating the second command, add *trot*.

The wheels are executed as in the school of the squadron; being at the point of completion the captains command: 1. HALT; 2. *Right (or left)—Dress*.

487.—The regiment being in column of squadrons to form line, on the rear of the column, faced to the rear, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Left---rear into line, (or Right---rear into line.)*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captain of the rear squadron commands, *countermarch by the right (or left) flank* ---trot.

The captains of the other squadrons command, *platoons left (or right) wheel---trot---column half left, (or right.)*

Except that the captain of the squadron next to the rear, omits *column half left (or right,)* his squadron marches 10 yards and makes a full turn.

At the command MARCH, the movement commences throughout; when the wheels are near completion, the captains command: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left*, (guide next to the side of formation; the chiefs of the leading platoons at the command FORWARD, commanding *left--TURN*; and FORWARD, when the half wheel is complete.) Each of these squadrons then conforms to what is prescribed for forming *right (or left) front into line.*, No. 476.

488.--The regiment being in column of squadrons to form line faced to the rear, on the *head* of the column, the colonel first forms line to the *left front* or *right front*. No. 484, and then wheels about by squadron, or platoon.

In all cases of the formation of line faced to the rear, on the head of the column, if there be occasion for the squadrons to face promptly to the new front, the colonel directs the captain of the leading squadron, who wheels about as soon as the first platoon of the next squadron is halted on the line; it is then the duty of the other captains to do the same in succession, without any further order or intimation.

489.--In forming front or rear, into line from the column of squadrons, or open column, in a regiment of ten squadrons, if the colonel adds, *of battle*, to the second command, the second line, of squadron columns, formed on the head of the seventh squadron from the front, in the same manner that the leading squadrons are formed. In all similar cases in the eight squadron regiment, the two squadrons at the rear march over the most direct lines to cover the flanks; the foremost one, always to the flank first formed.

TO FORM LINE FROM CLOSE COLUMN, FACED TO THE FRONT, OBLIQUELY, LEFT, RIGHT, AND REAR.

490.—The regiment being in close column, to form line faced to the front, on, and to the right of, the leading squadron, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Deploy to the right.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captain of the leading squadron commands: 1. *Left*—DRESS; 2. FRONT; the squadron is dressed on the markers.

The captains of the other squadrons command, *fours right—trot.*

At the command MARCH, all the rear squadrons wheel by fours to the right, and march forward at the *trot*; the captains halt personally in rear of the point where the left of their squadrons will rest in line; and when the rear of their columns reaches them, command, in succession; 1. *Fours*—LEFT; 2. *Guide left*; and on arriving, the horses' heads on a line with the croups of the next squadron, 1. HALT; 2. DRESS; 3. FRONT. At the command HALT, the chiefs of platoons continue on, to align themselves.

The close column is deployed on, and to the left of, the leading squadron on the same principles, and by inverse means at the command: 2. *Deploy to the left.*

491.—The regiment marching in close column to form line on, and to the right of, the leading squadron without halting, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Deploy to the right.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captain of the leading squadron proceeds to the centre of the squadron, and if the column is at the trot, commands, *walk; guide right;* (if he commands *walk*, he repeats the 3d command.)

At the second command, the captains of the other squadrons command, *fours right--trot;* (omitting *trot* if the column be trotting; and they repeat the command MARCH.)

When their squadrons are opposite their places, they command, in succession: 1. *Fours--LEFT;* 2. *Guide left;* and when in line, *walk--MARCH;* when the central squadron reaches the line, the colonel commands: *Regulate by central squadron.*

The captains command the guide accordingly, (No. 527.)

The regiment marching in close columns, line is formed on, and to the left of the leading squadron on the same principle and by inverse means; at the commands: 2. *Deploy to the left.* 3. MARCH.

492.—The regiment being in close column, to deploy it on one of the central squadrons, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Deploy on fifth squadron.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captains of squadrons in front command, *Fours right--trot;*

Those of squadrons in the rear of the fifth, *Fours left--trot;*

The captain of the fifth squadron, *Forward, guide centre--trot.*

At the command MARCH, the movement of the front and rear squadrons commences; the left guide of the fifth proceeds to place himself opposite the sergeant major, who has been posted to mark the line, 12 paces in front of the leading squadron. The captain of the fifth commands MARCH, when his squadron is unmasked.



The captain of the next squadron in front, and the others in his front, in succession, and on the same principles, at the moment the rear of his squadron has gained squadron interval from the right flank of the fifth squadron, commands: 1. *Fours* LEFT; 2. HALT; and 1. *Forward—trot*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide left*, the moment his squadron is unmasked; and on arriving at the line, 1. HALT; 2. DRESS; 3. FRONT. But the squadron in front, not being masked, marches immediately forward, after its flank movement.

The squadrons in rear of the fifth squadron conform to No. 490.

The squadrons in front always go to the right.

493.—The regiment being in close column, to form line obliquely to its front, the angle being 45 degrees or less, by deploying on a central squadron, or to the right or left of the column, the colonel first commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons right (or left) wheel.*
3. MARCH.
4. HALT.

The deployment is then commanded, and executed by the same commands, and in the same manner, as in paragraphs 490 and 492.

494.—The regiment being in close column, to form line on the left flank, faced to the left, or right flank, faced to the right, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *On rear squadron—left (or right) into line.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captain of the rear squadron commands: *Left into line wheel—trot.*

The other captains command, *Forward—trot.*

At the command MARCH, the rear squadron makes its wheel, and the captain commands: 1. HALT; 2. *Left—*

DRESS; 3. FRONT. The markers are so placed that the squadron shall dress forward three paces.

The other squadrons marching forward are wheeled into line in the same manner, as they successively gain their distance for the proper interval, which will be when the next squadron in rear has made about two-thirds of its wheel.

When the close column is marching the formation is made in the same manner, except that the captains of the squadrons that continue to march do not command forward.

495.—The regiment marching in close column, to form line to the right, beyond the head of the column, the colonel commands:

1. Attention.
2. On right into line.
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captain of the leading squadron commands *trot*.

Immediately after repeating the command MARCH, he commands: 1. *Right*—TURN; 2. FORWARD; and having marched forward 20 paces, 1. HALT; 2. *Right*—DRESS; 3. FRONT.

At the command MARCH, all the other captains command the guide on the side of the formation, if not already there. When the leading squadron has made about one-third of its turn, the captain of the next squadron commands: *Trot*—MARCH; and each of the others, in succession, give the same command when the squadron in his front has increased its distance by six paces; each captain, in succession, when the heads of his squadron horses are as far advanced as the farthest flank of the squadron last formed in line, commands: *Right*—TURN; and then, 1. FORWARD; 2. HALT; 3. DRESS.

If the column be *trotting*, at the second command the captain of the leading squadron commands *right*; the other captains, *walk*; at the command MARCH, the lead-

ing captain commands *TURN*; the others, in repeating *MARCH*, add the command for the guide, if necessary. All then proceed as above described.

When the guide has to be changed, the captains proceed, in succession, to the front of the centre of their squadrons, to command the increased gait, and remain there.

The regiment marching in close column, to form line to the left, beyond the head of the column, is executed on the same principles by inverse means and commands.

The regiment marching in column of squadrons, line is formed to the right or left, at the same commands of the colonel; at the second, the leading captain commands *right* (or *left*;) the others, *trot*; at the third command, which they repeat, the leading captain commands *TURN*; then all proceed as prescribed above after their distance is increased. If the column be trotting, it is the same, but with the omission of the command *trot*.

496.--The regiment being in close column, to form a line faced to the rear, the colonel countermarches the column, and then deploys.

The countermarch is a dangerous evolution if exposed to the possibility of being attacked by cavalry during its progress. It would be safer to wheel about by platoons; in so doing the squadron guides are governed by No. 400.

497.--The regiment marching in close column, to form a line of squadron columns, faced to either flank, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *On rear squadron—by platoon left, (or right) into line of columns.*
3. *MARCH.*

At the second command, the captain of the rear squadron commands: *Platoons left wheel—trot*; after its exe-

cution, he commands: FORWARD; and having marched 20 paces, HALT.

The other captains, in succession as they gain squadron interval, perform the same movement as the captain in rear.

The evolution may be executed by *fours* on the same principles; the colonel substitutes, in his command, the word *fours* for *platoon*.

498.—Cavalry should never surrender. If overpowered or surrounded it can cut its way by charging at full speed, in close column.

A close column, which may chance to be suddenly attacked in flank, may defend itself by instantly wheeling and advancing to meet the enemy, the flank platoons of alternate squadrons. It will be understood that the 1st, 3d, and other squadrons with odd numbers are indicated. The commands are:

1. *Right (or left) platoons, alternate squadrons—right (or left) wheel—gallop.*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.

The chiefs of the platoons immediately charge.

According to circumstances, the commander may send to support the charge of these platoons the corresponding platoons of the other squadrons, by the commands:

1. *First (or fourth) platoons—right (or left) wheel gallop.*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.

They advance, with 60 paces distance, and charge if necessary.

TO FORM LINE FROM DOUBLE COLUMN FACED  
TO THE FRONT, RIGHT, LEFT, AND REAR.

499.—The regiment being in double column halted or marching, to form line, faced to the front, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Front into line.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the leading captain of the right column commands: *Right—front into line—trot.* Of the left column, *left—front into line—trot*; and all in each column are governed by what is prescribed in No. 476; but the chiefs of the two leading platoons cause them to oblique slightly, to regain the two paces of reduced interval; the sergeant major is posted in front of the left platoon that led the right column, and faces to the right.

500.—The regiment halted or marching, in double column, to form line through the right flank, faced to the right, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Right into line.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captains of the right columns command: *Right into line wheel—trot.*

The captains of the left column conform to what is prescribed, No. 480.

At the command MARCH, the movements are executed as prescribed in that number, and in No. 479. If the colonel wish to attack immediately with the line formed by the right column, he sends instructions to the field officer; he may charge in echelon, as the squadrons form, or by the wing in line.

Line is formed, through the left flank; faced to the left, on the same principles, by inverse means, at the commands: 2. *Left into line*; 3. MARCH.

501.—The regiment being in double column, halted or marching, to form line in rear of the column, faced to the rear, the colonel first commands *platoons right (or left) about wheel*, MARCH, HALT, OR FORWARD; and then proceeds as in No. 499.

If the left column be short of the other, the leading captain, after wheeling about, at the command, *front into line*, commands, first, *forward*, if at a halt; he forms on the line of the first squadron.

If the colonel wish to form but one column faced to the rear, with the support of a second line, he commands, *right column—platoons right about wheel*, and *left front into line of battle*; or gives inverse commands to the left column; or, instead of adding the words "*of battle*," giving orders to a field officer. The lieutenant colonel or major, as the case may be, immediately puts his column in motion, or continues it in motion, and changes direction to the right or left, to march behind the other wing; and there forms a line of squadron columns, No. 523; in this case, the fifth squadron would cover the left flank, *last formed*, of the first line; and the commander of the second line would order his last squadron, the tenth, to cover its right flank, (getting position by simply wheeling platoons right about.) If the left column be formed into the first line, the inverse would take place; and the sixth squadron line cover its right flank, and the first its left flank.

502.—If the colonel, marching in double column, forms line to the right or left, to attack immediately, he commands, *right (or left) into line of battle*; in which case both columns wheel into line, and the first advancing, the field officer in command of the second retains it, for distance.

503.—The regiment in double column, the colonel may form line of battle with either column while advancing; the field officer with the other column halts it until the first passes, and then commands, *left (or right) front into line*. The colonel commands, *left (or right) column, form line—left (or right)—trot; (or gallop.)* At this command the leading captain commands, *form squadron—trot (or gallop;)* the others, *column half—left (or right)—trot (or gallop;)* and proceed at the command MARCH, as to form *left—front into line*, except that when their heads of squadrons are in line with the leading squadron they command, *form squadron—left, (or right.)*

504.—The regiment in double column, marching or halted, and the colonel desiring to use it as a column of attack, to the front, he commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Form squadrons.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captains command *form squadron—right—trot*, and *form squadron—left—trot*, respectively.

At the command MARCH, each squadron is formed as in the school of the squadron; the captains of the right squadrons command *guide left*; those of the left command *guide right*, and their right guides preserve intervals and align by the right squadrons.

The colonel may add *gallop* to the second command.

The colonel may send a field officer to command the charge of the leading squadrons; the column following with interval of 60 paces between the squadrons that charge and the next.

## TO FORM LINE FROM OPEN COLUMN BY COMBINING TWO OR MORE MOVEMENTS.

505.—The first clause of the colonel's preparatory commands always applies to the leading squadrons,

The regiment marching in open column, a part has changed direction to the right, and the colonel wishes to form line faced to the left of the part that has turned, he halts, or not, at will and commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Left into line and left front into line.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captains, in the new direction, command: *Left into line wheel—trot.*

The captain who commands the leading squadron, not turned, commands: *Left front into line*; the others: *Column half-left—trot.*

At the command MARCH, both movements are executed as prescribed, Nos. 479 and 476.

506.—The open column having turned to the right, and the colonel wishes to form line on the right flank of the part that has turned and faced to the right, he commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Right into line and left front into line.*
3. MARCH.

Each part of the column conforms itself to what has been prescribed for *right into line wheel* and *left front into line*; but the captains of the squadrons that perform the latter movement wheel left about by platoon, as soon as the leading platoon of the next squadron is halted, without orders or intimation. The colonel's command should, if possible, be given just as the last platoon of a squadron is turned in the new direction.

If the colonel commanded *right into line of battle*, the part of the column still marching to the new rear would continue on to form a second line, or flank supports only.

507.—The open column having turned to the left, part only being in the new direction, to form line



through the right flank of that part, and faced to the right, the colonel commands the halt, or not, at will, and then commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Right into line and right front into line.*
3. MARCH.

Which movements are executed as has been prescribed for *right into line wheel* and *right front into line*, by the two parts of the column. The head of the first squadron forming *right front into line* must oblique to the right.

508.—Part of the open column having turned to the left, to form line through the left flank of that part, and faced to the left, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Left into line and right front into line.*
3. MARCH.

Each part of the column conforms to what has been prescribed for *left into line wheel* and *right front into line*; but the captains of the squadrons which perform the latter movement wheel right about by platoon, without waiting for orders, as soon as the leading platoon of the next squadron to form, is halted.

509.—In the four last combined evolutions, the column may have turned at an angle much greater or less than a right angle. The oblique line is formed on the same principles as in Nos. 477 and 478, the colonel omitting "*right (or left) forward*;" and the leading captain of the column, in the original direction, himself, first wheels his platoons to the new angle.

## ARTICLE THIRD.

## THE LINE—ITS CHANGES AND MARCH.

513.—The regiment being in line, to change front to the right or left, 45 degrees or less, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Change front—Left (or right) forward.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command the captain of the right squadron commands: *Right wheel—trot.*

The captains of the other squadrons command: *Forward—Guide right—trot.*

At the command MARCH, the movement commences throughout. The first squadron having wheeled less than 45 degrees, its captain halts it and dresses it on the markers.

As the other squadrons arrive in succession, their right flanks opposite the points they should occupy in line, their captains command: 1. *Right wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; and near the line: 1. HALT; 2. DRESS; 3. FRONT.

To change front to the left is executed on the same principles by inverse commands and means:

514.—The regiment being in line, to change front obliquely on a central squadron, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Change front—on fourth squadron—left (or right) forward.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captain of the fourth squadron commands, *Right wheel—trot*, and he and the

captains to the left conform to what is prescribed for the right and other squadrons in the preceding No. 513.

At the second command, the captains of the right squadrons command, *Fours--right about.*

The fours having wheeled about, and the squadrons marching to the rear, these captains command *Guide right.* As the squadrons, in succession, arrive with their (present) right opposite the point it should occupy in the new line, they command: 1. *Right wheel.* 2. MARCH. 3. FORWARD. And having passed the line: 1. *Fours--Right about.* 2. HALT. 3. DRESS. 4. FRONT.

To change front, right forward, is executed on the same principle by inverse commands and means.

The next squadron to the central in retiring must allow for lessening its interval three paces by wheeling fours about toward the central squadron.

515.—The regiment being in line, to change front to the left or right, 45 degrees or less, by throwing back a flank, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Change front--left (or right) back.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, all the captains command, *Fours--right about.*

When the fours have wheeled about, the captain of the right squadron commands: 1. *Left wheel.* 2. MARCH. 3. FORWARD. 4. *Fours--RIGHT ABOUT.* 5. HALT. 6. *Right--DRESS.* 7. FRONT.

The other captains, when the fours have wheeled about, command *Guide left;* and when, in succession, their squadrons arrive with their (present) left opposite the point it should occupy in the new line, they command: 1. *Left wheel.* 2. MARCH. 3. FORWARD. And having passed the line: 1. *Fours right--ABOUT.* 2. HALT. 3. DRESS. 4. FRONT.

The markers for the right squadron are posted when it has completed its wheel to the rear; the colonel or officer superintending their position, indicates to the captain when to cease wheeling.

To change front, *right back*, is executed on the same principles by inverse means and commands.

516.—To change the front of the regiment in line, at a greater angle to the right, faced to the right or left, or to the left, and faced to the left or right, the colonel wheels the regiment by platoons to the right or left, and then forms *left or right front into line*; then if it is to face to the opposite direction, it is wheeled about by platoons; all of which evolutions have been fully described.

517.—The regiment being in line, to advance in squadron columns, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Forward by platoons.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, each captain commands, *by platoon.*

At the command MARCH, each squadron marches forward in column of platoons, as prescribed in the school of the squadron, except that the captains of squadrons to the right of the squadron of direction, after commanding MARCH, add *guide left*, and those to its left, *guide right*. The central or right centre squadron is the squadron of direction; the chief of its leading platoon regulates the gait; the chief of the next on the left establishes, with him, the base on which the commanders of the leading platoons of all the other squadrons regulate their alignment; the squadron guide on the flank of the leading platoon of the regulating squadron is charged with the direction of the march; this, with the base of the alignment, is superintended by the colonel, or by the adjutant or a field officer, as he may direct. The

squadron guide with the leading platoon of the other squadrons marches on the flank of the leading platoon next toward the regulating squadron; they preserve the intervals under correction of the captains.

If any captain find it necessary to reduce the front of his column, he commands *by fours*; and when the necessity ceases, reforms platoons.

518.—If circumstances render it necessary, the colonel commands :

1. *Attention.*
2. *By fours.*
3. MARCH.

Which is executed throughout as in the school of the squadron, except that each squadron guide with the flank that is leading marches on the flank of its leading set of fours; that of the squadron of direction on its right, the others on the flank next toward the squadron of direction; the march is conducted on the same principles and means as by platoons. To reform platoons, the colonel commands :

1. *Attention.*
2. *Form platoons.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captains command : *Form platoons—trot.*

At the command MARCH, the movement is executed throughout as in the squadron.

519.—The march by the left of squadrons is executed the same as has been prescribed, except in the commands. The colonel commands : 2. *By the left—forward by platoons.* To reduce the front, the colonel's commands are the same; but the captains command : 2. *By the left—by fours.*

520.—To change direction while marching in line of columns, the colonel commands :

1. *Attention.*
2. *Change direction to the right, (or left) and sounds the signal, "to the right," (or "to the left.")*

The pivot squadron halts; as the movement progresses, its leading platoon will slowly wheel on a halted pivot; the other platoons will *turn* at the command FORWARD.

The regulating squadron steadily retains its previous gait, the *walk*, directing its march circularly to the right.

The squadron of the wheeling flank *trots*, so as to preserve alignment with the regulating and pivot squadrons. The leading platoon commanders of these three squadrons raise their sabres; those of the other squadrons align themselves upon them. Intervals are preserved from the side of the pivot by the guides; (which, in the pivot wing of the regiment, during the wheel, will be the non-commissioned officers on that flank of the leading platoons.)

To cease wheeling, the colonel commands FORWARD, and sounds the signal, "forward." The direct march at the *walk* is immediately resumed by all.

521.—The regiment marching in line of columns, to cause it to march to the right, (or left,) the colonel commands :

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons right, (or left.)*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captains command *right*.

At the command MARCH, they command TURN; the chiefs of leading platoons repeating instantly after the captains. Each column turns as prescribed in the school

of the squadron; the regiment is then marching in open column.

522.—If after the command *forward by platoons*, the colonel add *regulate by right* (or *left*,) on the same principle of No. 528, the leading platoon commander of the next squadron, and of the one on the flank, will constitute the base of alignment. The captains will all command the guide toward the flank indicated, and the squadron guides, at the heads of the column, will march on that flank of the platoon.

523.—The regiment marching in open column, or column of fours, to cause it to march to either flank in a line of columns, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons right, (or left.)*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captains command *right*; at the command MARCH, they command TURN; the chiefs of leading platoons repeating after the captains. It is executed throughout as in the school of the squadron; and the line then advances as has been prescribed, Nos. 517 and 518.

524.—To cause the regiment marching in line of columns to gain ground toward the right, (or left,) and front, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons half right, (or left.)*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captains command *right*; at the command MARCH, they command TURN; (both repeated by the chiefs of leading platoons.) The captains command FORWARD, when the leading platoons have made a half turn, (45 degrees.)

During the oblique march, the commanders of the leading platoons are answerable both for alignment and intervals, which are regulated toward the flank to which they oblique; the guides of the leading platoons govern their march so that the centre of the platoons may be one pace behind the commander.

525.—To resume the direct march, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Forward.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captains command *left*; at the command MARCH, they command TURN; and when the columns have turned to the original direction, they command FORWARD.

526.—The regiment, halted or marching, in line of columns, to face, or march to the rear, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Platoons right about wheel.*
3. MARCH.

The captains add to the second command *trot*; the wheels being near completion, they command HALT. If the colonel wishes the regiment to move immediately to the rear, he commands, in time, 4. FORWARD.

Field and staff officers, &c., are posted on the new front, opposite their old places, and the march is governed in all respects by the rules that have been prescribed for the march to the front.

527.—The regiment being in line, to march to the front the colonel commands:



1. *Attention.*
2. *Forward.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, a point of direction is given to the guidon bearer (left guide second platoon) of the squadron of direction, unless otherwise expressed in the words of command; this is always the central, or right centre squadron.

In repeating the second command, the captain of the regulating squadron (if centre) adds, *guide centre*; the captain on its right, adds *guide left*; on its left, *guide right*.

The commander of the second platoon of the regulating squadron gives the gait for the squadron and regiment; the commander of the third, regulating himself on that of the second, is most responsible for the base of alignment, composed of the platoon commanders of this squadron; to mark it, those of the flank platoons of this squadron carry their sabres vertically, the hilt as high as the check, edge to the front, whilst the line continues to advance; this base is carefully superintended by the lieutenant colonel or adjutant.

The squadron guides toward the squadron of direction, preserve the squadron intervals; they regulate their gait, so that the line of troopers shall be one pace behind the platoon commanders, who align themselves upon those of the squadron of direction.

528.—If, after the command FORWARD, the colonel add *regulate by right*, (or *left*,) the captains all command *guide right*, (or *left*;) the principles of the march are the same; but the outer guide of the flank squadron is charged with the direction, and the nearest platoon commander with the gait; the next platoon commander is most answerable for the correctness and steadiness of the base; the flank platoon commanders raise their sabres.

529.—The march in line, especially at rapid gaits, being difficult, as well as of the first importance, the colonel should exercise the regiment at it frequently; all the principles for the direct march of the squadron are applicable.

If at the gallop there should occur an excessive pressure in a squadron, its captain will order a platoon to pull up, and remain in rear until order be restored.

530.—If an obstacle occur before a platoon, its commander conforms to No. 406; if it obstruct the squadron, the captain will break by platoon to the front; if the whole ground be obstructed, the captain obliquely, or wheels by platoon, to the right or left, to pass in rear of one of the next squadrons. He returns to the line when the obstacle is passed.

531.—The regiment marching in line, to halt it, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. HALT.
3. DRESS.

At the third command, the captains command *right* (or *left*) DRESS, as they may be situated, to the left or right of the regulating squadron; its captain, if the guide be central, commands *centre*—DRESS. The lieutenant colonel commands FRONT.

532.—The regiment marching in line, to gain ground to the front and towards a flank, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Platoons left (or right) half wheel.*
3. MARCH.
4. FORWARD.

This movement is executed at the same time in each squadron, as prescribed, No. 398.

533.—To resume the direct march the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Platoons right (or left) half wheel.*
3. MARCH.
4. FORWARD.

Which is executed as in the school of the squadron.

534.—The regiment marching in line, to gain ground towards a flank, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Platoons right (or left) wheel.*
3. MARCH.
4. FORWARD.

To resume the direct march:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Platoons left (or right) wheel.*
3. MARCH.
4. FORWARD.

Which movements are executed as in the school of the squadron.

535.—The regiment being in line, halted or marching, to face or march it to the rear, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Squadrons right (or left) about wheel; or, Pla-} \\ \text{toons right (or left) about wheel.} \end{array} \right.$
3. MARCH.

The captains add to the second command *trot*. The wheels being nearly completed, they command: 1. HALT;

2. *Left*—DRESS.

If the colonel wishes the line to move immediately to

the rear, before the completion of the wheels, he commands:

#### 4. FORWARD.

The movement by platoon is executed in all the squadrons as prescribed, No. 400; wheeling by squadron, they regulate their march on the principle prescribed for the platoons in that number. The captains do not command FRONT. Field and staff officers, &c., are governed by No. 526.

536.—The regiment being in line, to retire to pass another line, or change its position on broken ground, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Retire by fours.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command the captains command: *Fours left; Column left.*

At the command MARCH, it is executed throughout as in the squadron, and the march is conducted as prescribed, No. 518.

To form line of columns, or line, with the original front, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Fours—LEFT ABOUT.*
3. *Form platoons.*
4. MARCH.

Otherwise, the colonel may command:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Left front into line.*
3. MARCH.

And then wheel about by fours.

537.—The regiment marching in line, to change it to a line of columns, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *By platoons.*
3. MARCH.

To reform the line :

1. *Attention.*
2. *Form squadrons—trot.*
3. MARCH.

Which movements are executed as prescribed for the squadron. The colonel may command: 2. *By the left—by platoons.*

538.—To change direction, the regiment marching in line, the colonel first forms a line of columns.

539.—The regiment being in line, to relieve and pass another line in its front, the colonel conforms to what is prescribed, No. 517, if it be not already in line of columns; as it passes the squadron intervals of the first line, the squadron guides of both lines retire behind their adjacent platoons.

The colonel may reduce front to columns of fours; and this must be done if confusion exist in the first line.

---

## ARTICLE FOURTH.

### ECHELONS.

540.—The regiment being in line, to march it forward, keep back one of its wings, and preserve the power of facing in every direction, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons by the right (or left)—forward in echelon.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captain of the right squadron commands *forward—guide right*; at the command MARCH, it moves forward; the captain of the next squadron commands: 1. *Forward—guide right*; 2. MARCH, by the time the squadron on his right has marched the distance of squadron front and interval; the other captains do the same in succession.

To march by the left, the movement is made on the same principles, at the commands: 2. *Squadrons by the left—forward in echelon*; 3. MARCH; the captains command *guide left*.

The regiment being in echelon, by the right, to throw forward the left, is executed on the same principles, at the command *squadrons by the left—forward in echelon*. If marching, the change may be made in doubling the gait.

541.—The regiment marching in echelon, to halt it, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons—HALT.*

To march forward again:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Forward—MARCH.*

542.—The regiment being in echelon, by the right (or left,) to make face in echelon in either case, to either flank, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons left (or right) wheel.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captains command, *left wheel—trot*; at the completion of the wheel, HALT.

If the regiment be marching, all the commands are the same; and if the colonel do not wish the halt, when the wheels are three-fourths executed, he commands FORWARD; to which the captains add, a change of the guide.

543.—The regiment being in echelon by squadrons, if required to act by the rear, is wheeled about by platoon or by squadron at the *trot* or *gallop*.

544.—The regiment being in line, to retire in echelon, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons by the right (or left)—retire in echelon.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captain on the right flank commands  *platoons right about wheel*; he repeats MARCH, and adds *guide left*.

The captain of the next squadron gives the same commands, so that his squadron retires with squadron front and interval distance; and so the others. When the next to the last squadron has retired the prescribed distance, its captain, and all the others which are retiring, command: 1. *Platoons right—ABOUT WHEEL*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT.

To continue the retreat, the colonel commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Squadrons by the left—retire in echelon*; 3. MARCH; which is executed on the same principles by inverse means. The colonel may cause the left and other squadrons to halt and face the front when they arrive on line with the right squadron.

545.—The regiment being in column of squadrons, to form it in echelon, faced to the front, by either flank, the colonel commands;

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons to the right (or left)—in echelon.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captains of all but the squadron in front command, *fours right (or left)—trot.*

Each captain, when his squadron has marched until there is platoon front interval, from its flank to a perpendicular line through the flank of the next in front, commands: 1. *Fours—LEFT (OR RIGHT;)* 2. HALT; 3. *Left (or right)—DRESS;* 4. FRONT.

546.—The regiment being in column of squadrons, halted or marching, to form it in echelon, fronting obliquely to the right or left, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons right (or left) wheel.*
3. MARCH.
4. HALT (OR FORWARD—in echelon.)

At the second command, the captains command, *right wheel—trot.*

The colonel gives his fourth command when the squadrons have wheeled about 55 degrees; (when the flank of each squadron has become unmasked.)

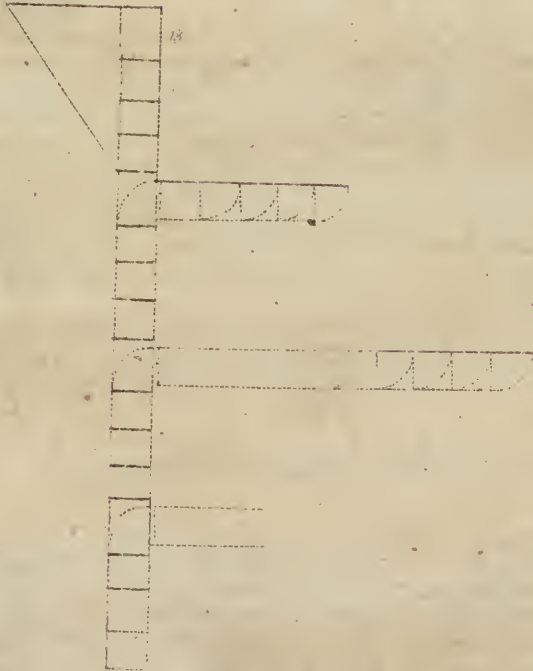
The squadrons carefully regulate their wheel by the one in front; on the march, distance and interval are gradually corrected; they conform to No. 540.

547.—The regiment being in open column, to form it in echelon of squadrons, faced to the same front, by either flank, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons to the right (or left)—in echelon.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captain of the leading squadron commands, *left front into line—trot;* he halts







the leading platoon at 17 paces; the obliquity of march of the others is increased.

The captains of the other squadrons command, *forward—column right—trot*; each of these captains, when the rear of his squadron has reached its interval from the right of the squadron on his left, commands: 1. *Platoons left into line—wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Left—DRESS*; 4. FRONT.

If the echelons are formed to the left, the leading squadron is formed *right front into line*, and the others are conducted inversely to what is prescribed above.

If the open column be marching, the leading captain commands, *form squadron—left*, adding *trot*, unless already trotting; the other captains, *column right—trot*; and each, having marched the proper distance to the right: 1. *Platoons left wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD—*Guide left*; and having reached distance from the next leading squadron, *walk—MARCH*.

549.—The regiment marching in close column, to form it in echelon, faced to the same front, by either flank, without halting, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons to the left (or right)—in echelon.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, all but the leading captain command, *fours—left—trot*.

At the command MARCH, the leading captain commands *guide right*; the others repeat, MARCH; and each, when he has gained the proper interval, commands, 1. *Fours—RIGHT*; 2. *Guide right*; and *Walk—MARCH*; so as to be at his prescribed distance from the line of the squadron to his right. If the close column be trotting, the leading captain commands, *walk—MARCH*; (unless the colonel commanded *gallop*) and the others omit the command *trot*.

The regiment being at a halt in close column, to de-

ploy it instantly in echelon, No. 545 is conformed to; except that at the colonel's third command, the leading squadron marches forward a distance of its front and 4 paces. In advancing, the third squadron from the front and other squadrons to its rear would not move until those in front had gained the prescribed distance.

550.—The regiment being in echelon, right or left forward, to form line to the front, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Forward into line.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captains of all but the leading squadron command, *forward—guide right, or left*, (as the right or left be leading) *trot*.

At the command MARCH, the squadrons move forward to their places in line, are halted, and aligned on the leading squadron.

If the echelons be marching, the colonel gives the same commands, which are repeated only by the field officers; he sounds the signal for doubling the gait, or otherwise the leading squadron halts.

551.—The regiment being in echelon by squadrons, right or left forward, to form line to the right or left on the most advanced squadron in the new direction, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Right (or left) into line.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captains of all the squadrons command *right (or left) wheel—trot*.

At the command MARCH, all wheel; and the wheel being completed, they all command *forward*; and immediately after the captain on the flank of formation halts

and aligns his squadron on the markers, the others command the *guide*—toward that squadron, and halt and align their squadrons in succession.

552.—The regiment being in echelon, right or left forward, to form line faced to the front on a central or other squadron, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *On (such a) squadron into line.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captains of squadrons in advance of the named squadron command *fours right about.*

At the command MARCH, the fours wheel about, the captains command *guide*—toward the squadron of formation; they march a horse's length beyond the line of that squadron, wheel right about by fours and dress.

The other squadrons conform to No. 550.

554.—The regiment in echelon, right forward, if suddenly required to form an oblique line towards the left, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Oblique line to the left.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captains command *left wheel—trot.*

When the squadrons have wheeled into line, which passes through the squadron left guides, the captains command HALT.

If the colonel wish to advance without halting, he sounds the signal *forward*, before the completion of the wheels; the regiment moves forward on the principles that have been prescribed.

The left being forward, oblique line to the right is formed by inverse means.

555.—The regiment being in line, to advance in echelon by half regiment the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Wings by the right (or left) forward in echelon.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captains of the designated wing command *forward—guide right (or left.)*

The movement being commenced, if there be two field officers present, the lieutenant colonel takes command of the right wing. The right wing includes the central *squadron of direction.*

If there be only one field officer, he commands the left wing. When the right wing has gained a distance equal to its front, he commands *left wing forward—MARCH*; the guide in both wings is to the right when the right is advanced, and the inverse. The colonel may add to the second command, *at half distance.*

556.—The regiment being in echelon by wing, and the colonel wishes to form or to march by echelon of squadrons, he commands as in No. 540, to which the movement is conformed, commencing by the right or left of each wing at the same time.

The colonel wishing to change the order of only one wing, he sends orders to its commander, who conforms to No. 540. When the squadrons are in echelon, he commands the halt.

557.—The regiment being in echelon by squadron, to form one wing in line the colonel sends orders to its commander, who commands: 1. (such a) *wing forward into line*; 2. MARCH. The captains conform to No. 550. If it have no separate commander, the colonel gives the above command.

If he wish to form both wings in echelon by wing, he commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *On the right (or left) of wings—forward into line*; 3. MARCH.

At the second command, each field officer gives to his wing the command, (such a) *wing forward into line.*

558.—The regiment marching in echelon by squadron, to form column of squadrons on the leading squadron, the colonel commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Form column.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captains of all but the leading squadron commands, *fours right (or left)—trot;* they repeat the command MARCH.

The squadrons gain the rear of the leading squadron by the flank movement, and are wheeled into line, moved forward until the proper distance is gained, then the captains command the gait of the leading squadron.

At the halt, the column is formed on any squadron on the same principles, gaining no lost ground to the front, at the colonel's command: 2. *On (such a) squadron—form column.*

559.—Echelons can very readily attack (and thereby defend themselves) in every direction; are manœuvred and changed to lines with great simplicity.

In echelon, whilst you attack, or prepare to attack, the enemy, you secure your own flank, or you prepare to turn his flank.

Leading echelons are very effectually covered in flank. Echelons being contiguous and unmasked, they with advantage follow up a successful charge, or cover one which is repulsed. If successful, whilst the rest of the enemy's line is engaged with you, the successful echelon attacks him in flank or rear.

They are ever ready to improve an opening given by the enemy; and you can attack one of his wings, or any part, without engaging all your troops at once.

Echelons are useful in passing out of a defile to support troops already engaged—successful or defeated.

560.—The regiment being in line, to retire by alternate squadrons the colonel commands :

1. *Attention.*
2. *Retire by alternate squadrons—trot.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the captains of the second and other even-numbered squadrons command, *fours—right about—trot.* At the command MARCH, they wheel about by fours, and the captains command *guide left.*—The lieutenant colonel commands this retiring line.

Having retired one hundred paces, or the distance ordered, or at the sound of trumpet signal HALT, the lieutenant colonel commands *fours—RIGHT ABOUT.* The captains repeat the command, and add HALT.

The colonel then commands *retire*; at which the captains of the alternate squadrons in front immediately give the same commands as prescribed for the others. The colonel then commands MARCH; they pass to an equal distance in rear of the other line, and at the command or signal of the colonel, face about to the front, as prescribed for the squadrons that first retired.

The direction of the line may be changed during the retreat. If necessary, columns of fours will be formed whilst retiring. [See No. 399.]

---

## ARTICLE FIFTH.

### CHARGE.

561.—The charge is the decisive action of cavalry.

Cavalry, like each of the three great arms, dependent on the others, the battle once begun awaits their action. Its opportunities pass in moments. Its successful com-



mander must have a *cavalry eye* and rapid decision; once launched, its bravery is successful.

Infantry columns, battered by artillery, have failed in their attacks upon a position. The cavalry charges the batteries and supports; the infantry hastens to make good the advantage; the cavalry, disunited and attacked, or threatened by the enemy's, rallies under cover of the other arms.

At the moment of the enemy's first success—he has perhaps broken the first line, and makes a disorderly pursuit—the cavalry seizes the moment to overthrow his battalions.

An enemy expecting a charge should be deceived, if possible, by some demonstration. If he attempt to change his order, then instantly begin the gallop.

If possible, at the moment of a charge, assail your enemy in flank;—or charge him in flank, when seriously engaged with your infantry in front.

Cavalry charges the enemy's cavalry to drive him from the field, to return against his battalions with more liberty.

Meeting an enemy by surprise, the cavalry should instantly charge his. This decision will give the advantage.

A line of cavalry should meet the rapid and disordered charge of another at the *trot*. The enemy's line, already broken, will recoil—be thrown off from its imposing order.

The pursuit of cavalry broken by a charge depends upon the relative circumstances of the armies, but specially upon the cavalry reserves. Every effort of impetuosity should be made to throw a defeated line upon a second, so as to disorder and involve it in defeat. It is well to push the defeated until they are thoroughly disorganized in flight; but this may be carried out by the flanker squadrons. It is generally important to rally promptly. This can be done with advantage while advancing. Then attack the enemy in rear or flank.

The commander of cavalry sends two well-mounted

officers or non-commissioned officers to precede his advance and reconnoitre ground over which he is likely to charge, and of which he is ignorant; if the enemy is in sight, they will gallop straight toward him, and as near as they can without risk of being captured; they may discover features of ground of which advantage may be taken, or which may have been ruinous or destructive in a charge.

Cavalry never charges without a reserve.

The charge is made with the greatest velocity and regularity possible; in speed and order there must be a mutual sacrifice; seek in the charge, with a judicious proportion, to attain the maximum of each.

Circumstances permitting, the line approaches within 200 paces of the enemy at the trot, then galloping with increasing speed, the charge is commanded at 50 or 60 yards.

Crowding and pressure, when the horse is exerting his powers, impedes him, and makes him uncontrollable; every jostle or rub diminishes his strength. Although rapidity in the approach to the enemy is generally important, very important too it is that the horses should not arrive exhausted, or even distressed and blown.

The centre of the squadron exactly follows the captain; the troopers do their best to preserve their intervals and alignment by the centre; the flanks must not be in advance.

562.—The formation for attack depends upon the description and dispositions of the enemy, upon the nature of the ground, and upon the composition of your force.

The first line formed for attack should seldom consist of more than a third of the cavalry; the second, or support, disposed in squadron columns 300 to 400 yards in rear; the reserve equally in their rear in close column. If the enemy be deficient in cavalry, this third body is more dispensable; (and it is here considered as a distinct body from those whose movements are prescribed.)

563.—Under circumstances which require and admit of a more concentrated attack, the regiment charges in column of squadrons, (or of attack.)

564.—The charge as foragers, from close order or by skirmishers, has the advantages of great freedom of motion and will in the troopers; of less loss from fire; it prepares the way for a decisive shock of the charge in line; it is the usual charge against batteries, the gunners being more or less covered by their pieces and isolated; the pistol is used in it at will; the flanking squadrons will sometimes second the charge of the line by thus charging the enemy in flank.

565.—The regiment being in order of battle, the colonel wishing to charge, if the sabres be not drawn commands them to be drawn; he then commands:

1. *Attention to charge.*
2. FORWARD.
3. MARCH.

The regiment being in regular motion, he commands:

*Trot*—MARCH.

After passing over 150 paces at this gait, (according to circumstances,) he commands:

*Gallop*—MARCH.

After galloping about 150 paces, he directs the charge to be sounded—it is repeated by all the trumpeters—he commands:

CHARGE.

Which is repeated by all the officers.

The troopers conform to the school of the squadron.

The second line preserves its distance; at the commencement of the charge it is commanded to trot;

closing again to its distance from the line of battle, it is halted.

If there had been a line of skirmishers, when the charge is announced, or the regiment begins the *trot*, they are rallied at full speed in advance of the flanks, and if possible charge as foragers upon the enemy's flanks; otherwise they rally at, or behind the flanks to be ready to support—to charge in flank the enemy who has repulsed the charge, or to pursue.

The flanking squadrons retain their position in line of battle in the charge until they receive orders, or opportunity of action occurs. It is their important duty to protect the flanks of the regiment.

In charging infantry, the troopers shout; against cavalry, silence is recommended.

566.—In the exercise of the regiment, at the command CHARGE, the squadrons do no more than increase the speed of the gallop, and charge sabre.

The colonel then commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons.*
3. HALT.
4. DRESS.

At the command *attention*, repeated by all officers, the squadrons begin to lessen the pace, and all carry sabre.

At the command *squadrons*, repeated by the captains, the chiefs of platoon command *platoon*, and the squadrons *trot*.

The command HALT is repeated by all. If the line be advancing, the colonel's commands are: 1. *Attention to charge*; 2. *Trot (or gallop)*; 3. MARCH.

567.—The enemy being routed, when the colonel causes the rally to be sounded the troopers halt and rally.

on their captains and officers, who take their places in line, if circumstances permit.

568.—The colonel and field officers charge, opposite their places, aligned with the captains; but the colonel does not charge unless the whole regiment charge at the same time.

The standard-bearer changes places with the corporal in his rear, and follows him.

When about to charge, the colonel may order the left flank trumpeters of the squadrons to assemble in line under a chief trumpeter, 25 paces in rear of the centre of the line. In action a trumpeter accompanies each field officer and the colonel (in addition to the chief trumpeter.)

569.—If a charge is repulsed, the officers endeavor to prevent the troopers from being thrown on the second line or the supports; they are rallied in their rear.

The second line, then advancing in columns until they are clear of the rout, form line to repeat the charge, or execute the orders they may receive.

The flanking squadrons, if possible, charge the pursuing enemy in flank.

570.—The regiment of ten squadrons in order of battle, the colonel may cause the flanking squadrons, one or both, to skirmish in front of the line; previous to charging, he may order them to charge as foragers.

The colonel, to prepare for the charge, may order the flank squadrons to be deployed as skirmishers without a reserve, at 100 paces in front of the line; immediately on passing the line the captain's command: 1. *Squadron as skirmishers—at two paces*; 2. MARCH. The outer flank of each squadron advancing straight to the front, the troopers of each squadron will form a line from the flank of the regiment to its centre.

After firing, or not, the colonel commands the *charge as foragers*.

In the eight squadron regiment the colonel sometimes orders the flank squadrons *from the line*, to conform to what has been prescribed for the flanking squadrons.

Under some circumstances the colonel orders the fourth platoon, or even the two left platoons, of all the squadrons in line to charge as foragers; a field officer commands them; the line moves forward to support them.

571.—The charge in column may be used in any circumstances, but especially against infantry squares and columns.

The column of squadrons advancing, the colonel orders the two leading squadrons to charge. Their captains immediately order the gallop. The second squadron, with about 60 paces distance, is ordered to charge at the moment of the collision of the first squadron; it will find the enemy devoid of fire.

The colonel follows the charge at a slower gait, retaining the power of acting as events may require; he sends two more squadrons when and where circumstances indicate.

If any troopers of the first squadron are in the way of the second, they avoid the danger of being run down by facing and spurring towards the enemy.

The charge is also made from close column, in which case the captain of the second takes the increased gait of the first squadron when that has gained 60 paces distance. In either case the colonel's commands are: 1. *Attention*; 2. *First two squadrons—to the charge*; 3. *MARCH*. At the second command the captains order the increased gait, *trot* or *gallop*; (the captain second squadron in close column waiting till the first has got its distance.)

When there is choice between exposure to the right or left oblique fire of infantry, choose the *right*; the left is the most formidable.

In charges from column and echelon, the lieutenant

colonel and major charge at the head of the squadrons which the colonel designates.

572.—The colonel sometimes orders skirmishers, or the leading squadron, to charge as foragers; the two next charge together, if necessary. The troopers who have charged as foragers rally in rear of the column.

The enemy's infantry once struck, the charge is successful; but charges which fail utterly approach very near; they slacken the gait—take time to turn about—or turn in front of other infantry in line—or pass by other faces of the square; thus adding two-fold to their exposure to fire; besides the disgrace of defeat, doubling the individual chances of being shot down.

## SPECIAL SERVICE OF CAVALRY IN THE WEST.

---

### THE CAMP.

573.—The selection of the cavalry camp on the march is very important; the more especially in view of the support of the horses, exclusively or even principally, by grazing.

The guide, or a staff officer, or both, should precede the column, sometimes miles, accompanied by escort if necessary, to be assured of the best body of grass, sufficiently near to water and to the road.

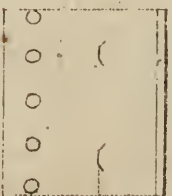
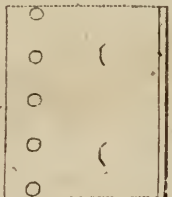
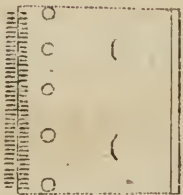
It is sometimes necessary to encamp without water, chiefly with a view to grass. On such occasions all animals must be carefully watered within an hour of the halt, and provision made for the night for the men by means of canteens or kegs, or both.

It is very certain that bodies of cavalry, performing the same amount of marches and duties—one, under a commander ignorant, or injudicious and careless in this respect, will have broken down horses, whilst the other may maintain them in good condition.

A commander in the West is subject commonly to the great difficulty and risk of necessarily grazing his animals at night, whilst they must be protected from an enemy. The camp should be formed early; sometimes it is protected in rear by a wide river, and the squadrons disposed on three sides of a parallelogram; sufficient space is included for night grazing.

To encamp regularly, the squadrons are formed in line with squadron intervals; they are dismounted; without forming rank, the troopers unsaddle and un-





Place of Assembly.

(Cook-fires.

20 paces.

Mens tents.

70 Ricket-ropes.

30 paces.

3 Co. Officers.

50 paces.

Fiddles Staff.



Three Squadrons showing plan of Camp of Regiment of Cavalry.



bridle; they deposit the saddles in line in front of all the horses, and place upon them their sabres; the horse blankets are retained surciugled to the horses; if to be picketed, under charge of an officer, they are led out as far as is safe, in order to preserve the nearer grass for the night. The position which has been assigned to the videttes from the advance guard indicates the limits.

The troopers then pitch the tents, on the line which has been marked, in front of the saddles; with intervals, they cover the extent of each squadron mounted in line, leaving the squadron interval clear.

If the picket rope is to be used, it is ten yards in rear of the tents; it is usually suspended to posts about six feet high, and the horses tied by the head; it may lie on the ground, the ends secured, and the horses be tied to it by straps, by the ankle, with from 20 to 30 inches play; or by the head. The tents of company officers are 30 paces in rear of the picket rope; the line of cook fires 20 paces in front of the men's tents.

It is in some parts of our desert interior necessary, on account of deficiency of grass, to herd the horses; but *very rarely* by night. This must be commenced with much caution, and is not safe until the horses are somewhat broken to the routine of service, and have suffered fatigues, and are hungry.

There is little risk of their escaping or being driven far off if they are hobbled, which should be done; and then, a very few of the best horses, or those known to be leaders among them, or to be easily frightened, should be picketed.

About an hour after encamping the horses should be watered; then the blankets are removed.

Orders are given what dispositions are to be made in case of a night alarm; the places of assembly of different squadrons or platoons, dismounted; and who are to be charged exclusively with the security of the horses.

In an enemy's country, the camp should not be within gun shot of cover for an enemy; or it should be very near, and the cover be occupied by the guard or sentinels.

So, *always* there is danger of losing horses by prowling Indians, notwithstanding the vigilance of sentinels, if they are picketed at night in proximity to cover.

If the night grazing has not been good, and generally, particularly in summer, it is necessary that the horses should graze an hour or two in the morning; and they should not be allowed to be disturbed until the last moment, and at the signal.

### THE MARCH.

574.—The march should generally be in column of fours, the squadrons with 40 or 50 paces intervals, in order that a check in one column should not extend its disturbing influence by causing the next to stop; it also tends to the avoidance of dust.

From 40 minutes to an hour after the march, a halt of five minutes should be made, the squadrons to be dismounted, informally in column, at the command *dismount*, from their captains. If there be grass, the squadrons should oblique from the road before dismounting. The horses should be encouraged to feed at the shortest halts; at those for ten minutes or more, as when watering, the commander should give the command, *unbit*.

Every hour, a halt of from two to five minutes should be made.

Troopers are prohibited to leave the ranks for any purpose on the march, unless on foot, leaving the horse led.

About noon, or about the middle of the march, when circumstances allow a choice of time, the "watering call" should be sounded; the troopers should generally dismount and unbit. The watering is superintended by the officers. Often the horse would fail to be watered, from the impatience or want of perseverance of the trooper. This halt is from 20 to 45 minutes. Videttes or sentinels from the advance guard are posted.

After one of the halts the troopers should lead, about 45 minutes; or twice for 30 minutes.

There are several advantages in trotting a part of the march:

By it the horses are sooner relieved of the saddle and burden, and have longer time for feed and rest.

Horse and man are relieved from the constant motion and fatigue of the same muscles and parts.

It avoids a bad carriage of the person of the trooper, sometimes injurious to the horse; it awakes and relieves him.

It is found, from experience, to lessen the liability to sore backs.

It is seldom, in any great prairie plain, that a creek bed or a ravine, or a swell, does not render a small advance guard a proper precaution; it may be very small; the main body of the guard is with the baggage in rear; flankers are occasionally necessary.

Long marches or expeditions should be commenced very moderately. The horses, if untrained, must be gradually inured to their labors; in other words, the march must first be a training. Fifteen miles a day at first;—afterwards they will be equal to twenty-five.

### ESCORTS:

575.—Cavalry is costly, and very valuable for its proper service; it is, from its liability to the deterioration of the horses from many causes always existing, a very delicate arm. Its officers must exercise great judgment, as well as incessant vigilance, to maintain, with economy, its efficiency under general, western, or any other service. The commanding officer of the troops is also responsible for their condition in the nature of his orders.

The use of the cavalry portion of the escort of a train being chiefly to ascertain and report the approach of an enemy under cover of woods, broken ground, &c., it is the less needed for that duty on the prairies and on the desert slopes of the mountains, where the eye habitually commands many miles.

It will not be employed *alone* on such service without an absolute necessity. By night, and in long halts by day, when, as usual, without grain, the horses of cavalry must graze over much space, it is exposed to risk of loss, and is unequal to the *safe* defence of its *own* horses. Escorts, too, are always on the defensive; but cavalry is very weak on the defensive; it defends itself only by attacking: thus infantry is by far the stronger arm for that duty, even by day. It is also a service of slow and often interrupted marches, and thus the most injurious to cavalry horses.

Personages, mails, &c., cannot be escorted far, faster than at the rate of 25 miles a day, by cavalry, (unless it be dismounted and disposed in light wagons.)

It will be avoided, if possible, to make cavalry detachments less than a platoon, or greater than half and less than a whole squadron; (company.) These details will be furnished from the same squadron at one time. This saves time, and even difficulty, in the preparation of equipage and rations, and adds to general convenience and comfort.

## TITLE FIFTH.

### EVOLUTIONS OF THE LINE.

---

#### PRELIMINARY RULES AND REMARKS.

576.—The *evolutions of the line* do not essentially differ from the *evolutions of the regiment*. All the movements described in Title IV are applicable, with the modifications given under the present title, which supposes a brigade of two regiments, each of eight squadrons.

If two brigades be united under the command of a major general, each of the brigadier generals repeats the general commands of the commander of the division; they are executed in each brigade as is detailed in the present title. When the brigades are to execute an evolution which requires a particular command for one of them, the brigadier gives that command, instead of repeating the general command; conforming to the like case for the second regiment of the brigade.

The interval between the regiments in line is two platoon fronts. In line of close columns, with "closed intervals," it is 5 platoon fronts; (always 3 less than the number of squadrons of 4 platoons;) at "full intervals," it is half a squadron less than full front. Full interval is understood, unless the command express, "closed intervals."

In the line of battle there is two platoon fronts interval between the flanks of the interior flanker squadrons.

The distance between regiments in close column, measured the same as between squadrons, is two platoon fronts; in open column, it is three platoon fronts,

In line the brigadier general is 100 paces in front of the centre of the brigade; in the evolutions he goes wherever his presence is necessary.

The command *attention*, is immediately repeated after the brigadier general.

Preparatory commands are repeated with exactitude; those of execution should be repeated with a rapidity so great as to be partially simultaneous with the utterance of the general officer; so that there may be unity in their execution by the troops.

In all formations the regimental markers place themselves upon the prolongation of the line, at the preparatory command of their colonel; the sergeant majors face toward the regiment of formation.

The assistant adjutant general traces the lines, when ordered by the brigadier general. He indicates to the adjutants the principal points of direction for the march, or for formations.

The command *front*, is not given in one regiment until the markers of the other regiment are established on the prolongation of the line.

Trumpet signals apply only to the first line—are repeated only by the trumpeters of that line; commands for the second or other lines are given by the voice.

To draw or return sabre, the brigadier general commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Draw sabre, or Return sabre.*

The regiments draw, or return, only at the commands of their colonels, (given as prescribed, with the pause.)

The brigade being in column, the leading regiment is designated "first;" the one behind, "second." In line, the one happening on the *right* is designated "first;" on the *left*, "second."

Always in forming close column on a flank squadron of the brigade, all the other squadrons go in rear of the one designated.



When the brigadier general commands HALT, he elevates his right arm and sabre to their full extent.

He does the same at the command MARCH, if all the troops are to execute the same movement; in this case the captains repeat instantly after the brigadier general.

The distance between two lines of brigades is generally equal to the front of a regiment ("half distance"); between the regiments in a brigade in two lines it should seldom exceed 300 paces.

577.—Both as to commands of all the officers and their execution, that which is prescribed in the evolutions of the regiment is conformed to in the following movements :

To form an open column, its march and change of direction (including the march by both flanks to the rear to pass a defile.)

To form a column of squadrons and a close column (faced to a flank); and an open column, from line.

To close a column of squadrons.

To form a close column from an open column.

The march and change of direction of a close column; its counter-march; and to gain ground to flank or rear; and its wheel by platoons to repel a sudden attack in flank.

To advance in double column, (each regiment forms its own; the brigadier general commands, *regulate by right, or left*, and the guides will be ordered accordingly).

To reduce them to a double column of fours; to face, or march to the rear.

To pass from a column of squadrons or a close column to an open column; from an open column to a column of fours; from a column of fours to an open column; and from an open column to a column of squadrons; and a close column; (but the leading squadron, 2d regiment, trots like the rest.)

The formation of line from an open column, or col-

umn of squadrons, to the *right or left*, and *on right or on left into line*.

To form from close column, *on right or on left into line*.

To form line to the front from double columns; and faced to the rear on the head or rear of the columns.

To form line from an open column where a part has changed direction, in the several cases, by combining two or more evolutions; (each regimental commander gives, or conforms to, so much of the general command as is applicable to his regiment.)

In some of these movements, one of the colonels does not immediately repeat, or give his commands; but in due and evident order of succession;—as in change of direction of a column;—or *on right into line*, &c.

In two lines, the second line conforms its movements in line of squadron columns, so as to retain its distance and parallel position in rear.

If the first line retreats by alternate squadrons, the 2d line stands fast until the uneven numbered squadrons (which do not commence the movement) begin to retire, and moves at the same time.

In the advance or retreat of the first line in echelons, the squadron columns of the second line conform their movements to those of the corresponding squadrons of the first line.

---

## ARTICLE FIRST.

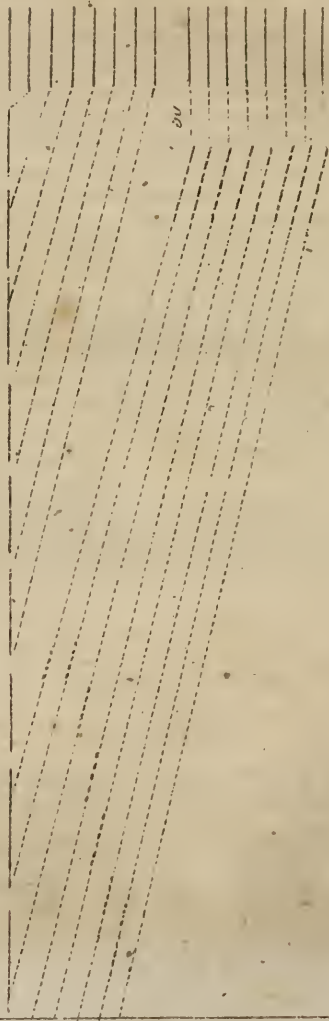
### COLUMNS.

The brigade being in line, to form a general close column on a central squadron without changing front---

578.--The brigadier general commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *On right of 2d regiment—close column.*
3. MARCH.





no

The 2d regiment conforms to No. 448.

The colonel 1st regiment, to the second command, adds *fours left—trot*; the captains conform to what is prescribed for those on the right of the squadron of formation, No. 450.

The regiment on the right always goes in front, in forming the general close column on a central squadron.

Regimental close columns, full interval, are formed on the right (or left) of each regiment at the commands *in each regiment—on right (or left) squadron—close column*.

To form a line of regimental close columns, closed interval, the brigadier general commands: 2. *On left of 1st regiment, and right of 2d regiment—close columns*. The regiments conform to Nos. 449 and 448. The interval may be corrected by a flank movement of either column.

579.—The brigade being in line to form general close column on a flank, without changing front—

The brigadier general commands:

1. *Attention*.
2. *On the right of 1st regiment—close column*.
3. MARCH.

The 1st regiment conforms to No. 448.

The colonel 2d regiment repeats the above commands; the captains conform to what is prescribed for those on the left of the squadron of formation, No. 450, except the captain of the right squadron, omits "*trot*;" the other captains, except the last, as they arrive abreast of the right squadron, (with interval to give squadron distance when wheeled into line,) command *walk—MARCH*, and regulate by the left; when they are all abreast, on a line parallel to the flank of the 1st regiment, the mass will be about 50 paces from the flank line of the 1st regiment column, and the squadrons opposite their places; the colonel then commands *squadrons half left*.

When the squadron columns, thus parallel with and

at proper distance from the rear squadron, 1st regiment, arrive in its rear, the colonel commands: 1. *Fours—LEFT*; 2. *HALT*; pausing between the words “fours” and “left,” so that the captains can repeat both after him; they then command: 1. *DRESS*; 2. *FRONT*.

Close column on the left flank is formed on the same principles by inverse means at the command: 2. *On left of 2d regiment—close column*.

580.—The brigade being deployed by regiment in mass at full interval; to form general close column on right (or left) regiment.

The brigadier general commands:

1. *Attention*.
2. *On 1st regiment—close column*.
3. *MARCH*.

The 1st regiment stands fast.

The colonel of the 2d regiment commands:

1. *Attention*.
2. *Fours—right; squadrons half right—trot*.
3. *MARCH*.
4. *Regulate by the left*.

And 50 paces from the column of formation—*squadrons half left*;—and it is conducted on the principle of No. 569; but each captain gives the command *trot*, and all the squadron columns are abreast from the first, on a line perpendicular to the front.

Close column on the second regiment is formed on the same principles, by inverse commands and means. The moving regiment always goes in rear.

No. 581.—The brigade marching in line, to form a general close column without halting—

The brigadier general commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *On left of 2d regiment—close column.*
3. MARCH.

The 2d regiment conforms to No. 451.

The colonel of the 1st regiment repeats the 2d command, and adds *fours—left—trot*; all the squadrons conform to what is prescribed for all but the leading squadron, No. 451.

Close column on the 1st regiment is formed on the same principles and inverse means at the command *on right of 1st regiment—close column.*

582.—The brigade marching in line by regiment in mass at full interval, to form general close column without halting, the brigadier general commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *On 1st regiment—close column.*
3. MARCH.

The colonel 2d regiment commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Fours—right—trot.*
3. MARCH.
4. *Regulate by the left.*

And when in rear of the 1st regiment:

1. *Fours—LEFT.*

And when the regiment has arrived at its distance—

*Walk—MARCH.*

Close column on the 2d regiment is formed on the same principles, by inverse commands and means.

583.---The brigade being in general close column at a halt, to change direction, to the left or right, by a flank movement, the brigadier general commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Change direction by the right (or left) flank.*
3. MARCH.

The 1st regiment conforms to No. 455.

The colonel of the 2d regiment repeats the brigadier general's commands; all its squadrons conform to what is prescribed for the rear squadrons, No. 455---(the leading squadron preserving distance in the column.)

584.---The brigade being in general close column, to form a line of regimental close columns, closed interval, faced to the left or right, the brigadier general commands *in each regiment*---change direction by the right (or left) flank.

Each regiment conforms to No. 455.

A general close column is formed, faced to a flank, from a line of regimental close columns; on the same principle; and by the same commands, it being the reversal of the above movements.

---

## ARTICLE SECOND.

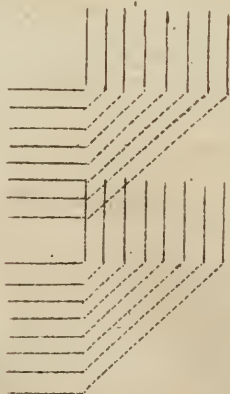
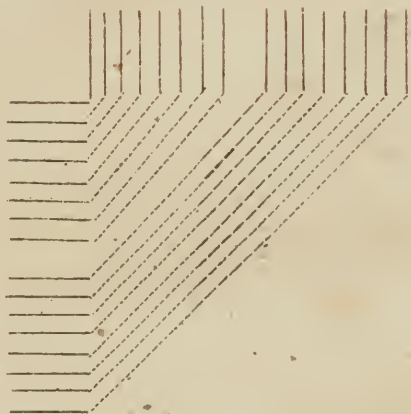
### FORMATIONS OF LINE.

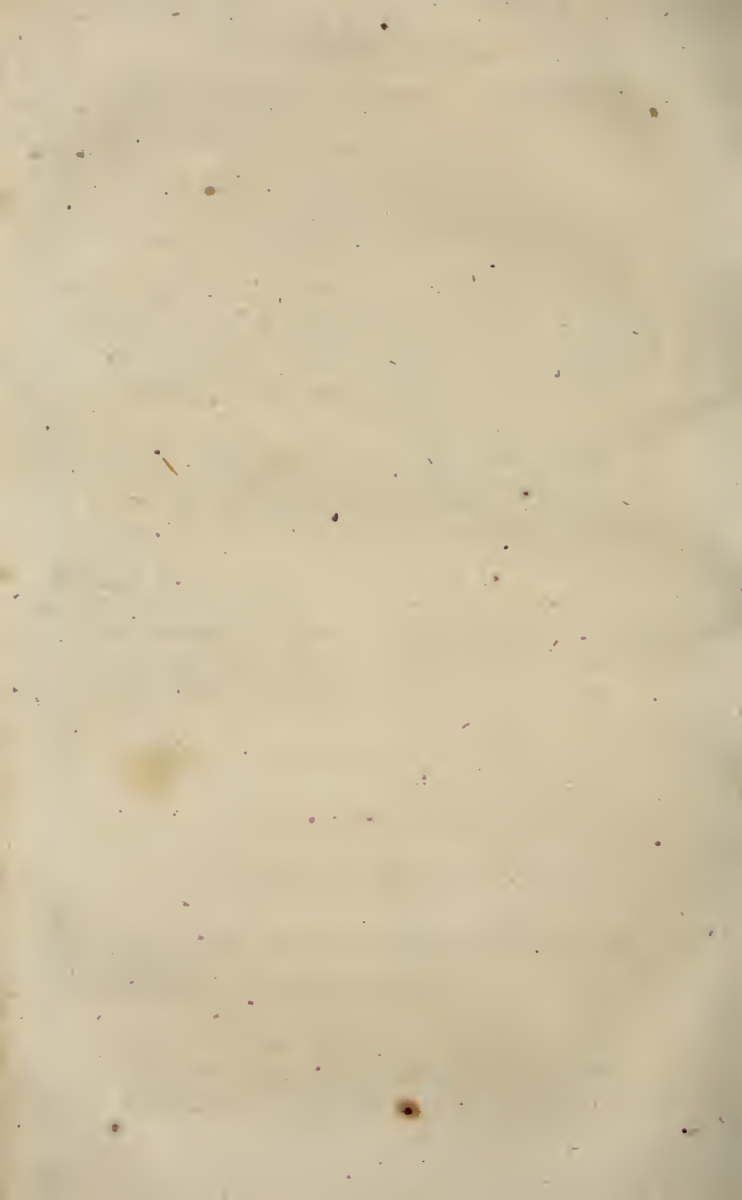
585.—The brigade marching in open column, to form front into line.

The brigadier general commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Left-front (or right-front) into line.*
3. MARCH.





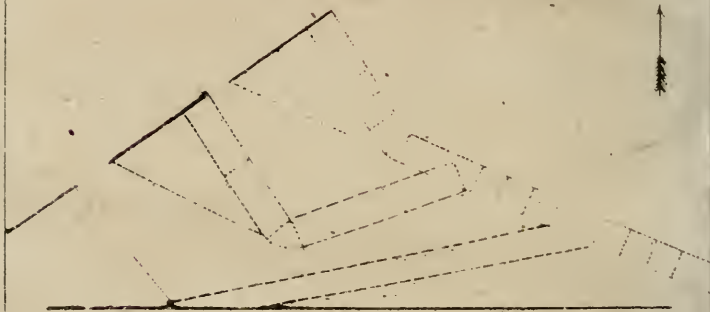




No 28.

Left of 1st. Regt.

Page 8-11 a.



Left of 1st. Regt.

The leading regiment conforms to No. 476.

At the 2d command, the colonel of the 2d (next) regiment commands: 2. *Column half left—trot.* He repeats MARCH, and add, *guide right.* The head of the 2d regiment is directed to a point half its depth, and 30 paces in rear of the place its right will occupy in line. There the colonel commands, *column half right.* Half the column being in the new direction, the colonel commands:

1. *Left front into line.*
2. MARCH.

The leading squadrons conform to No. 476. The captains, who had not changed direction, continue their course, and turning *half right*, opposite their places in line, march forward and form *left-front into line.*

If the column be at a halt at the second command, the colonel 2d regiment commands: 2. *Forward trot—column half left.*

To form two lines, the brigadier general commands: 2. *In each regiment—left-front into line.* Each regiment conforms to No. 476,—the 2d forming *line of columns.*

586.—To form the brigade column on an oblique line, *left back* (or *right back*;) the leading regiment conforms to No. 477. The 2d regiment turns as in the preceding paragraph, directing its course about 50 paces to the left of the marker of the preceding regiment; and *not* turning *half right* on forming *left front into line*, the colonel adds, *left forward*, and conforms to No. 478.

587.—To form the brigade in an oblique line *left forward*, the brigadier general adds to his command *left forward.* The leading regiment conforms to No. 478. The colonel of the next, if the obliquity be great, makes a much less *turn*; and directing the head of his column nearly to the position of its right in line, commands *on right into line*; and conforms to Nos. 480 and 482.

588.—The brigade being in open column to form line faced to the right rear or left rear on the rear of the column, the platoons are first wheeled about, and then conform to No. 585.

To form the line faced to the rear on the head of the column *front into line* is first executed, and then *wheel about* by squadron, or by platoon. This is executed simultaneously, at the commands of the brigadier general, or in succession. (See No. 488.)

No. 589.—The brigade being in column of squadrons, to form line faced to the front, the leading regiment conforms to No. 485. The colonel of the second commands *by platoon* or *by the left—by platoon*; and then conforms to No. 585.

590.—The brigade being in column of squadrons, to form line faced to the rear on the rear of the column, the brigadier general commands *left* (or *right*)—*rear into line*. The regiment in rear conforms to No. 487. The colonel of the leading regiment wheels by platoon to the left, and marches forward until his line of columns is opposite the position the left of the regiment shall have in line. He then commands *squadrons left*, (No. 521;) marches forward, and forms *right front into line*. (No. 476.)

591.—The brigade being in general close column, to form line faced to the front on and to the right of the leading squadron, the brigadier general commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Deploy to the right.*
3. MARCH.

The leading regiment conforms to No. 490.

At the 2d command, the colonel of the 2d regiment commands *fours right—trot*; and adds to the command of execution *regulate by the left*.

7029.

8th Squad

1st Regt

Page 86. II<sup>d</sup>







When the regiment is opposite the position for its left flank in line, the colonel commands: 2 *Fours*—LEFT; when his leading squadron is about 20 paces from its position, he conforms to No. 491; but the leading squadron is halted on the markers.

If the brigadier general wishes to deploy in two lines, he commands, *in each regiment—deploy to the right.*

If the brigade be in a line of regimental close columns—closed interval—to deploy to the right, the brigadier general commands the same *deploy to the right*, which is repeated by the colonel of the second regiment, No. 490; but the leading squadron is dressed forward six paces.

The colonel of the first regiment commands the same as the colonel in rear, above; and marching in mass to the right, gives the commands: 2. *Fours*—LEFT; 3. HALT, when the regiment is opposite the position for its left flank in line, (lessening his previous interval from the flank of the 2<sup>d</sup> regiment.) He then conforms to No. 490.

The general close column, or line of columns, is deployed to the left on the same principles by inverse commands and means.

592.—The general close column, marching, is deployed by regiment in mass, at the command: 2. *By regiment in mass*, (or *By regiment in mass—closed interval*)—*deploy to the right*, (or *left*.) The colonel of the second regiment commands: 2. *Fours right* (or *left*),—*trot*—MARCH. 3. *Regulate by the left*, (or *right*;) and having gained his proper interval, *fours*—LEFT, (or RIGHT;) and on the line, *walk*—MARCH; or, if the movement be made from the halt, he commands *column*—HALT.

To deploy in echelon, the command is, *on* (such a) *regiment—by regiment in mass—to the right* (or *left*)—*in echelon*.

The regiment not named gains interval to the flank as above; is wheeled by fours to the front and halted.

593.---The brigade being in general close column, to deploy it to the right and left, the brigadier general commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Deploy to the right and left.*
3. MARCH.

The colonel of the first regiment conforms to No. 490.

At the second command the colonel of the second regiment commands: 2. *Fours left---trot.* 3. MARCH; and being opposite his position, (having marched six platoon fronts to the left,) he commands: 2. *Fours---Right.* 3. *Guide right.* When his leading squadron is about twenty paces from its position, he conforms to No. 491; but the captain of that squadron halts and dresses on the markers.

594.---To deploy the column, on a line oblique to its front, the brigadier general first commands: 2. *Squadrons right (or left) wheel.* 3. MARCH. 4. HALT, No. 493; he then commands as in No. 593; but the second regiment, if the wheel has been made to the right, marches further in its flank movement; if to the left, less; and in its march to the new front its flanks do not cover; the guides maintain their first relative positions.

595.---The brigade being in line of regimental close columns, closed interval, to deploy to the right and left, the brigadier general commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Deploy to the right and left.*
3. MARCH.

The colonel of the 1st regiment conforms to No. 490; but the leading squadron is dressed forward six paces.

At the second command, the colonel of the 2d regiment commands: 2. *Deploy to the left, No. 490;* but the

markers are stationed to the right of the head of the column, at the proper interval from the left of the 1st regiment; and at the 2d command, the captain of the leading squadron commands *fours---right*. At the command of execution he marches three platoons front, to the right, wheels to the left by fours, and dresses upon the markers; the other captains conform to No. 490; but that of the squadron next to the front will find himself opposite his place when his squadron has marched two platoon fronts.

The line of regimental close columns at full interval, is deployed at the command *in each regiment---deploy to the right (or left)*.

The line of close columns advances and halts at the same commands, and on the same principles as the deployed line.

The intervals of a line of close columns is diminished or increased by marching one, or both, along the line.

596.---The brigade halted, or marching in general close column, to form line on the left flank, faced to the left---or right flank, faced to the right---the brigadier general commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *On rear squadron---left (or right) into line.*
3. MARCH.

The regiment in rear conforms to No. 494.

If halted, the colonel of the regiment in front commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Forward.*
3. MARCH.

When the rear of his regiment has marched so far that its rear will have the prescribed interval in line, he also conforms to No. 494.

597.---The brigade being in line of regimental double columns, halted or marching, to form it, in two lines, faced to the right or left, the brigadier general commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *In each regiment—right (or left) into line.*
3. MARCH.

Each regiment conforms to No. 500.

598.—The brigade being in line of regimental double columns, to form line faced to the rear on the heads of the columns, it is formed *front into line*; and then wheeled by platoon or squadron, *left (or right about)*, the brigadier general giving the commands.

If on the rear of the columns, the columns are first wheeled by platoons about, and then formed *front into line*, No. 499.

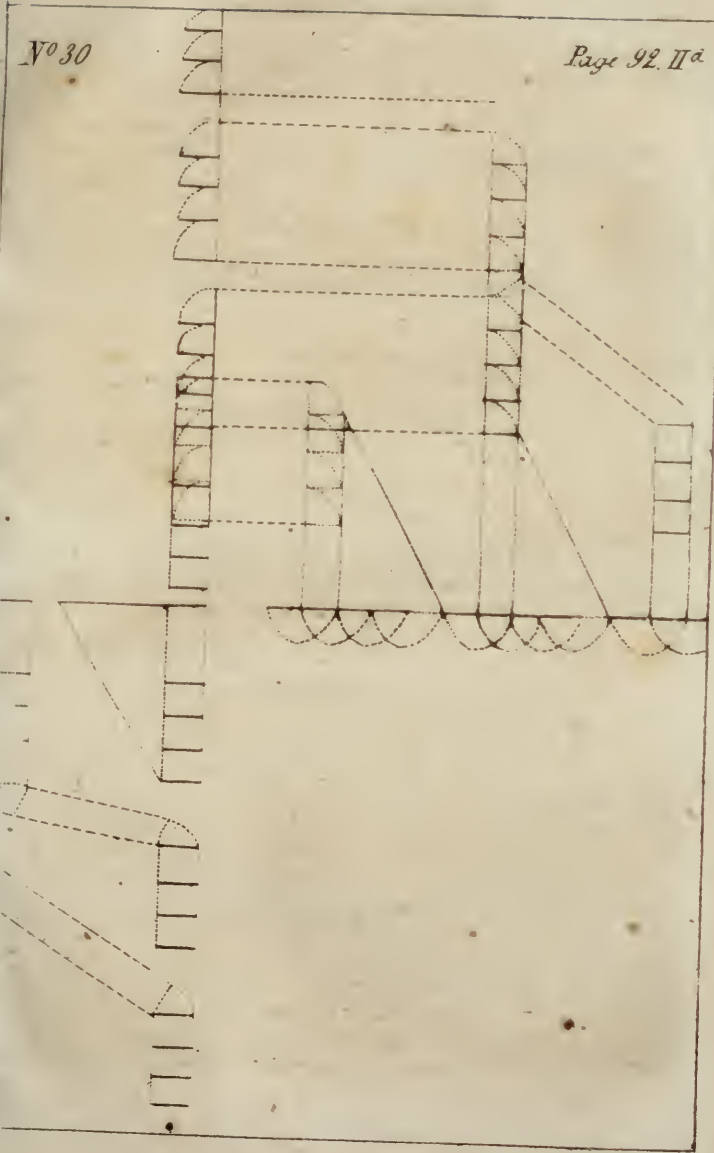
599.—The brigade being in open column, to form line, faced to the front, on the leading squadron, 2d regiment, the brigadier general commands: 2. *On 2d regiment—left front into line.*

The 2d regiment is formed *left front into line*, No. 476.

The colonel, 1st regiment, commands: 2. *Platoons right wheel---rear squadron forward---trot*; 3. MARCH; 4. FORWARD; and the front squadrons having marched two squadron fronts to the right, 1. *Platoons right wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Left front into line*; 5. MARCH; the last commands applying only to the seven leading squadrons:

The captain of the rear squadron having marched 30 paces forward, commands: 1. *Platoons right wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; and marches 3 platoon fronts, and then commands: 1. *Platoons—right wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Left—front into line*; 4. MARCH.

*All the captains, in succession, wheel platoons right about, (towards the other regiment.)*





600.—The brigade being in open column, to form line faced to the rear, on the rear of the 1st regiment, the brigadier general commands: 2. *On 1st regiment—left rear into line.*

The 2d regiment is formed, *right—front into line*, No. 476; and the captains wheel platoons *left about*, in succession, after forming in line.

The 1st regiment conforms to what is prescribed, No. 599, for the 1st regiment; *but inversely*; and the captains do not wheel platoons about, after forming line.

---

### ARTICLE THIRD.

#### THE LINE.

602.—The brigade being in line, to execute a change of front to the right or left, of about 45 degrees or less, the brigadier general commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Change front—left (or right) forward.*
3. MARCH.

The 1st regiment conforms to No. 513.

The commands of the colonel of the 2d regiment are: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Change front on 1st regiment—left forward*; 3. *Forward by platoons—trot*; 4. MARCH.

The captains, in succession, as the heads of their squadrons are opposite their place in the new line, command: *Column half right* and form *left front into line.*

At the discretion of the colonel of the 2d regiment, when the ground is favorable and the change of direction small, he omits his third command. In which case all the captains conform to what is prescribed for all but the one of the flank squadron, in No. 513.

603.—The brigade being in line, to change front, throwing back a flank, the brigadier general commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Change front—right (or left) back.*
3. MARCH.

The 2d regiment conforms to No. 515.

The colonel of the 1st regiment commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Change front on 2d regiment—right back*; 3. *Retire by fours*; 4. MARCH; No. 536.

The sergeant major being posted for the new position of the left of the regiment, the right guides of squadrons promptly take post; the lieutenants, at the heads of the columns, conduct them round, and five paces to the rear of their guides; and as they arrive, the left squadron behind the markers and with regimental interval—the others, in succession, with squadron intervals, the captains command: 1. *Right into line wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. DRESS; 4. FRONT.

604.—The brigade being in line, to change front obliquely on a central squadron, the brigadier general commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Change front on 1st regiment—right forward.*
3. MARCH.

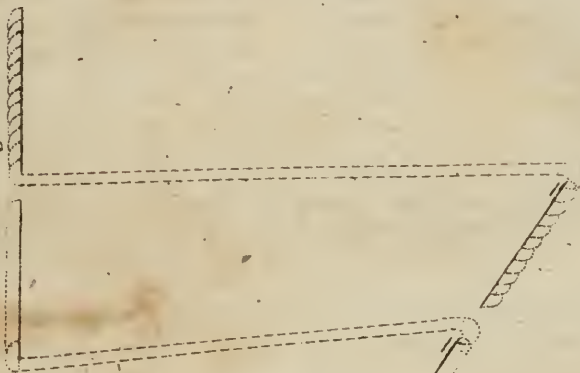
The 1st regiment conforms to No. 513.

The 2d regiment conforms to No. 515; except that the right squadron, after wheeling fours about, like the others, changes somewhat its position; moves forward to the line of the 1st regiment. The colonels respectively give the commands in Nos. 513 and 515.

To change front obliquely to the right, is executed on the same principle and by inverse means, at the command, *change front on right of 2d regiment—left forward.*



Left of 1st Regt.





605.—The brigade being in line, to change front at or near a right angle, to the right and faced to the right, or left, the brigadier general first wheels by platoons to the right; then forms *left—front into line*; or, *right—front into line*; and then (as he may do in either case) wheels platoons about. To change front to the left, and faced to the left, or right, he first wheels by platoons to the left; then forms *right—front into line*; or, *left—front into line*; and then (as he may do in either case) wheels platoons about.

To change front at or near a right angle on a central squadron, he wheels by platoon to the right, or left, and then commands, *on 2d regiment—left front into line*; No. 599.

606.—The brigade being in line, to advance in line of squadron columns, the brigadier general commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Forward by platoons.*
3. *Regulate by right (or left).*
4. MARCH.

The 1st regiment conforms to No. 517; the colonel omitting the third command of the brigadier general.

The colonel of the 2d regiment repeats the third command, and that regiment conforms to No. 522.

607.—To reduce the line of open columns to columns of fours, and reform them, and to march to either flank, and to resume the march in line of columns, the commands and means of Nos. 518, 521, and 523, are conformed to; to march to the rear, the commands and means of No. 526 are conformed to, the brigadier general adding to the last command, *regulate by right or left*.

608.—The brigade marching in line of column, to dispose it in two lines, the brigadier general communicates with the colonel of the regiment that is to form the sec-

ond line, who commands: 2. *Squadrons right, (or left)*—MARCH; and when he is in rear of the first line, *squadrons left (or right)*—MARCH.

The brigade halted in line, to form it in two lines, the regiment designated marches in open columns square to the rear—*whole distance*, or 300 paces, as required—turns, and when in rear, forms line of columns.

609.—The brigade being in line, to march to the front, the brigadier general commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Forward.*
3. *Regulate by left (or right.)*
4. MARCH.

The 2d regiment conforms to No. 527.

The colonel, 1st regiment, repeats the *third*—as he does the other commands; the left guide of its left flank squadron preserves the regimental interval, under the superintendence of the field officer of that flank, or the adjutant.

610.—The brigade in line, halted or marching, gains ground to a flank or the rear, by the commands and means of Nos. 534, 535.

To change it to a line of columns, and to reform the line, the commands and means prescribed in Nos. 517, 537, are conformed to.

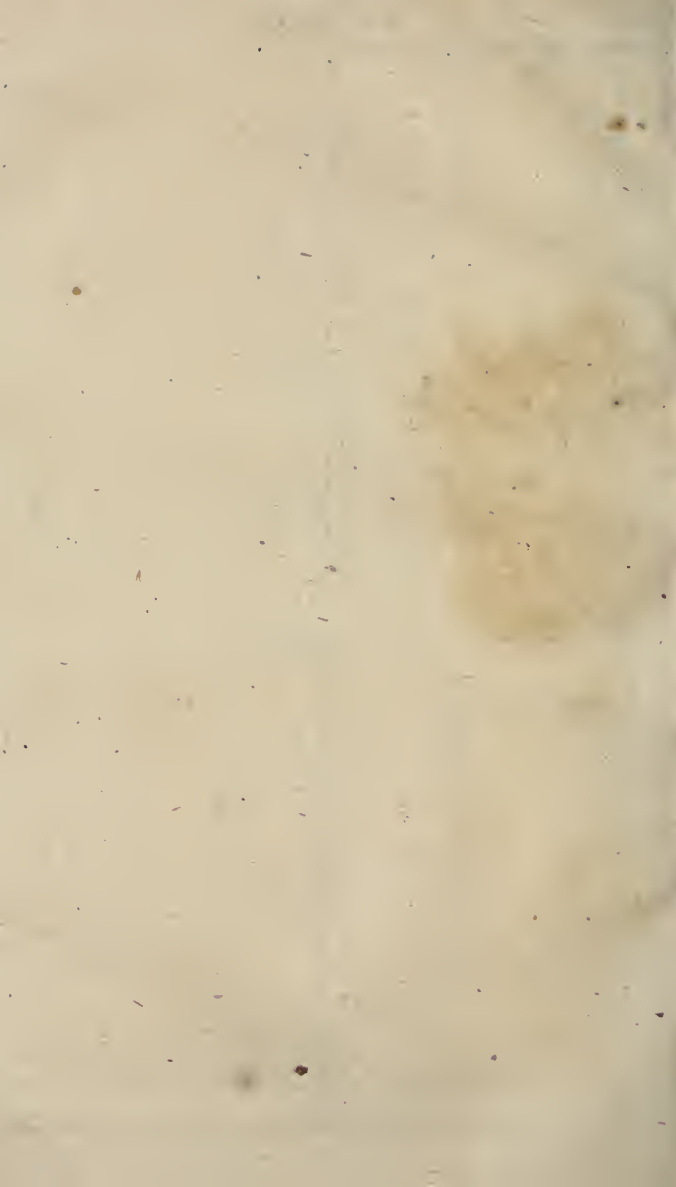
611.—The brigade being in two lines, at whole distance, or 300 yards distance, to change front 90 degrees to the right or left, the brigadier general sends notice to the colonel of the 2d regiment (line) and commands:

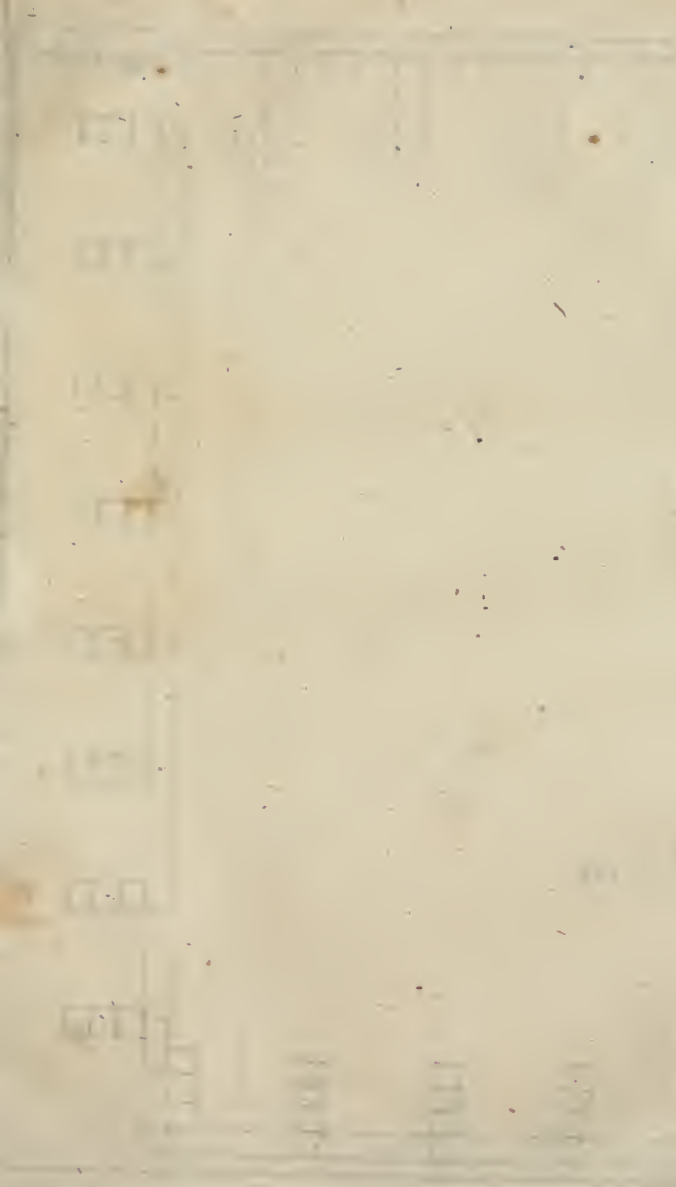
1. *Attention.*
2. *Platoons right wheel.*
3. MARCH.
1. *Left front into line.*
2. MARCH.

Fig. 1

300







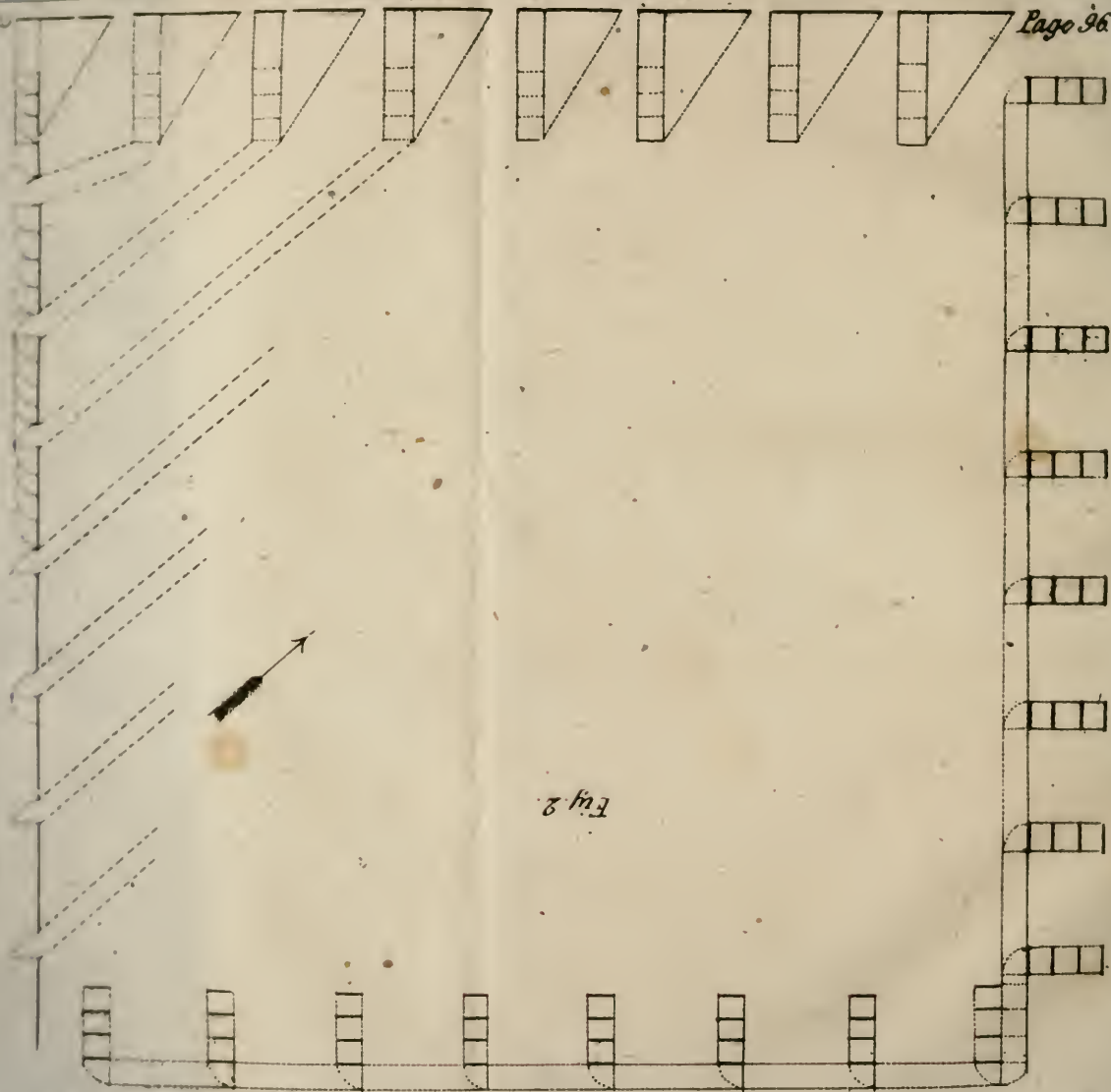


Fig. 2





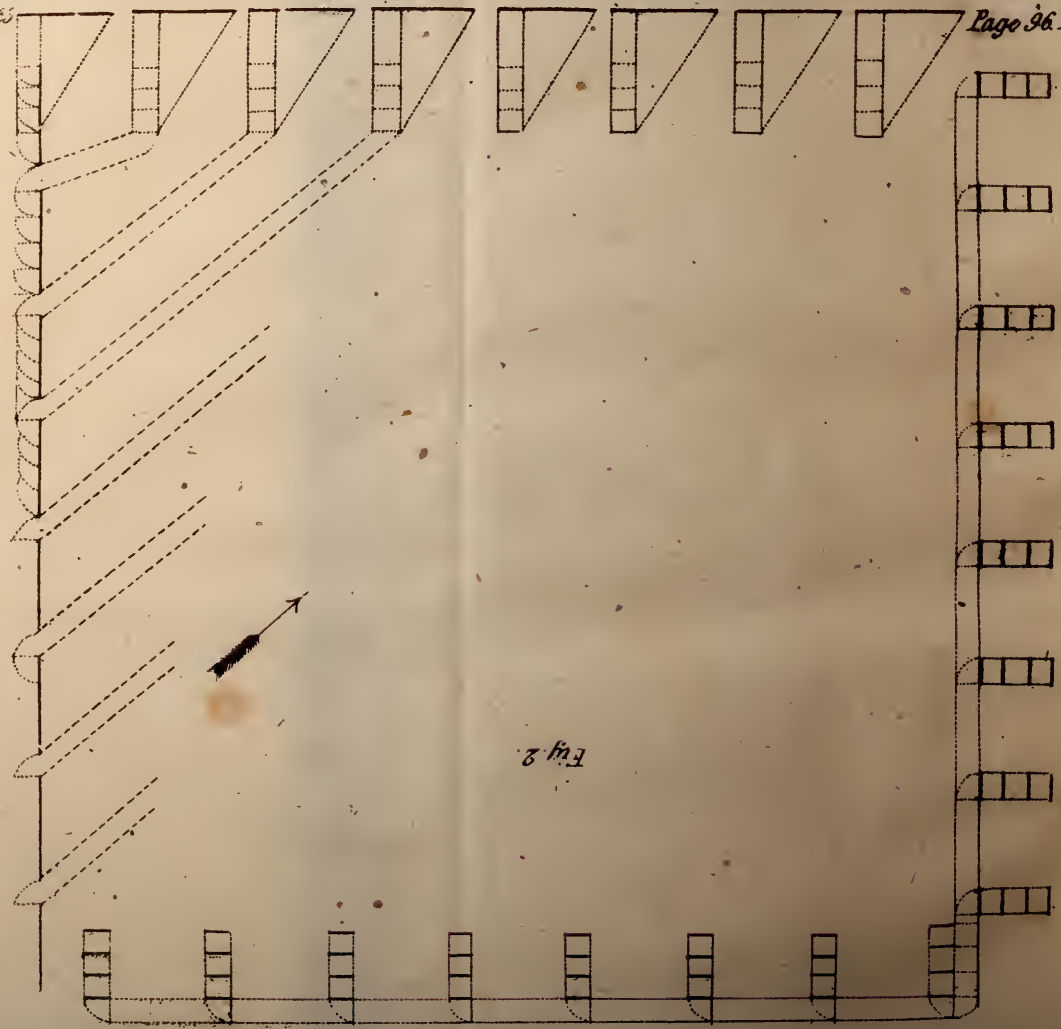
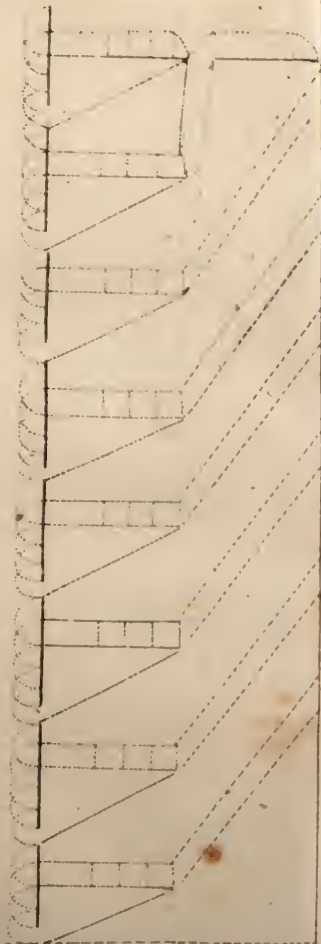
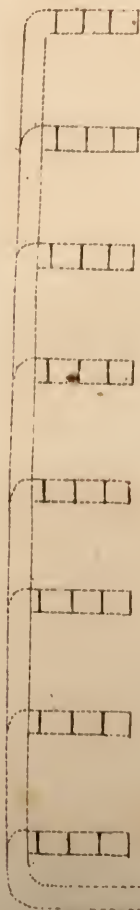


Fig 2





Or the brigadier general orders the colonel, 1st regiment, to give these commands.

The colonel of the second line, of squadron columns, commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Forward—squadrons left—trot.*
3. MARCH.
4. *Column right.*

And as soon as his line is in the rear of the first, in the new direction:

1. *Squadrons right.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.

If the distance is 200 paces, the second line marches forward the necessary distance.

If desired, the first line, at whole distance, is formed *right front into line*; the second line has then but a distance equal to its front to march.

To change front to the left is executed on the same principles, by inverse means and commands.

612.—The brigade being in two lines at whole distance, to change front, the right thrown back about 90 degrees, the brigadier general commands, or, by instruction, the colonel 1st regiment commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Platoons left wheel.*
3. MARCH.
1. *Left—front into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Platoons right about wheel.*
4. MARCH. (See No. 488.)

The colonel 2d regiment commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Forward—squadrons left—trot.*
3. MARCH.

And having marched a distance equal to its front, and one squadron more, *column right*, and being in rear of the first line: 2. *Squadrons right*; 3. MARCH; 4. HALT.

If desired, the first line, as above, is formed *right--front into line*; the colonel of the second, after putting his regiment in motion, commands, *column half right*; and marches a diagonal course to the point where the right of his regiment is to rest.

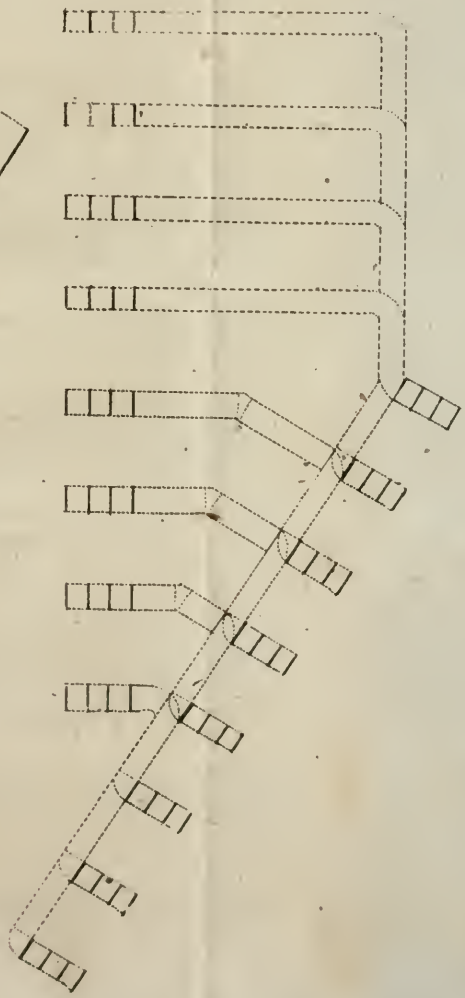
To throw back the left of the lines, the principle is the same, commands and means inverse.

613.--The brigade being in two lines, 300 paces distance, to change front obliquely, right forward, notice having been sent to the colonel of the second line, the brigadier general orders the colonel 1st regiment, or himself commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Change front--right forward.*
3. MARCH.

The 1st regiment changes front--*right forward*, as in No. 513.

At the third command, the sergeant major 2d regiment takes post at the proper distance directly in rear of the right of the left squadron of the first line, new position, and the colonel 2d regiment commands: 2. *Forward--squadrons right--trot*; 3. MARCH. He adds: 4. *Column half left*, so as to give the head of the column a direction parallel with the new line. (If the change of front is very slight, this change of direction may be omitted.) So soon as the head of the rear squadron is opposite the sergeant major, the colonel commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Regulate by the left*; its captain, under the direction of a field officer, or the adjutant, turns to the left, and conducts his column into position, with its head against the sergeant major; the other squadrons turn, with proper intervals, to form the new line of columns parallel to the new front (their right guides preceding them to mark their positions.)



A  
 and  
 of th  
 If  
*from*  
 his  
 and  
 right  
 To  
 the s

61  
 tanc  
 havi  
 brig  
 him

Th  
 No.  
 At  
 ment  
 of th  
 posit  
*Forw*  
 4. Co  
 a dir  
 of fro  
 omitt  
 oppos  
*Atter*  
 the d  
 the le  
 head  
 turn,  
 unns  
 cedin



To *change front—left forward*, is executed on the same principles by inverse means.

---

## ARTICLE FOURTH.

### ECHELONS.

614.—The brigade being in line, to march forward in echelon, the brigadier general commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Squadrons by the right (or left)—forward in echelon.*
3. MARCH.

The colonels conform to No. 540; that of the 2d regiment giving the command only when the left squadron of the 1st has taken its distance (which is squadron front and regimental interval).

If the brigadier general desire to keep in line any portion of the brigade not yet in echelon, he commands, or sounds, HALT, at the proper time; or he advances the brigade.

The brigade being in echelon, to make face to a flank; to retire in echelon; to form line to the front—the brigadier general gives the commands prescribed for the colonels, Nos. 542, 544, 550; and what is there prescribed is conformed to in both regiments.

615.—The brigade being in line, to march in echelon by wing, either flank advanced, the brigadier general commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Wings by the left (or right)—forward in echelon.*
3. MARCH.

These commands are repeated in succession by the colonels, and the movement is executed as in No. 555.

The brigade being in echelon by wing, to form or to march in echelon by squadron, he commands as in No. 540, and the movement is executed as prescribed, No. 556.

The brigade being in echelon by squadron, if the brigadier general wish to form it in echelon by wing, he commands as in No. 557.

616.--In all cases, to make partial changes in the echelon order of the brigade, he sends orders to the colonel, who conforms to the school of the regiment.

617.--The brigade being in line, to retire by alternate squadrons, the brigadier general commands:

1. *Attention.*
2. *Retire by alternate squadrons.*
3. *Regulate by the right (or left.)*
4. MARCH.

The brigadier general sounds the signal for the desired gait.

The colonels repeat these commands; the lieutenant colonels and captains conform to No. 560, the lieutenant colonels commanding, *regulate by the left*; (the original "right" of the brigadier general's command.)

The brigadier general sounds the signal, HALT; when the retiring line faces to the front.

The colonels then command: 1. RETIRE; 2. MARCH; 3. *Regulate by the left*; the captains conform to No. 560.

The lieutenant colonels give the same commands, when the line of even companies next retires.

This evolution is important for a retreat, in good order, before a superior enemy.

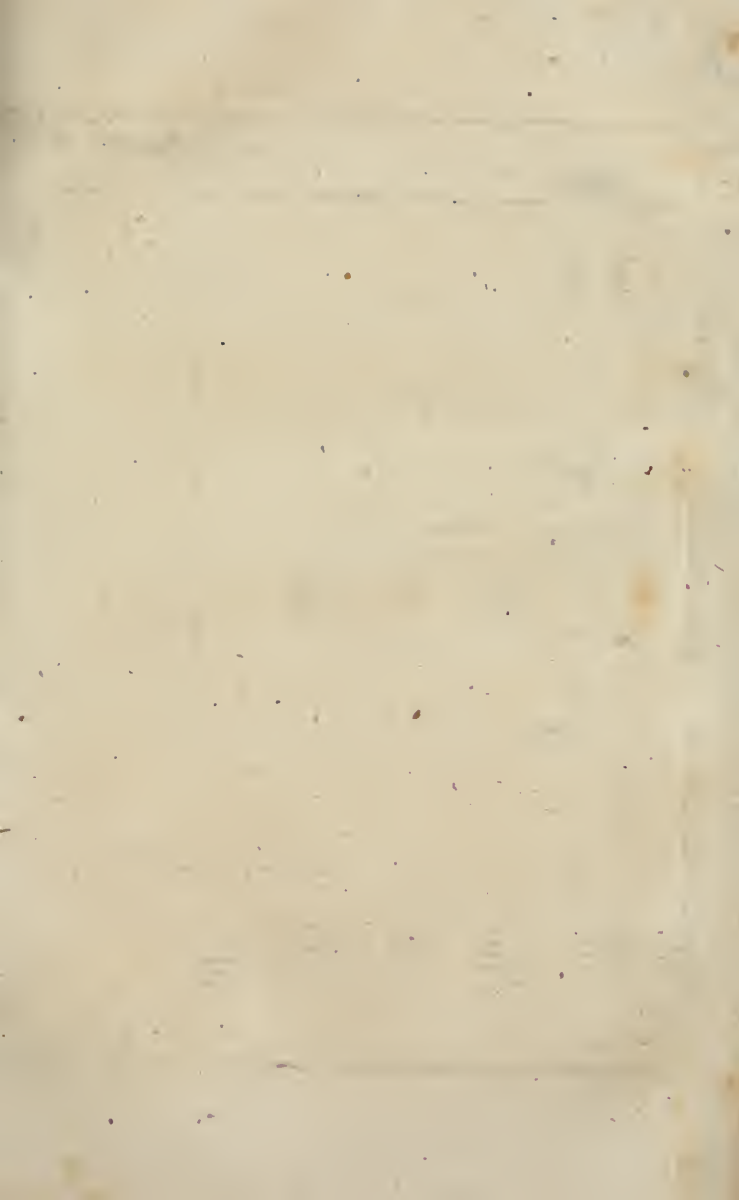


Fig. 1.

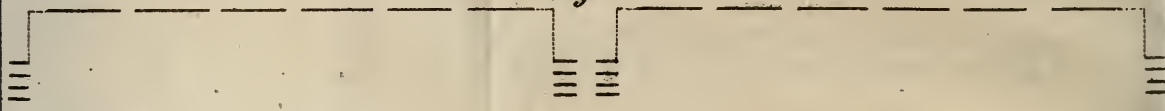
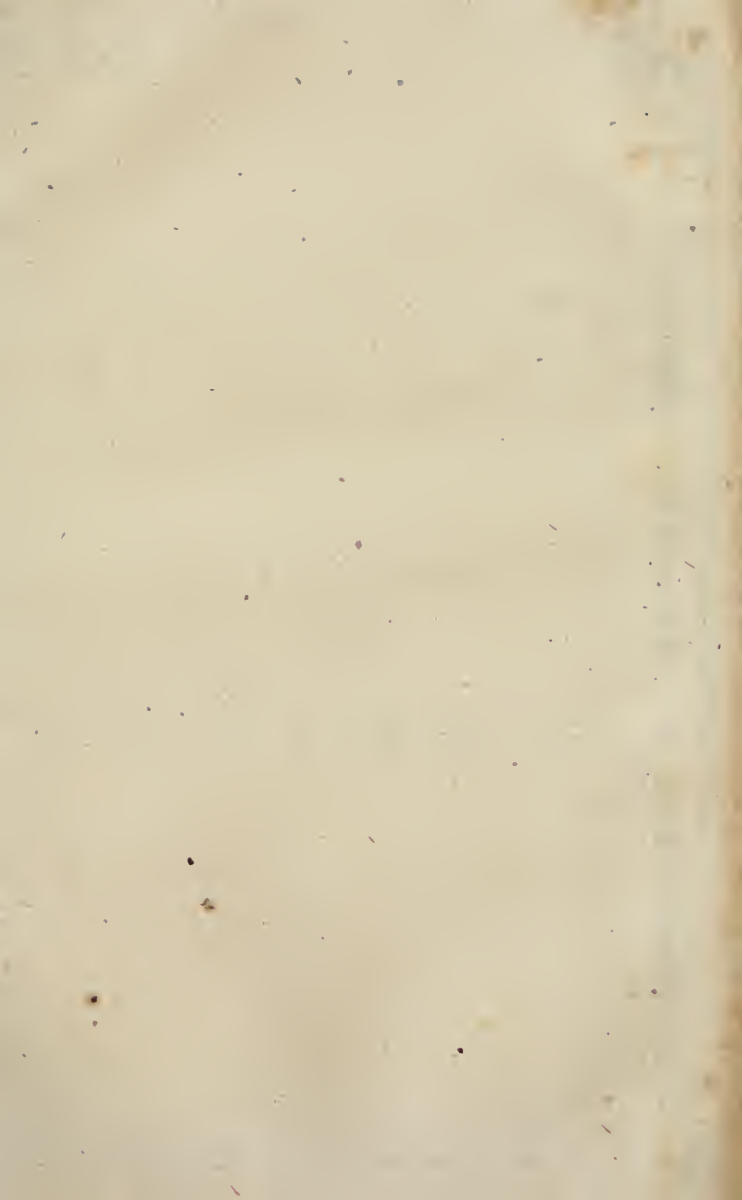
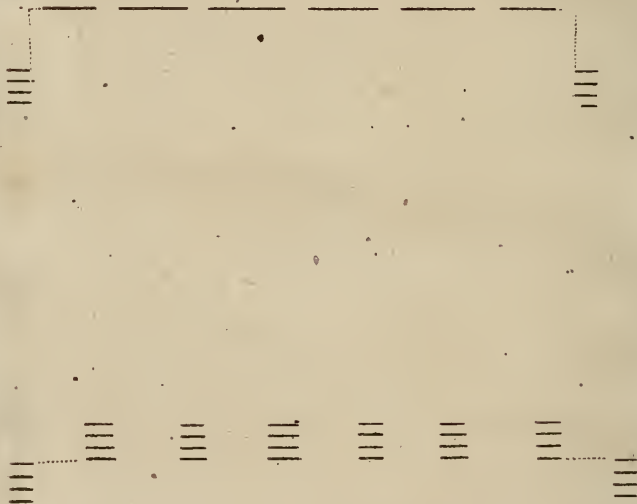


Fig. 2.







in  
m-

nd  
be  
be  
ed  
be

nd  
re  
to  
to  
nd.  
to  
an

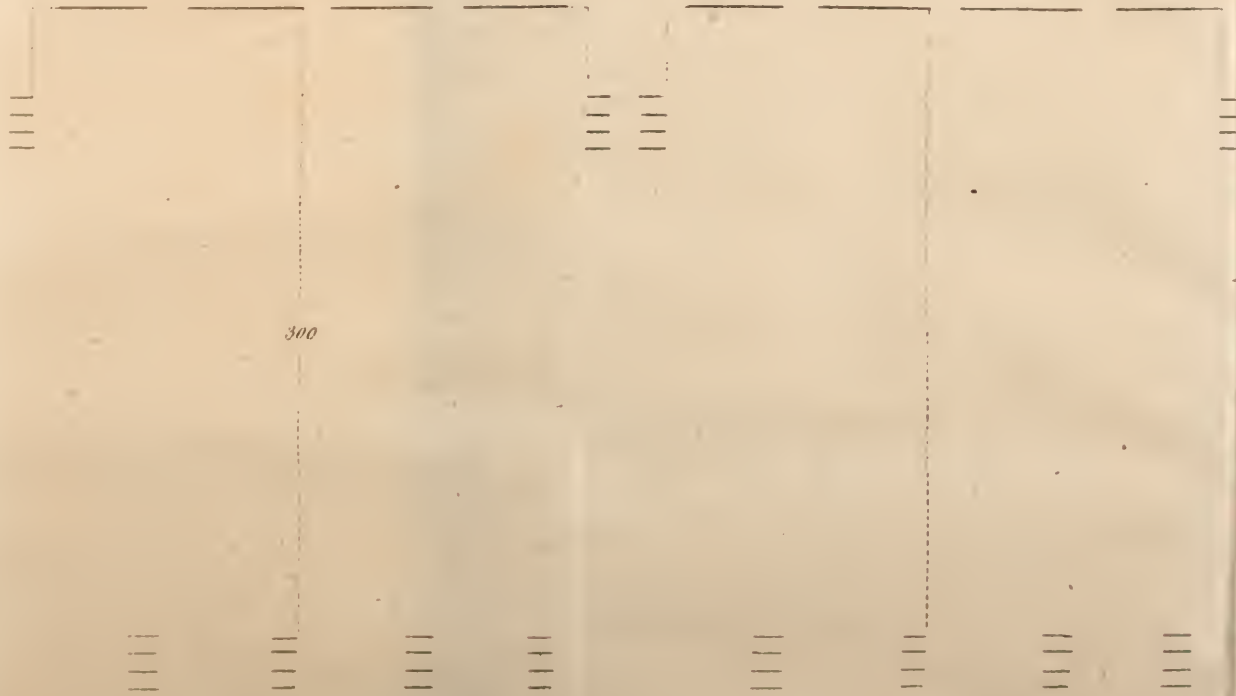
on

ht  
I,  
ks

in  
ne  
th  
on

at-  
st;  
la-

300





## ARTICLE FIFTH.

## THE CHARGE.

618.—The charge is executed by several regiments in line after the same principles, and by the same commands, as those prescribed for the regiment.

In two lines, while it is important that the second should be near to improve the effect produced by the first, it must not be so close as to be involved in the confusion of a repulse; this danger is greatly diminished by its advance in squadron columns; but it must not be nearer than 300 paces from the first line.

To conceal a superiority of force, or where the ground does not admit of its full deployment, squadrons are placed behind one or both wings; they may serve to outflank the enemy, seconding the charge; and also to pursue him. They receive their instructions beforehand.

When infantry is charged from column, it is better to attack it from several columns, at different points, than from one column of useless depth.

619.—The order of battle of a brigade depends upon the amount of the cavalry force present.

The brigade being in one line, each regiment, of eight squadrons, is in order of battle as prescribed, Title I, Article 1st, with two platoon fronts between the flanks of the flanking squadrons.

The brigade being in two lines, the 1st regiment is in the order there prescribed; the regiment in second line is in line of squadron columns, 300 paces distance, with the flank squadrons retired a depth of the squadron column.

A brigade of ten squadron regiments, in order of battle, has each regiment as prescribed, Title I, Article 1st; the first line of each in the same line, and with two platoon fronts interval between the flanking squadrons.

APPLICATION OF THE GENERAL RULES FOR  
THE COMMANDS IN THE EVOLUTIONS OF A  
DIVISION OF TWO BRIGADES, EACH OF TWO  
REGIMENTS.

620.--The division being in two lines, at half distance, (regimental front and interval) to change front 90 degrees to the right on the right of the first line, and in two lines.

The major general sends notice to the commander of the second line, and orders the brigadier general of the first line, or *himself* commands:

1. *Attention.*
  2. *Platoons right wheel.*
  3. MARCH.
1. *Attention.*
  2. *Left front into line.*
  3. MARCH.

COMMANDS.

B. general 1st brigade.	Colonels 1st brigade, (and line.)	B. general 2d brigade.	Colonels 2d brigade.
<p>1. Attention.</p> <p>2. Platoons right wheel—trot.</p> <p>3. MARCH.</p> <p>1. Left—front into line—trot.</p> <p>2. MARCH.</p> <p>1. Attention.</p> <p>2. Form squadrons—trot.</p> <p>3. MARCH.</p> <p>1. On right of 2d regiment—close column—fours—left—trot.</p> <p>2. MARCH.</p> <p>1. Forward—trot.</p> <p>2. MARCH.</p> <p>3. Guide right.</p> <p>1. On rear squadron, by platoon—right into line of columns.</p> <p>2. MARCH.</p>	<p>FIRST REGIMENT.</p> <p>1. Attention.</p> <p>2. Platoons right wheel—trot.</p> <p>3. MARCH.</p> <p>1. Left—front into line—trot.</p> <p>2. MARCH.</p> <p>SECOND REGIMENT.*</p> <p>1. Attention.</p> <p>2. Platoons right wheel—trot.</p> <p>3. MARCH.</p> <p>4. Forward—column half left.</p> <p>5. Guide right.</p> <p>1. Column half right.</p> <p>2. Attention.</p> <p>1. Left—front into line.</p> <p>2. MARCH.</p>	<p>FIRST REGIMENT.</p> <p>1. Attention.</p> <p>2. Form squadrons—trot.</p> <p>3. MARCH.</p> <p>1. On right of 2d regiment—close column—fours—left—trot.</p> <p>2. MARCH.</p> <p>1. Forward—trot.</p> <p>2. MARCH.</p> <p>3. Guide right.</p> <p>1. On rear squadron, by platoon—right into line of columns.</p> <p>2. MARCH.</p>	<p>SECOND REGIMENT.</p> <p>1. Attention.</p> <p>2. Form squadrons—trot.</p> <p>3. MARCH.</p> <p>1. On right squadron—close column—trot.</p> <p>2. MARCH.</p> <p>1. Forward—trot.</p> <p>2. MARCH.</p> <p>3. Guide right.</p> <p>1. On rear squadron, by platoon—right into line of columns.</p> <p>2. MARCH.</p>

## OBSERVATIONS.

If the 2d line be in line of deployed squadrons, the first movement would be anticipated.

The close column may be deployed *on right into line*, after which the brigadier general would command: *Forward by platoons*—MARCH—HALT.

In the simpler evolutions the commands of the major general indicate at once the whole movement, and are communicated throughout, if not heard, by the repetitions.

*Example.*—The division marching in open column, to form *left front into line*, the major general commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Left front into line*; 3. MARCH.

The brigadier general, leading brigade: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Left front into line*—trot; 3. MARCH.

The brigadier general, 2d brigade: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Trot*—column half left; 3. MARCH. 1. *Column half right*; 1. *Left front into line*; 2. MARCH. The first turn being directed to a point the depth of his first regiment in column, in rear of the point its right shall occupy in line, and there commanding the second turn.

If the major general command, 2. *In each brigade*—*left front into line*, the commander, 2d brigade, would give the same commands above prescribed for the first brigade; or *left*—*front into line of columns*.

## PART THIRD.

---

### SKIRMISH DRILL FOR MOUNTED TROOPS.

---

#### ARTICLE FIRST.

SEC. 1. A Company consists of one Captain, one 1st Lieutenant, two 2d Lieutenants, five Sergeants, four Corporals, one Farrier, one Blacksmith, two Buglers, and from sixty to eighty privates.

SEC. 2. In all exercises the companies shall be designated as squadrons, and will be organised as designated in Art. 1st, Cavalry Tactics, with the following exceptions:

SEC. 3. When in line of battle there will be an interval of one yard between the left of one platoon and the right of the next. The captain will be ten yards in front of the centre of the squadron, and platoon commanders five yards in front of the centres of their platoons.

In column of platoons the captain will be on the side of the guide and ten yards outside the centre of the column; the other officers and non-commissioned officers will occupy the same position as when in line of

battle. In column of fours, twos, or file, the captain will be ten yards outside the centre of the flank of the column, on the side of the guide.

Commanders of platoons will be five yards outside the centre of the flank of their platoons and on the side of the guide.

The company being thus formed will be designated as a squadron, and will be drilled by the means and directions laid down in Cavalry Tactics for the squadron.

SEC. 4. When companies become reduced two companies should be combined, if practicable, into one squadron for drills and manœuvres.

The squadron when thus composed of two companies will be divided into four platoons, the squadron being commanded by the senior captain, the junior captain commanding the first platoon, the senior 1st lieutenant will command the fourth platoon, the next lieutenant in rank the second, and the next, the third; the other lieutenants will act as file closers, and will take their positions one pace behind the second file from the right or left of their platoons.

### TO LINK.

To link after dismounting, the man stands to horse, faces about to the rear, takes the link which hangs from the halter ring of the horse of his left file in his right hand, seizes his own horse by the bit near the mouth, and draws the horse of his left file towards his own until he can hook the snap into the curb ring; in hooking the nails of his right hand are down.

When he dismounts he leaves the reins over the pommel of the saddle.

To facilitate the linking, the horse holder should bear his horse's head well towards number three.

## ARTICLE SECOND.

## SKIRMISH DRILL FOR MOUNTED TROOPS.

## SEC. 5. Preliminary remarks.

For this drill the men should be dressed, so as to secure the greatest freedom of action, as in the blouse or sack, and in the forage cap with the chin-strap down. The revolver will be worn in a belt-holster upon the right side of the man. The gun will be slung across his back, with the butt near his right hip. In addition to the usual equipment of a cavalry soldier each man will be provided with a "link," for the purpose of securing his horse whenever he dismounts. It will be buckled in the halter-ring of the headstall, and when not wanted for immediate use, will be hooked up by the snap in the same ring.

At the signal "boot and saddle," the horses will be saddled and bridled.

At the signal "to horse," the command will be formed according to the instructions already given in Cavalry Tactics.

Should the command be less than a complete company, the officer in charge of it will make such changes in its organization as are necessary in consequence of the absence of members.

Some portion of every command will be held in reserve, unless it is so small as to manifestly render it unwise to divide it. Any platoon may form the reserve; and its commander will be assigned by selection, and not according to rank.

A "set of four" means the four men who tell off together.

A "chief of four" is the right file of the set, or "number one" of the set, and will be habitually the guide of his set; when in column of fours, he will command the set to which he belongs.

He will be responsible that the men of his set never

separate from each other, and for the interval, distance and alignment.

The senior officer on drill is termed the "chief;" his next in rank is termed the "assistant."

Before skirmishing, two or three men will be detailed to accompany and protect the chief.

Preparatory to skirmishing, a platoon will take open order.

The interval between men in open order, measured from "boot to boot," is twenty-seven inches.

In a column of fours, open order, the distance between the sets of four, from croup to head, is four yards.

In a column of twos, open order, the distance from croup to head is eighteen inches.

In a column "by file," open order, the distance from croup to head is eighteen inches.

These distances and intervals are deduced from the length and breadth of the horse, and from the agreement which must exist between the depth of a column and the length of the line into which it will wheel.

The interval of twenty-seven inches will be found in practice ample to enable the men to mount and dismount in their places in line or in column, without the necessity of the alternate files moving out to the front for that purpose.

In an enemy's country, or when in danger of sudden attack or ambushade, the leading platoon of the company or scouting party should march in open order, so as to be able to get at once into action.

## TO TAKE OPEN ORDER.

SEC. 6. Being in line, right in front, the commands of the chief are :

1. *1st platoon (or 2d or 3d, as the case may be,) open order—Gallop.*
2. MARCH.



At the first command, all gather their horses; at the second command, all take the gallop, except the centre file of the platoon, which trots out directly to the front. Those on the right of the centre oblique to the right, each man continuing to oblique until he has an interval of twenty-seven inches between him and the next file on his left; those on the left of the centre continue to oblique to the left, until each man has twenty-seven inches interval between him and the next file on his right. They all then align themselves on the centre, take up its gait, and continue to move to the front until the next command of the chief.

### TO RETURN TO CLOSE ORDER.

Being in line, right in front, in open order, the commands of the chief are:

1. *Close order—Trot.*
2. MARCH.

At the first command, all gather their horses; at the second command, the centre file moves to the front at the walk, the others close in towards him at the trot; each in succession taking up the walk, and aligning on the centre as he gains his position in the line.

SEC. 7. The platoon being in line, right in front, open order, breaks into columns of fours by the commands:

1. *By fours—Trot (or Gallop.)*
2. MARCH.

At the first command, the first set of four gathers its horses, and takes the trot together at the second. After the first set has cleared the front of the line, or marched three yards, the second set moves out at the

trot (or gallop,) marches straight to the front until clear of the line, and then obliques to the right until in position in column exactly behind the first set, and at four yards distance from it, when it marches to the front to take its place in column. The third set follows the second, and so on throughout the platoon, according to the foregoing directions.

Care must be taken to avoid losing distance in this movement. The sets of four must move out promptly in turn, and oblique together. The chief commands *Guide right* when the first set is out.

A column of "twos" and "file" may be formed on the same principles and by the same means, except that the distance in these cases is only eighteen inches from head to croup.

In all formations of this drill, the same principles will be observed in regard to increasing the gait as are now established in Cavalry Tactics.

When in column of fours, twos, or file, the various methods of forming into line (front right, or left) can be executed by the commands and means laid down in Cavalry Tactics for the platoon.

When the men are not well instructed in the drill, the deployments from close order into open order, and from open order into skirmishing order, should be made at the walk or trot. Habitually they should be executed at the gallop; and in action, with the greatest possible celerity compatible with steadiness.

In deploying, the officers and non-commissioned officers will fall to the rear of the line in order to superintend the movement.

Every movement not fully described in the following pages will be understood to be executed, as is now ordered, in the school of platoon, and squadron.

**SEC. 8.** To form column of twos, open order, from column by file, marching at the walk, right in front, the commands are:

1. *Form twos, open order—Trot.*
2. MARCH.

At the second command, numbers two and four oblique to the left at the trot, and move to the front when in rear of their places in column of twos, until in line with their respective ones and threes. The leading set of twos then being at the walk, all the others close up at the trot to their places, with distance of eighteen inches, and interval from boot to boot of twenty-seven inches.

SEC. 9. To form column of fours, open order, from column by file, when marching at the walk, right in front, the commands are:

1. *Form fours, open order—Trot.*
2. MARCH.

At the first command, number one of each set continues to march at the walk to the front; twos, threes, and fours of every set, oblique to the left at the trot, each moving to the front when in rear of the place he will occupy in his set of four; when they have gained their places in line with numbers one, the leading set being at the walk, the others take up the trot, which they keep until each has arrived at the distance of four yards from the one preceding it; each in turn then takes up the walk. The chief commands *Guide right* when the first set is formed.

SEC. 10. To form column of fours, open order, from column of twos, open order, when marching at the walk, with right in front, the commands are:

1. *Form fours—Trot.*
2. MARCH.

At the second command, threes and fours oblique to the left at the trot, until opposite their places in the sets of four, when they move to the front, taking up the walk when in line with ones and twos. The chief commands *Guide right* when the movement is completed. Ones and twos preserve the walk and direction during the movement; and after the other files have moved out must take care not to diminish the distance left by them. If the column is trotting when the movement is ordered, it will be executed at the gallop.

SEC. 11. To break from column of fours into column of twos, open or close order, marching at the walk, with right in front, the commands are:

1. *By twos.*
2. MARCH.

At the second command, numbers three and four halt until numbers one and two have cleared them, when they oblique to the right, promptly, into their places in column of twos. The chief commands *Guide right* as soon as the movement is completed.

SEC. 12. To break a column of twos, in open or in close order, into column by file, when marching at the walk; right in front, the commands are:

1. *By file—Trot.*
2. MARCH.

At the second command, number one of the leading set takes the trot. As soon as he has cleared number two of the first set, number two obliqued to the right at the trot, and enters the column behind number one. Number three then moves in his place in column at the trot, followed by number four; who, by obliquing at the trot, takes his place in rear of number three; and

so on throughout the column, each even-numbered file obliquing at the trot as soon as the odd-numbered file on his right has cleared him. The files must move very promptly and exactly in their proper time, so as not to lose distance in this movement.

Being in column of twos, wheels to the left may be executed when the right is in front; or to the right with the left in front; but not the reverse of these, for then the twos would be inverted in their respective fours, and confusion would result on account of the change in position of the horse-holder.

SEC. 13. To deploy forward as skirmishers, from a line, right in front, halted, or marching at any gait, the commands are:

1. *On (such) set—Deploy as skirmishers—Gallop.*
2. MARCH.

At the second command, all take the gallop except the designated set, which trots out to the front. Those on the right and left of it oblique at the gallop to the right and left, each set taking up the trot when on line with the directing set, and at fifteen yards from the nearest file of the next set on the side of direction.

In this movement the chiefs of four will be held responsible for the direction and interval and alignment of the men of their respective sets, and will see that the sets are at proper intervals from each other. The chief will halt the line when it has reached the point where it is to act.

The following movements will enable cavalry, when on a march, to get into action with the least possible delay, in case of an attack when passing a defile or of any other ambuscade.

It is understood that always, when dismounted to fight, the horse-holders remain mounted, unless otherwise ordered.

In all the manœuvres of this article, the commands numbered "1" are cautionary.

---

### ARTICLE THIRD.

SEC. 14. To dismount to fight when in column of fours, open order, right in front, halted or marching at any gait, to meet an enemy on the left of front, the commands are:

1. DISMOUNT TO FIGHT.
2. ACTION FRONT AND LEFT.
3. COMMENCE FIRING.

At the first command, all halt, spring to the ground, link horses, unslung rifles, and step one yard to the front. At the second command, the first set moves forward four yards, and at the third command, commences firing. The other sets move at the double-quick obliquely to the left, and take their places on the line with the first set. Each set, as soon as it arrives upon the line, commences firing.

In case it be desired to form the line towards the right of the head of the column, the commands are:

1. DISMOUNT TO FIGHT.
2. ACTION FRONT AND RIGHT.
3. COMMENCE FIRING.

All the sets except the first will then gain their places in the line by obliquing to the right. The sets will be in line by inversion. The men in each set will be in direct order.

SEC. 15. Being in column of fours, open order, right in front, marching at any gait, or halted, to meet an attack on left of rear, the commands are :

1. DISMOUNT TO FIGHT.
2. ACTION REAR AND LEFT.
3. COMMENCE FIRING.

At the first command, all halt, spring to the ground, link horses, unsling rifles, and step one yard to the front. At the second command, the men of the rear set face to the right, and, led by their chief, file to the right around the rear set of horses to a line five yards in rear of their croups.

At the second command, all the other sets face to the left, and move at the double-quick. Each man as he clears the column moves obliquely to the left and rear to his place on the line with the rear set.

If it be desired to get at once into action, the chief commands *Commence firing* as soon as the set first on the line is established. This set then commences the fire; and each of the others takes it up in succession as it arrives upon the line; and in all of the following movements the same rule will be observed.

SEC. 16. Being in column of fours, open order, right in front, marching at any gait, or halted, to meet an attack from the right of the column, the commands are:

1. DISMOUNT TO FIGHT.
2. ACTION RIGHT.

At the first command, all halt, spring to the ground, link horses, unsling rifles, and step one yard to the front. At the second command, all move briskly upon a line five yards outside the right flank of the column, where they take their places, in line of battle, faced to the right. The sets will be in order by inversion;

But the men in each set will be in direct order, the chief being on the right. From this position they may be deployed forward as skirmishers, if it be desired.

SEC. 17. When in column of fours, open order, right in front, halted or marching, to meet an attack from the left, the commands are :

1. DISMOUNT TO FIGHT.
2. ACTION LEFT.

At the first command, all halt, spring to the ground, link horses, unsling rifles, and step one yard to the front. At the second command, all move briskly to the left, and place themselves on a line five yards outside the left flank of the column, facing to the left of it, and in their proper places in line of battle. From this position they may be deployed forward as skirmishers, if desired.

SEC. 18. Being in column of twos, with right in front, marching at any gait, or halted, to meet an enemy on the left of front, the commands are :

1. *By twos, left wheel*—MARCH.
2. DISMOUNT TO FIGHT.
3. ACTION FRONT AND LEFT.

At the first command, twos wheel to the left and halt. At the second command, all dismount, link horses, unsling rifles, and step one yard to the front. At the third command, the leading set moves to a line five yards to the right of the right flank, as now formed, and facing in that direction. The others move obliquely to their right and front, at the double-quick, and take their places on line with the first.



If it be desired to form the line towards the right of the head of the column, the commands are:

1. *By twos, left wheel*—MARCH.
2. DISMOUNT TO FIGHT.
3. ACTION FRONT AND RIGHT.

Each of the sets in rear of the leading set will then gain its place in the line by passing through the interval on the right of its set of horses, and moving obliquely to the right and front, to its place in line with the leading set. The sets will be in line by inversion.

SEC. 19. Being in column of twos, right in front, marching at any gait, or halted, to meet an enemy in rear, the commands are:

1. BY TWOS, LEFT WHEEL.
2. DISMOUNT TO FIGHT.
3. ACTION REAR AND LEFT.

At the first command, all wheel by twos into line to the left, and halt. At the second command, all dismount, link horses, unsling rifles, step one yard to the front, and await the next command. At the third command, the rear set faces to the left, and moves at the double-quick to its place on a line five yards to the left of the left flank, as now formed, and facing in that direction. The other sets face obliquely to the left, and move off at the double-quick to their places in the line with the rear set.

If it be desired to form the line to the right instead of the left, the first two commands are the same as in the other case; the third command is: "ACTION REAR AND RIGHT;" at which the rear set takes its place on the line as before, and others pass through the intervals to the left of their sets of horses, respectively, and take their places in succession on the left of the set

first established. The sets will then be in line by inversion.

SEC. 20. Being in column of twos, marching at any gait, or halted, with right in front, to dismount to fight, in order to meet an enemy on the right flank, the commands are :

1. *By twos, left wheel—MARCH.*
2. DISMOUNT TO FIGHT—*Action right.*

At the first command, the twos wheel into line to the left and halt. At the second command, all dismount and link. In linking, the men remain faced to the front, and take the link in the left hand and the bit in the right. After linking, they face about, unslung rifles, and take their places in a line five yards outside the croups of the horses. The cautionary words, *Action right*, should be uttered immediately after "DISMOUNT TO FIGHT."

The method of linking is changed in this instance to avoid the inconvenience which might result from the men having to stoop under the links, after linking, in order to pass to their position in rear of the horses.

SEC. 21. Being in column of twos, right in front, marching at any gait, or halted, to dismount to fight, to meet an enemy on the left, the commands are :

1. *By twos, left wheel—MARCH.*
2. DISMOUNT TO FIGHT.

At the first command, wheel by twos into line to the left and halt; and at the second command, all dismount, link horses, unslung rifles, step five yards to the front and stand fast.

\* In case it should be desired in any of the preceding manœuvres to form the line in an oblique direction, the

commands would be the same; but the set first in the line would be placed in the desired direction, and the others would conform to it. The chief will judge from the circumstances which of the manœuvres to adopt—whether the flank, the front, or the rear.

In all the cases of this article the command “COMMENCE FIRING” will be the signal for the set first on the line to open fire. The other sets, if not on the line when it is given, will commence firing as soon as practicable after they arrive on the line.

## ARTICLE FOURTH.

SEC. 22. To deploy as skirmishers, when dismounted, the command is:

### 1. *On (such) set*—DEPLOY—FORWARD.

At this command, the platoon springs forward at the double-quick. The sets on the right of the directing set move obliquely towards the right until opposite their places in line of battle, when they move to the front, aligning by the left.

The sets on the left of the directing set move obliquely towards the left until opposite their places in line of battle, when they move to the front, aligning by the right. All move forward until halted by the chief.

When in proper position in line of battle, thus deployed, there will be fifteen yards between sets and three feet between files in each set.

The firing will commence at the command of the chief.

If it be desired to deploy on the line already occupied, the command will be, *On (such) set*—DEPLOY.

The directing set stands fast; the sets to the right and left of it face to the right and left, respectively,

and move at the double-quick to take their intervals; then face to the front, and align themselves on the directing set.

SEC. 23. To deploy as skirmishers, mounted from a column of fours, right in front, the commands are:

1. *On (such) set*—DEPLOY—GALLOP.
2. MARCH.

At the second command, the directing set trots out to the front; those in front of it oblique to the right at the gallop; those in rear to the left at the gallop; and all take the trot when they have gained their intervals of fifteen yards, aligning themselves by the directing set. The chief will halt the line when it has arrived where it is to act.

To assemble the skirmishers into line or column again, the chief will place himself at, or otherwise indicate, the point at which the directing set is to rest, and have the rally sounded. At this signal the sets will close in at the gallop upon the indicated point and take their places in line of battle.

When the line is formed, it will be broken into column, in order to advance or retire as may be necessary.

SEC. 24. Having been thus deployed into line for skirmishing, to commence action, the commands are:

1. DISMOUNT TO FIGHT.
2. FORWARD.
3. HALT.
4. COMMENCE FIRING.

At the first command, all, save the horse-holders, dismount, link horses, unsling rifles, step one pace to the front, and await the next order. At the second command, the line moves forward at the double-quick

until halted. At the fourth command the right file of each set delivers his fire, and he is followed in succession by the other two.

The chief of four will take care that there is always one gun loaded in his set; this will never be neglected, whether in advancing or retreating. The files of each set must depend upon each other for support and assistance; they must never separate; every kind of cover must be seized and occupied by the skirmishers; each chief of four must be alert to perceive such advantages for his set, taking care, however, that in attempting to secure them he does not separate too far from the other sets of the line to receive or give support when necessary.

The horses will be habitually kept at about one hundred yards in rear of their riders, though they should be nearer, when they can find shelter from fire which will admit of it. Fifty yards will be far enough when the enemy does not use fire-arms.

They will be under charge of a non-commissioned officer; and when it is desired to remount rapidly, should be advanced to meet their riders. The reserve will be kept mounted and where it can best protect the horses of the dismounted men and get into action best.

The deployed line will be manœuvred by the commands, signals, and means provided in the Cavalry Tactics.

If it be desired to fight mounted, the chief will command the charge. The men will then draw sabre or pistols and charge.

SEC. 25. The platoon being in column of fours, open order, right in front, and at the walk, to take close order, the commands are :

1. *Close order*—TROT.
2. MARCH.

At this command, number one of the leading set marches to the front at the walk. The other men of his set close upon him at the trot until each has gained his place in the set of four in close order. The set then walks. The other sets close at the trot in the same manner, each walking when it has closed to eighteen inches from that in its front.

SEC. 26. The platoon being in column of twos, right in front, open order, to take close order, the commands are:

1. *Close order.*

2. MARCH.

At this command, numbers two and four incline to the right, slightly quickening the gait, and place themselves boot to boot with numbers one and three.

SEC. 27. To form column of fours, in close order, when marching in column of file at the walk, with right in front, the commands are:

1. *Form fours.*

2. TROT—MARCH.

At the second command, number one of the leading set continues to march to the front at the walk. All the others oblique to the left at the trot; each man marching to the front when in rear of his place in his set of fours in close order, and aligning by number one of his set. All of the sets (except the leading set) continue to trot until they have closed up to within eighteen inches of each other, and then take the walk.

## ARTICLE FIFTH.

SEC. 28. To sling rifles, from carry arms, the command is:

## 1. SLING RIFLES.

At this command, raise the piece with the right hand a little higher than the hip, inclining the barrel over the right shoulder, and in rear of the head; at the same time, with the left hand near the right shoulder, move the sling out from the barrel, thrust the head, right shoulder, and right arm through the opening, let the piece fall into its position, steadying it with the right hand, and drop the hands by the side.

To unsling rifles, the command is:

## 1. UNSLING RIFLES.

At this command, pass the right hand through the opening between the sling and piece near the right hip, bear the piece towards the front with the right arm, seize it with the right hand as in carry arms, and raise it a little above the right hip; at the same time, with the left hand, free the sling from the head and lower the piece to the position of carry arms.

SEC. 29. All of the movements described herein are supposed to be executed when the right is in front. It will be understood that they can all be executed when the left is in front upon the same principles by inverse means.

The men should always, after dismounting, leave their reins over the pommel of the saddle.

When more than two full companies are serving together, and their front in single rank would be unduly extended, all lines should be formed of companies in column of platoons at wheeling distance.

As far as possible, the composition of the different sets will remain unchanged; and everything should be done which will promote the mutual dependence of the men of each set on each other.

They should act together as much as possible on all kinds of duty, as well in the fatigue duties of the camp or garrison as when on drill or in action.

All details should be made as much as practicable of sets of four rather than of individuals from different sets; and the chief of four should be always in command of his set, and invested with the authority of a non-commissioned officer over it. He must see that his men stand by each other in action, and whether in the charge, in pursuit, or in retreat, that they never separate. After the men and horses are familiar with the drill, all of its movements should be executed at the gallop.

The men should be made to saddle up with the greatest possible dispatch whenever the "boot and saddle" sounds.

Always before using their guns the men must dismount.

In order to avoid fretting the horses, the men should be at least five yards from them before they commence firing.

When the men are in action on foot, they should be manœuvred with due reference to the safety of their horses.

While the horses should be so far in rear of the men as to be out of the range of the enemy's fire, they should not be so far that their riders cannot reach them before the enemy, if an attempt should be made to capture or stampede them. Generally, in open ground, one hundred yards will be about the maximum distance. They should be nearer, if they can be safe from fire.

One of the non-commissioned officers of each platoon should be left in charge of its horses when the men dismount to fight, and he will be held responsible for their



security and proper management. The other will dismount with his platoon, linking his horse to that of the nearest number one.

In this drill, inversions of platoons, and of sets of four, should be frequently practiced, but the individual men of the sets should never, either when mounted or on foot, be inverted in their sets.

When the company is about to be formed, two or three men will be detailed to accompany the chief during the drill or skirmish.

Whenever the men are dismounted, at the command "mount" they will run to their horses without unnecessary noise, unlink, and mount.

When the "rally" is sounded, the skirmishers will close upon the indicated point at the gallop, and by the quickest means.

When charging in line with pistols or sabres, the officers must ride in the rank; the captain on the right of the squadron, the first lieutenant on the left of it, the senior second lieutenant on the right of the second platoon, and the junior second lieutenant on its left. In case of the absence of any one of them, his place must not be supplied by the next in rank, except on the flank of the company.

All the commands should be habitually given with the trumpet; and, on drill, the trumpeters should always accompany the chief. It is very important that, in this drill, the men should learn perfectly what the signals mean.

## REMARKS UPON CAVALRY TACTICS AND MANŒUVRES.

The success of cavalry manœuvres depends on the rapidity, steadiness, and boldness with which they are executed. Cavalry cannot, like infantry, rely upon fire-arms as a potent support; neither can it stand firmly and defend a position, against an aggressor. On the contrary, a charge of the enemy's cavalry must inevitably overthrow it, and infantry, drawn up in line, would oppose nearly treble the number of men. Cavalry has therefore but one system of attack and defence, which consists in throwing itself rapidly upon the enemy, and in anticipating his hostile designs. These remarks have but a partial application to mounted riflemen, an arm of the service daily increasing in importance. The nature of its organization clearly demonstrates, that it is only in time of peace, and with infinite care, that cavalry can be solidly organized, so as to obtain success proportionate to its importance and expense; for though war inures it to fatigue and skirmishing, yet, unless, before entering on a campaign, it is perfectly instructed in the care necessary for the preservation of horses, and furnished with that self-possession which is only obtained by a constant habit of being on horseback, it will soon encumber the hospitals and depots of the army.

Cavalry is divided into four classes: Mounted Riflemen, Heavy Cavalry, Dragoons, and Light Cavalry.

In mounted rifle regiments the horses are principally used for the purpose of promptly reaching the point of attack, and such troops are almost invariably fought on foot, and are used in many respects in a manner

similar to light infantry. It becomes of great value in covering the retreat of an army, or in obstructing the advance of the enemy; and in broken and wooded countries, where light cavalry becomes almost useless, the mounted rifleman becomes indispensable to an army. By having this arm associated with light cavalry and horse artillery, the organization becomes complete for any enterprise. It is true these troops when dismounted are inferior in compactness to infantry, but their rapid movements enable them frequently to take the enemy by surprise and thus defeat him before he has time to perfect his dispositions for defence.

It is of the first importance that mounted riflemen should be taught to mount and dismount with rapidity and without confusion, and that the horse-holders should understand thoroughly the management of horses, so as to prevent their becoming frightened when their riders are fighting upon foot.

In European armies it has been found expedient to have, in an army, a corps composed of men of large stature, protected by armor, and mounted upon strong horses; for, in a charge, weight and steadiness are often of more importance than speed. This principle, forgotten during the eighteenth century, came into notice again as soon as it was perceived what advantage Napoleon had derived by giving cuirasses to twelve regiments of cavalry.

Heavy cavalry, from the weight of their armor and size of their horses, are unable to act as skirmishers or escorts; besides, it is a corps too expensive to be uselessly exposed; but appears with confidence on the field of battle, where the most perilous attacks are reserved for it. Its duty is to charge squares and masses of infantry, and from its weight, break through the enemy's cavalry; on which account some experienced generals have considered that it would be of great advantage to arm heavy cavalry with lances, as being the weapon best fitted for a charge.\*

Dragoons were originally intended to act both as

horse and foot soldiers, to charge in line with the steadiness of cuirassiers, to skirmish with the activity of hussars, and, when dismounted, to be equal to any infantry. After much loss of time and great expense, it was found that only an inferior-body of troops had been obtained; and the dragoons of the present day are only a mixed cavalry, sufficiently strongly mounted to charge with advantage, and which, being unencumbered with any sort of armor, can be employed as skirmishers.

Light cavalry was, for a length of time, in many countries, an irregular force; but when the inconvenience of having undisciplined troops with an army began to be felt, and that petty engagements became less frequent, they were gradually embodied into regiments, and disciplined.

Whatever system may be adopted with respect to the formation of cavalry, it is certain that a numerous cavalry, whatever may be its nature, must exercise a powerful influence over the operations of a war, by spreading terror over a large tract of country, carrying off convoys, rendering the enemy's communication difficult, if not impossible, and thus destroying all the harmony which might exist in his enterprises and movements. In short almost all the same advantages may be procured, by a proper use of cavalry, as would be obtained by a general rising of the population; that is, constantly harrassing the flanks and rear of the enemy, and preventing their general from calculating anything with certainty.

In this respect, Russia has great advantages over her neighbors, as well by the quantity and quality of the horses of the Don, as by the nature of the irregular militia which she can levy at any moment. These advantages are incalculable; for though the Cossacks are of little use in the shock of a great battle (except, perhaps, for skirmishing on the flanks,) yet they are terrible in a pursuit, and in a war of out-posts. As long as the Russians had only a few regiments of irreg-

ulars, their utility was unknown, but when their number became increased to fifteen or twenty thousand, their importance began to be sensibly felt, especially in countries where the population was not hostile to them, for a general opposed to them is never certain of the safe arrival or execution of his orders: his convoys are always in danger, and his operations uncertain.

Volunteer corps of hussars or lancers, levied and organized at the breaking out of a war, ably led by hardy chiefs, such as Tettenborn, in the German war of 1813, would fulfil nearly the same purposes.

Austria has also, in the Hungarians, Transylvanians, and Croatians, a resource which other States have not got; however, the services performed by the mounted Landwehr prove that a great deal can be obtained from this species of cavalry, were it only to relieve the regular cavalry from its accessory duties, such as escorts, detachments for convoys, flankers, orderlies, &c. England possesses a fine nucleus for such a corps in her yeomanry.

All that may be said with respect to the formation of infantry, may apply to cavalry, with the exception of the following modifications:

1. Lines deployed in echiquier or in echelon, are much more suitable for cavalry than a line without intervals; whilst for infantry, a line deployed in echiquier would be too disseminated, and even dangerous, if cavalry were to penetrate and take its battalions in flank, so that the formation of infantry in echiquier is only safe as a preparatory movement before approaching the enemy, or else for lines in column of attack, able to defend themselves in every direction against cavalry. However, whether the formation in echiquier be preferred, or that of lines without intervals, the distance of the several lines from one another should be sufficient to prevent confusion, arising from the rapidity with which cavalry is driven back in case

of a charge not succeeding. It should, however, be observed, that in the formation by echiquier, the distance may be less than in lines without intervals; and that in no case should the second line be without intervals, but should be formed in columns, or at least, leave two squadrons, which may be formed in columns upon the flanks of each regiment, to facilitate the rallying of the first line, if driven back.

2. A column of attack, composed of cavalry, should never be formed in close columns; but, at full and half distance of squadrons; so as to have plenty of space to wheel and charge. This, of course, is only applicable to troops ordered to engage; for when they are at rest behind the line, they may be formed in close column, so as to take up less space of ground and diminish the space they would have to go over to engage; but it must be clearly understood, that these masses should be sheltered from artillery.

3. In consequence of a flank attack being more to be feared with respect to cavalry, than an engagement of infantry against infantry, it is necessary to establish, upon the extremities of a line of cavalry, a few squadrons echeloned by platoons, so as to be able to form, by facing to the right or left, against the enemy, who might endeavor to disturb the flank.

4. For the same reason, it is necessary to know when to order a few squadrons to charge the flank of a line of cavalry which is being attacked: if there is a corps of irregular cavalry, it should be especially reserved for this use in a battle; as, for such a purpose, it is worth as much as, and perhaps more, than regular troops.

An important observation is that especially with respect to cavalry, the command should extend in depth rather than in length; that is to say, supposing a division of two brigades to be deployed, it would not be correct for them to form line one in rear of the other, but each brigade should have two regiments in the first line, and two in the second; thus each unity of

the line would have its proper reserve in rear of it—an advantage which cannot but be appreciated, for the events of a charge are so various, that it is impossible for a general officer to be master of four cavalry regiments deployed in a single line.

If it be deemed advisable to form the division into four lines, each brigade should be formed in a column of regiments, in order that the same principle of unity could be better preserved. In a wooded or broken country, where it becomes necessary to use cavalry, it will frequently be necessary to form regiments in columns of squadrons for the charge, in order that colonels may the more easily master their commands. Circumstances will also arise where the formation of squadrons in columns of platoons will become necessary, but where troops are well drilled, and the country is sufficiently open, a column of regiments has many advantages in a grand charge. The distance between the lines should be regulated by the nature of the ground. If possible, each line should be reserved from the enemy's fire until the charge commences; but the moral effect will be increased if the enemy sees all the lines advancing before the first line comes in actual contact. In case cavalry is fighting in conjunction with infantry, all the lines may charge if it is thought advisable; but if fighting alone, one line should be held in reserve as a basis on which the others can rally.

The nature of conflict should also regulate the number of lines, for instance, if fighting in conjunction with infantry, two or three lines will suffice, and frequently one line will attain a great object, but if cavalry is fighting alone, it must depend upon its own resources, and must have three or four lines in order to reduce the chances of disaster.

In the preceding paragraphs the various formations mentioned are only suggested, and officers of experience will readily perceive whether these or other formations are adapted to his purposes, and if these are

suitable he can easily judge which are most favorable for the particular action in which he is to engage. Most of the actions referred to in this book, were on European soil, where but few fences obstruct movements of troops, but in this country by always having active men to precede the head of each column to remove such obstructions, troops can be moved with considerable celerity. For instance: suppose a regiment to advance in line through a field having a fence on the side it is approaching—by sending a few good men a sufficient number of gaps can be made to pass through by the right or left of squadrons, bearing to the front, and the line could be promptly reformed on the other side, of course such obstructions are embarrassing, but are by no means insurmountable.

The formation heretofore mentioned supposes the brigade to consist of four regiments. If it consists of five regiments we might place the fifth regiment in a third line, or we might have three regiments in the first line and two in the second.

Two essential maxims are generally allowed respecting engagements of cavalry against cavalry. The first is, that, sooner or later, the first line must be brought back; for even were it to succeed most brilliantly in a charge, it is probable that the enemy, by opposing new squadrons, would force it to rally in rear of the second line. The second maxim is, that, the troops and commanders being equal in merit, the victory will remain to him who, having the last squadrons in reserve, will know the decisive moment when to make them charge the flanks of the enemy's line already engaged with his.

At the battle of Wachau, near Leipzig, on the 16th October, 1813, two Russian regiments of light cavalry were posted in two lines in front of a small brook or drain which ran from Gossa towards Pleiss. The banks happened to be swampy, and could only be passed with difficulty, and by a leap across a wide drain with the exception of causeways made in two or three



places by the farmers for agricultural purposes. This obstacle was only partial, and, at a few hundred yards to the right, nearer Gossa, it ceased to be an impediment. On a hill facing it, was formed the whole corps of Latour Maubourg, amounting to 5,000 horse. Murat had taken the command, and began to descend the hill, directing his attack upon the two Russian regiments at its foot. The French advanced in line of regiments; certainly in one body only, that is, with no second line or reserve. No doubt they expected to dispose of their first opponents easily. The narrowness of the front to be attacked, as well as the nature of the ground, caused this powerful force to crowd into one dense mass before they came in contact with the Russian dragoons; these were overwhelmed and driven across the swamps, or over the causeways.— Many of the rearmost were killed, but the rest rallied as soon as they crossed the brook. The lancers, who were in the second line, retired by their left to another causeway, but did not cross it, and formed again.

But the enemy were unexpectedly checked by this unforeseen obstacle; their crowding and confusion increased, and, at that moment, a Russian regiment of hussars appeared in their rear. This caused a panic. The unwieldy mass became noisy and attempted to retire; the Russian light cavalry instantly followed them. The Emperor Alexander, who stood on the hill above, seized this opportunity to send off his own escort of Cossacks of the Guard, amounting to several squadrons, who passed the stream at a favorable spot near Gossa, and took the retiring mass in flank. This completed the panic, which then became a flight, and the fugitives did not draw their bridles till they had regained the protection of their own infantry.

Latour Maubourg received a severe wound, which disabled him for life; Murat was in great danger of being taken, and six guns fell into the hands of the Cossacks.

Thus 5000 of the French cavalry, led by Murat in person, were foiled by an insignificant obstacle. They were seized with a panic, and, for want of a second line on which to rally, and from which to take a fresh departure—a precaution without which no cavalry attack should be made—they were obliged to abandon their enterprise, and fly before a force of light cavalry, which, altogether, could not have amounted to 2000 men.

It is upon these two truths, that a proper idea may be based of the system of formation the most suitable for leading a large corps of cavalry to the charge.

Whatever system may be adopted, care must be taken not to deploy large corps of cavalry in lines without intervals, for they are difficult masses to manage; and if the first line failed in its charge, the second would be driven back without being able to draw the sword.

At Chateau-Thierry, in 1814, the Prussian general, Horn, with twenty-four squadrons, was ordered to keep the French in check until the Russian general, Sacken, could cross the Marne, after his defeat at Montmerail, 30th January, 1814. He formed these troops in two lines of twelve squadrons each, without intervals. The whole first line advanced to the attack. The French waited till it came to a proper distance, and routed it. These squadrons threw the second line into disorder, and carried it away, *pell mell*, in every direction over the plain.

If an attack of cavalry should be spirited, its pursuit should not be less so; but no line of cavalry should follow up a pursuit, unless it has a reserve. If it has no reserve, it should promptly rally, and follow up the pursuit with only part of its forces.

The excessive negligence, on the part of English cavalry officers, in not supporting their attacks by a reserve, frequently, during the Peninsular war, produced the most pernicious consequences. The following case was so glaring, that Lord Wellington ordered

a court of inquiry upon it: In the month of June, 1812, Major General Slade was ordered to advance from Llera in the direction of La Granga, to cover a reconnoissance. For this purpose he took with him two regiments of cavalry.

General Lallemande, having a like object, came forward also with two regiments of French dragoons, on the side of Valence de las Torrens. Slade, hearing that the French cavalry was so near, attacked it and drove it back beyond the defile of Maquilla, a distance of eight miles, his troopers, in the heat of the pursuit, breaking into a confused mass. But Lallemande had here his reserve in hand, and attacking the disorderly English horse, totally routed it.

On the other hand, instances can be given where cavalry in small force resisted the advance of large bodies of troops of all arms; as the case of General Bragg in Kentucky, in the autumn of 1862, when less than one thousand cavalry prevented General Buell's vast army from moving faster than an average of four or five miles a day. Again, when General Rosecrans advanced from Nashville to Murfreesboro, in the latter part of the same year, cavalry so retarded his advance as to compel him to move equally slow, fighting his way step by step as he advanced.

When, after a victory, infantry should continue to resist, the cavalry should not charge them, but endeavor to reach the head of the disordered masses, and cut off their retreat, for the great art of pursuit is not to cause the enemy to fly with rapidity, but to induce him to hold together for some time, whilst his escape is rendered impossible; or else, by dividing the enemy's column, to get between them and beat them in detail.

The most striking example, perhaps, of the results produced by a vigorous pursuit, is that produced by the French army after the double battle of Auerstadt and Jena, 18th of October, 1806. The Prussian army separated into several corps, was pursued, without ceasing, in every direction; could rally nowhere,

and capitulated at Erfurt, Magdeburg, Lübeck, Prenglow, and in Westphalia. The French cavalry, followed close by an indefatigable infantry, which marched from ten to twelve leagues a day, had crossed the Saale, the Elbe, and the Oder, and in spite of so many divergent marches, found itself one month after the battle, upon the borders of the Vistula. The two-thirds of the Prussian Monarchy were conquered, and its army nearly annihilated.

Of all the branches of the service, cavalry appears to be the one most difficult to manage.

Incapable of defending a position by itself, unable even to engage on many kinds of ground, easily disunited, almost totally dependent on their horses, no corps so much requires discrimination and zeal in its leaders. This art requires, in fact, a thorough knowledge of this branch of the service, and a quickness of eye which can seize rapidly the whole of a movement, and understand all its consequences.

Looking back upon the European wars from 1792 to 1815, it is remarkable what little advantage those nations, who were most celebrated for their cavalry, derived from it, although their efforts were directed against one which was supposed to possess bad horses and worse horsemen.

The Austrian cavalry, so numerous and well mounted, were almost always decimated; and, even in countries best suited to its manœuvres, could boast of but few brilliant engagements. Their generals seemed to have forgotten how to make use of them in masses.

The Prussian cavalry, so famous in the days of the great Frederick, performed no one remarkably great feat during the first three campaigns of the French Revolution; and when, after two years of peace, it appeared at Jena and Auerstadt, it was nearly annihilated.

The campaign of 1814 began under the worst auspices for the French. Invaded by all the European powers, France was overrun by their numberless cav-

alry; but what advantage did they carry off in connection with their numerical force and organization? How can we explain the bold manœuvres of Napoleon, and his success, with men overcome by fatigue? How was it that his army was not destroyed before Lavro? Why did the allies, with their numerous cavalry, suffer the reverses of Montmerail, Chateau-Thierry, Craonne, Nangis and Montereau?

The reason of the feeble success of their cavalry is easily explained. A service, whose very existence consists in activity and boldness, will lose all its vigor as soon as the operations of an army become undecided; and, if cavalry played so great a part under Frederic and Napoleon, it was because those great men never allowed that body to engage except in strong divisions, and never waited for the enemy's attack, but always anticipated it; for the moral strength of cavalry is much more easily affected than that of infantry.

We have stated above, that the strength of cavalry consists in the rapidity and steadiness of its movements. It should, therefore, take up a position which would enable it to see everything going on, and allow it to be perfectly free in its actions. Besides, no body of troops should be able to approach without being exposed to be charged; it would therefore commit a serious error, were it to support its wings with a wood, vineyard, a village accessible to the enemy's infantry, or not occupied by its own. If, however, unavoidable circumstances forced a body of cavalry to do so, it should send out patrols, so as to be warned of any movements which might be directed against it; but, should the enemy appear on its flanks, the position will be no longer tenable.

At the battle of Kollin, in 1756, fifty-five Prussian squadrons, wishing to outflank the enemy's right wing and take it in rear, overthrew the Austrian cavalry, and continued their movement between the wood of Radovesnitz and a ravine. This wood was lined

with Austrian infantry, who took the Prussians in flank, and made them retire with a loss of fourteen hundred men.

Although the ground may appear to be level, it may contain hollow roads, ditches, marshy spots, which may be totally concealed by drifts of snow or the height of the crops. From this results the necessity of having the front and flanks of a position thoroughly reconnoitred; and if this cannot be done beforehand, skirmishers should be sent out to precede the troops as they approach the enemy.

When at the battle of Talavera, July, 1809, Sir Arthur Wellesley ordered Anson's brigade of cavalry, composed of the 23d Light Dragoons and the 1st German Hussars, to charge the head of Villatte's columns, the brigade went off at a canter, and, increasing the speed as it advanced; rode headlong against the enemy; but in a few moments it came upon the brink of a hollow cleft, which was not perceptible at a distance. The French, throwing themselves into squares, opened their fire. Colonel Arenstchild, commanding the Hussars, an officer of forty years' experience, promptly reined up at the brink; but the 23d, under Colonel Seymour, continued their impetuous career, men and horses falling over each other in dreadful confusion.

The success of a charge depends upon a well regulated rapidity, accelerated by degrees, added to a perfect alignment, which will enable the whole line to reach the enemy at the same time. But in many cases, the greater or lesser degree of boldness of the men, and speed of the horses, prevent this; and a charge in line is often only a rapid succession of charges, of which the bravest men form the salient points. These are the reasons which so often cause undecided charges, and should prevent any being made on too extended a front. The failure of a charge is not always attributable to the cowardice of the horsemen. Slippery, unequal ground, renders the march difficult; rains, snows, thaws, cause the horses

to slip; many of them become frightened; in such cases no vigor can exist in the movements. Sometimes great disorder will be occasioned by beginning the charge at too great a distance; for, the troop leaders, charging under the enemy's fire, lose their points of direction; the soldier no longer marches straight before him; the intervals between the squadrons are lost, and they get jammed up together; the killed and wounded delay the general movements; the enemy charge; the disorder becomes complete.

The gradual increase of speed in a charge should be attended to; otherwise, both men and horses will be breathless when they reach the enemy. In most cases, before engaging, the cavalry will have made a tedious march. The horses, worn out with want of food and the weight of their riders, will, if uselessly galloped, be too much fatigued, after one or two charges, to attempt any decided movements during the remainder of the day; besides, if the charge is immediately begun at a gallop, the men cannot be made to keep line. It was the deep conviction of this truth which caused General Lasalle, one of the best cavalry officers of his day, on seeing a body of the enemy's cavalry charging at full gallop for a long distance, to exclaim—"There go lost men!" and it was soon after completely routed by its opponents, who had advanced at a trot. There are, however, a few cases in which, whatever state the cavalry be in, the charge must be begun at a gallop. For example: when an ambushed enemy suddenly attacks cavalry, it must then meet the attack at the height of its speed, to oppose the enemy with a shock equal to its own.

In the retreat of the allies from Bautzen, May, 1813, Blucher, having passed his main column across the bridge and through the defile of Haynau, still defended the entrance to the village with the skirmishers of his rear guard; but finding that the nature of the ground in rear of Haynau favored his purpose, he formed five regiments of cavalry in mass behind the

village of Baudmanskorf, in a situation completely concealed from the enemy's view by the village and an intervening rise of ground. This ambuscade was formed obliquely to the line of retreat of the main column, which traversed an uninclosed country, and to the southward of that line. When all was arranged, three regiments forming the rear guard gave up the bridge at Haynau and retired, following the main column to a good rear guard position, on the direct road to Liegnitz, a few miles from Haynau. Here they halted and showed front, inviting an attack.

As soon as Ney's advanced guard had passed the defile, entered the plain, and deployed to attack the Prussian infantry rear guard, a preconcerted signal was given—the burning of a windmill. The allied cavalry, masked till that moment, now deployed in two lines on the right of the enemy, and moved rapidly onward to attack him in flank. It was necessary that the charge should be made at a gallop the whole way, so as not to give the French time to recover; and the success of this charge was a loss to the French of 1500 men and eleven guns.

The art of moving cavalry—which consists in concealing its movements, and in rapidly bringing together a superior force upon the weak points of the enemy; in avoiding useless engagements, in order to overwhelm him; keeping part in reserve, and making it suddenly appear at the decisive moment—this art cannot be so ably exercised in a flat and open country, although this is supposed to be best for cavalry movements. Districts consisting of undulating plains, sprinkled, here and there, with woods, villages and farms, where the hills have gentle slopes, and the valleys are tolerably wide, will enable superior officers to obtain the greatest success with inferior forces.

Cavalry should never appear before the enemy except to engage. To keep it exposed whole hours, without charging, is to misunderstand the spirit of this service and to destroy its moral courage. The



men cannot become animated at the sight of their companions killed or wounded, nor the horses from the effect of the cannon balls and shells which fall among them. It is true that cavalry cannot always be kept sheltered, in an action, from the enemy's fire until the moment for charging. Its presence is sometimes indispensable in certain points which cannot remain unprovided with troops, and there may be no rising ground to conceal it; but this circumstance must be considered an unfortunate exception. Napoleon's battles present many examples of a similar use of cavalry, which often obliged it to be renewed, and finally caused its ruin. By a natural consequence of the principle above stated, cavalry should not be posted on the ground it is to defend, but in the rear of it. The mechanism of cavalry engagements requires that changes should succeed one another rapidly, so that, its efforts being continual, the advantage may remain with the most obstinate; but, to effect this, there must be a second line in support, and in many cases a reserve. The necessity for this support lies, first of all, in the human heart; men expose themselves to danger with greater confidence, if they feel that they have companions in their rear, ready to back them; it is requisite, also, from the uncertainty of the success of cavalry, and in consequence of the disorder which follows even among conquerors; so that, an able enemy, possessing a reserve, would be certain of obtaining the final advantage over an imprudent cavalry which had attacked it without having the same resource. Besides, the rally, after a defeat, would be excessively difficult, if not impossible.

It should, however, be observed, that, in case there was no second line of cavalry, the first might take refuge in rear of its infantry. Still, in such a case, great loss would be sustained, and the advantage not easily obtained again. At the battle of Wurzburg, the French cavalry, without having a reserve, engaged the Austrian cavalry, whom they drove back; but the lat-

ter had formed a second line, which, having re-established the engagement, not only repulsed the French cavalry but completely demoralized it; for, although the fire of the infantry kept the conquerors in check, no efforts of General Jourdan could bring back his discouraged cavalry to the charge.

The second line is generally from 300 to 400 yards in rear of the first, and this distance is considered sufficient to prevent the support being disordered, should the first line meet with a repulse; its wings should extend beyond those of the latter; this formation will enable it to charge the enemy's troops, in the event of their taking the wings of the first line in flank or rear; the support may also, in the same manner as the first line, have columns in rear of its wings; and, when the first line charges at a gallop, the second follows at a trot.

When one body of cavalry has defeated another, the conquerors should rally and manœuvre, to attack the flank of the troops which the enemy protected; it was to this manœuvre that Conde, at the age of 22, owed the victory of Rocroi. After having defeated the Spanish cavalry of the left wing, he ordered Gassion to continue the pursuit with part of the first line, whilst he himself, with the remainder and the support, broke through the German and Italian infantry. Having then learnt that his left wing was defeated and pursued by the Spanish cavalry of the opposite wing, he passed in rear of the latter, charged them, and retook their prisoners.

There only remained on the field four veteran regiments of Spanish infantry, who were formed into a solid mass, and defended by eighteen pieces of cannon. Conde rallied his fatigued cavalry, and after a fourth charge, succeeded in penetrating the ranks of this brave infantry; his victory was complete.

But such manœuvres require a great deal of coolness in the commanding officer; for a man is easily carried away by the appearance of the first advantage, and neglects the opportunity of obtaining a greater.

From the above it will be seen that, in general, a charge of cavalry should be directed upon the extremity of a line, and not upon the centre; and that point which will soonest enable the conqueror to cut off the enemy's line of retreat, should be the one selected for attack.

The most unfavorable charge for cavalry, is that which is directed against a well disciplined infantry; for infantry, in its usual formation, present about two men to every horseman, and can even double this number, when preparing to receive cavalry. Some tacticians, struck with the danger to which infantry is exposed under such a circumstance, and knowing the injurious impressions made upon young soldiers by the menacing aspect of a charge, have proposed various means to defend them from it.

Amongst others, Gæbert proposed to fix picquets, fastened together by means of ropes, in front of the squares; and Bohán, who is an authority in cavalry movements, approved of this system; but any one who has been in action, knows the impossibility of making use of either of the above, or of *chevaux-de-frise*, or of crow's-feet, which were employed when there was no rapidity in the movements. It is, therefore, only by its fire and able formation, that infantry can expect to resist cavalry.

To charge infantry there are certain favorable moments, which should be instantly seized, and when its resistance will be neither long nor destructive; these are: when a column on the march is engaged under a well directed fire, leaving the wounded in rear, or appearing to hesitate; it should then be taken in flank; such was General Kellerman's manœuvre at Marengo. He was in line with a feeble brigade, on the right flank of Desaix's division, and concealed by means of vines hung to the trees; the 9th Light Infantry was actively engaged with a column of Austrian grenadiers, who were following up the success which had, till then, been obtained by the Austrians;

Kellerman immediately formed column, left in front, charged and dispersed the grenadiers, which decided the victory in favor of the French.

Another favorable opportunity for charging is, when the enemy's line is altering its formation. In such a case no time should be lost, but the charge made as rapidly as possible.

The moral state of the enemy should always be taken into account. If former actions have proved its valor, no attack should be made without being preceded by artillery, otherwise the attacking force would subject itself to serious losses without any result; on the other hand, a dispirited infantry will often give way at the mere approach of a body of cavalry. In some cases cavalry is obliged to act dismounted; and although it cannot expect to be equal to infantry, it may still be found a good substitute. Thus, a body of cavalry, forming the rear detachment of a rear guard, may have to defend a bridge, a defile, or a barricade; whilst the remainder of the rear guard continues its retreat; in such a case part of the men will have to dismount and keep back the enemy with the fire of their carbines; and as soon as they consider the rear guard in safety, they remount and rapidly join it. In like manner an advance guard can prevent a retreating enemy from destroying a bridge, or making preparations for defence at the head of a defile; its fire will either stop these operations, or delay them until the infantry comes up. In this manner the French dragoons, having dismounted, prevented the British, in the retreat to Corunna, 1808, from blowing up the bridges of Puento Ferrera and Berleira; also, 1811, a regiment of dismounted cavalry protected the retreat of two other regiments of the same service, through a defile near Usagre; but, in such cases, the cavalry soldier acts as a skirmisher, does not leave his position, fires from behind some natural or artificial obstacle, and it is seldom that he is engaged against other troops than dismounted cavalry, like himself.

## RECONNOISSANCES.

A reconnoissance has for its object the examination of the position, strength, movements and intentions of the enemy.

To be able to reconnoitre with any accuracy, requires quickness of eye, presence of mind, a great deal of prudence and resolution, and sometimes even a thorough knowledge of warfare. A commander, before making any movement, will generally use every exertion to deceive his enemy; for example, if a general wishes to withdraw his army from the face of the one to which he is opposed, he will generally double and advance the pickets in his front, in order the better to screen his movements. It will thus be seen what great difficulty attends a reconnoitering party in its endeavors to ascertain the movements and intentions of an enemy. The indications discovered frequently give rise to very varied opinions among the most distinguished and experienced officers.

The following account of the reconnoissance which preceded the battle of Essling in 1809, will illustrate this point:

“On the 21st of May, between twelve and one o'clock in the morning, Marshal Massena reconnoitered the line of outposts. Various reports were made of a rear guard, from 4000 to 5000 strong, who were retreating. The marshal asked Gen. Pelet what he thought of it. He answered, that as he could perceive a glimmer along the horizon, extending about three miles, it must be the enemy's bivouac; and that, from the works carried on during the last three days, added to the cannonade of the previous evening, we had the

whole enemy before us, but that it was easy to make certain of it from the steeple of Aspern. The marshal went up there and recognizing the truth of his observations, returned to the Emperor. At daybreak the Emperor was on horseback. The marshals around him all disagreed as to the enemy's movements. Lannes considered that there was only a rear guard, of from 6000 to 8000 men, which ought to be at once overthrown. Bessieres relied on the reports of his cavalry, who had assured him that nothing had been encountered for several leagues. Massena, who had acquired experience by a long command was certain that the whole Austrian army was in front, and Mouton agreed in this. Napoleon, anxious to satisfy himself, advanced beyond the ridge of Aspern; but he could get no further, owing to the enemy's light cavalry having advanced since daylight. It was necessary to await the cavalry before this mask could be penetrated. Reconnoitering his own position Napoleon was continually between the outposts and the bridges. About one o'clock in the day Gen. Pelet was at the lines of the furthest outposts. Skirmishing began; the ground gradually rising in front of him, concealed what was going on beyond. Suddenly he saw three heavy masses directing their march on our left flank, and, as they crowned the ridge, forming in order of battle. Thirty thousand men were advancing in an oblique line toward Aspern, the key and support of the position. He at once went to warn the marshal of the approach of the columns, which in five minutes would be upon him. He ordered Gen. Molitor to his support, and announced the state of matters to the Emperor.

Had the opinions of Lannes or Bessieres been relied upon, a division of ten thousand men would probably have been pressed forward and been met and overthrown by the advancing columns of the enemy. To know how hard to press the pickets in these cases, and to judge by their actions whether they are a mere skeleton left to cover a retreat, or whether they are backed

by a large force ready for battle, requires, as we see, judgment, experience and a knowledge of war. To learn with certainty, it is frequently necessary to send scouts and spies around to the enemy's rear, but the length of time necessary to get information in this manner frequently causes a general to lose the best opportunity to press a retiring foe.

## IMPROVEMENTS IN CAVALRY ORGANIZATIONS.

According to Polybius, the cavalry of the Greeks consisted of two kinds :

1. The *Cataphracti* or heavy cavalry, in which both rider and horse were well covered with defensive armor, the former armed with the lance, and a sabre slung from a shoulder belt.

2. A light cavalry of an irregular character, who were without defensive armor, consisting of archers and lancers, who also carried a sword, javelin and a small buckler. A body of cavalry called an *epitagma*, was divided into two equal parts, each composed alike, termed *Telea*. One was placed on each wing of the line of battle.

The *teles* was subdivided into five divisions, the strength of each subdivision being the half of the one next in order above it. The lowest, termed *Ila*, of 64 horsemen, corresponding to the modern squadron, was drawn up on a front of 16 with four files, and was commanded by an officer with the title of *Ilarch*.

The Roman cavalry formed a privileged class, into which only those were admitted who paid certain tax. This classification being made, the tribunes named 10 *first* and 10 *second decurions* for the cavalry; and then in concert with the officers thus selected, divided the classes into *manipali* and *turma*, assigning to each its two proper officers; whilst these, in turn, selected the two officers in each maniple who acted as file closers. Since that time to the present day, constant changes and improvements have been made in the formation of cav-



alry, the most manifest change being the diminution in depth, and we now find ourselves adopting the single rank formation, which presents a far different system to the formation in ten ranks of which we read in the earliest histories of war.

## INSTRUCTIONS TO PICKETS.

I. When an officer in command of an outpost shall arrive at the position he is to occupy, he will immediately throw forward from one third to half of his command, divided into three or more pickets, a distance of 500 yards. One of these pickets will be placed on the main avenue of approach and the others on its right and left in favorable positions, and each of these pickets will throw forward videttes a still further distance of 400 or 500 yards.

II. To prevent any misconception of terms, the main body of the *outpost* will be denominated *grand guard*. The detachments in advance will be denominated *pickets* and the outer chain be denominated *videttes*.

III. Immediately upon taking his position, the officer commanding the *grand guard* will send patrols to his right and left, to establish communication and learn the position of the grand guards upon his flanks.—These patrols will be kept moving during the night to prevent the possibility of a vigilant and enterprising enemy creeping in between the guards. Patrols will also be kept moving from the grand guard to the pickets and videttes to insure vigilance on their part.

IV. From 3 o'clock in the morning till sunrise redoubled vigilance will be exacted, and patrols will be sent forward at least two miles in advance of the videttes.

V. Pickets and videttes must remain mounted and ready for action at any moment.

VI. At the grand guard not more than one third of the men may be allowed to feed and water at the same time. In feeding the bridle may be removed, but no

trooper on any outpost will be permitted to tie up his horse or remove his saddle under any circumstances whatever.

VII. By day, videttes should be placed in elevated positions where their view will be most extended. By night, they should be placed near the base of hills, where they will be obscured, and any person approaching will be more readily seen against the sky.

VIII. Pickets and grand guards will choose favorable positions for defence, such as near houses, barns, fences, stonewalls, &c., &c.

IX. Great care will be taken by officers commanding grand guards, to see that all outposts have an unobstructed and well understood line of retreat to the main body of the command.

X. In case of an attack upon the videttes, the commanding officer of the grand guard will immediately dispatch a courier to the main body of the command to notify the commanding officer. He will also send other couriers to notify the grand guard on his flanks.

XI. Videttes will reserve their fire until the enemy has approached sufficiently near to enable them to discharge their fire-arms with probable effect, but it is their duty to notify the commanding officer of the grand guard of the first indication of their approach.

XII. The videttes and pickets having been driven back upon the grand guard, the commanding officer finding his position no longer tenable, may fall back slowly upon the main body of the command, on being assured that it is ready for action.

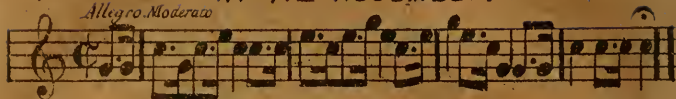
XIII. When any patrol or detachment of any kind approaches the main body of the command, whether in camp, on the march, or while engaging the enemy, they will send forward a trooper to give notification of their approach, in order that no doubt may arise to whether they are friends or enemies.



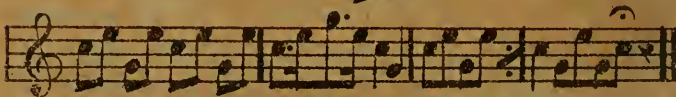
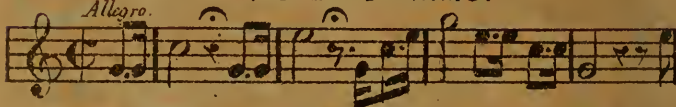


## BUGLE SIGNALS.

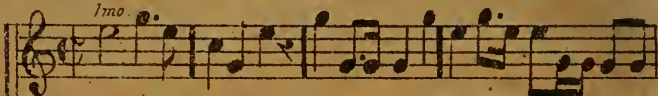
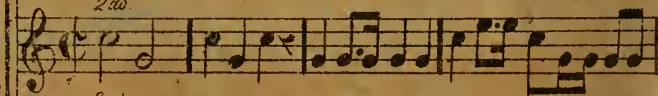
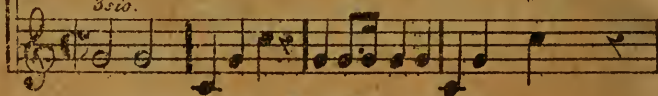
## NO 4. — ASSEMBLY.

*Allegro Moderato*

## NO 5. — TO ARMS.

*Allegro.*

## NO 6. — TO THE STANDARD.

*1mo.**2do.**3sio.**Tempo di Marcia*

The first system of musical notation consists of three staves. The top staff begins with a treble clef and a key signature of one flat. The music features a series of rhythmic patterns, including eighth and sixteenth notes, with some notes beamed together. The second and third staves continue the melodic and harmonic development of the piece.

The second system of musical notation also consists of three staves. The top staff continues the melodic line with more complex rhythmic figures. The middle and bottom staves provide harmonic support and counterpoint to the main melody.

NO 7. - MARCH.

*Allegro.*

The third system of musical notation consists of three staves. The top staff is in 2/4 time and features a prominent triplet rhythm. The middle and bottom staves continue the piece, with the bottom staff ending with a double bar line and repeat dots. The music is characterized by its rhythmic drive and melodic clarity.

BUGLE SIGNALS.

102.

No 11. — STABLE CALL.

*Allegro.*

*Fine*

*D.C.*

No 12. — WATERING CALL.

*Allegro.*

No 13. — BREAKFAST.

*Allegro.*

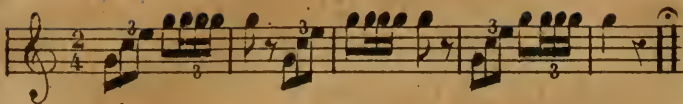
No 14. — ASSEMBLY OF GUARD.



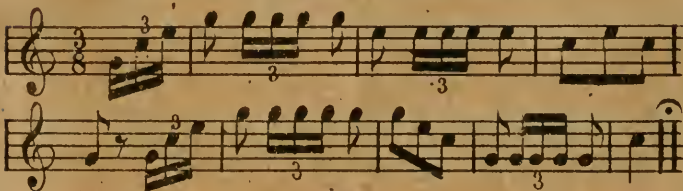
BUGLE SIGNALS.

N<sup>o</sup> 15. ORDERS.

103

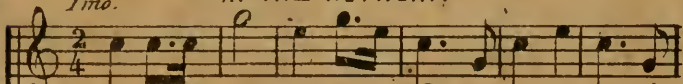


N<sup>o</sup> 16. ASSEMBLY OF BUGLERS.



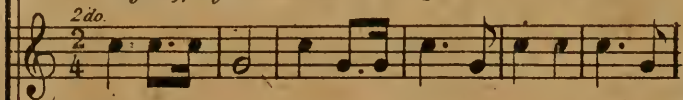
*1<sup>mo</sup>.*

N<sup>o</sup> 17. RETREAT.

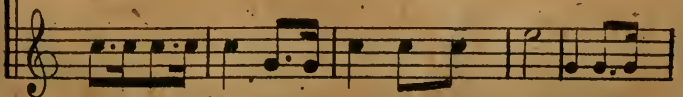
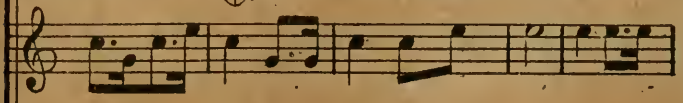
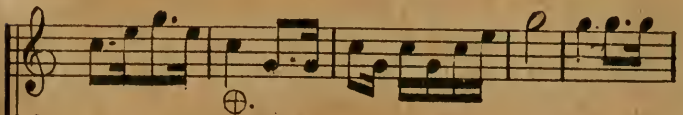
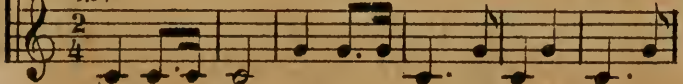


*As a signal, play to this mark.* ⊕

*2<sup>do</sup>.*



*Solo.*



The first system of the musical score consists of three staves of music. The top staff begins with a treble clef and a key signature of one flat (B-flat). The music is written in a rhythmic style typical of bugle calls, featuring a mix of quarter, eighth, and sixteenth notes, often beamed together. The first two staves are identical. The third staff continues the melody with some rests and a final cadence.

N<sup>o</sup> 18. — FATIGUE CALL.

*Allegro.*

The second system of the musical score is for "N<sup>o</sup> 18. — FATIGUE CALL." It begins with the tempo marking "Allegro." and a 3/8 time signature. The music is written on three staves. The first staff contains a treble clef and a key signature of one flat. The melody is characterized by frequent triplets, indicated by the number "3" above groups of three notes. The piece concludes with a double bar line and repeat dots.

NO 19. — DINNER CALL.

*Allegro.*

Musical notation for No. 19, Dinner Call. It consists of three staves of music in 2/4 time. The melody is written in treble clef. The first staff begins with a treble clef, a 2/4 time signature, and a key signature of one flat. The music features eighth and sixteenth notes, with several triplet markings (indicated by a '3' over the notes). The piece concludes with a double bar line and a repeat sign.

NO 20. — DISTRIBUTIONS.

*Allegro*

Musical notation for No. 20, Distributions. It consists of two staves of music in 3/8 time. The melody is written in treble clef. The first staff begins with a treble clef, a 3/8 time signature, and a key signature of one flat. The music features eighth and sixteenth notes, with a triplet marking. The piece concludes with a double bar line and a repeat sign.

NO 21. — DRILL CALL.

*Allegro.*

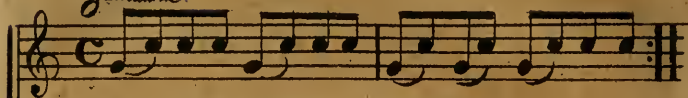
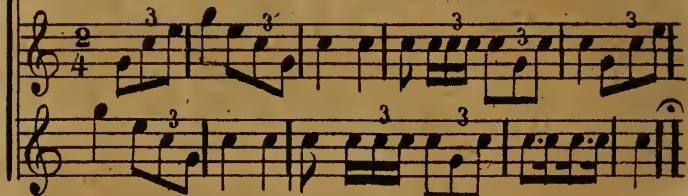
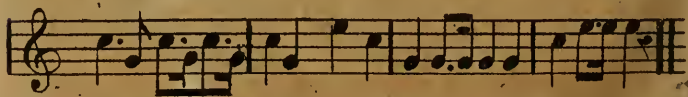
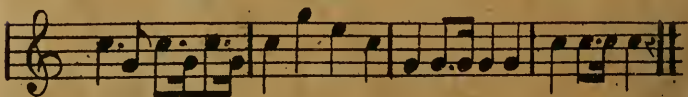
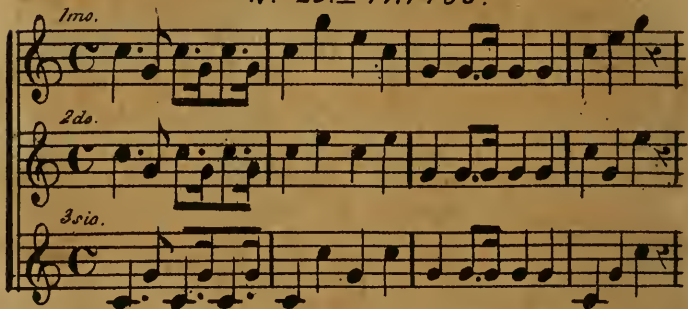
Musical notation for No. 21, Drill Call. It consists of two staves of music in 2/4 time. The melody is written in treble clef. The first staff begins with a treble clef, a 2/4 time signature, and a key signature of one flat. The music features eighth and sixteenth notes, with several triplet markings. The piece concludes with a double bar line and a repeat sign.

NO 22. — OFFICER'S CALL.

*Allegro.*

Musical notation for No. 22, Officer's Call. It consists of one staff of music in 6/8 time. The melody is written in treble clef. The first staff begins with a treble clef, a 6/8 time signature, and a key signature of one flat. The music features eighth and sixteenth notes, with a triplet marking. The piece concludes with a double bar line and a repeat sign.

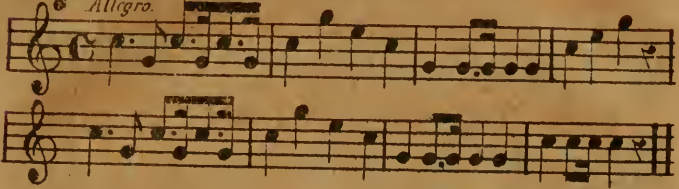
## BUGLE SIGNALS.

80 = *Andante.*N<sup>o</sup> 23. — THE RECALL.N<sup>o</sup> 24. — SICK CALL.N<sup>o</sup> 25. — TATTOO.

BUGLE SIGNALS.

76 =

No 26. TO EXTINGUISH LIGHTS.  
*Allegro.*



FOR THE SERVICE OF SKIRMISHERS.

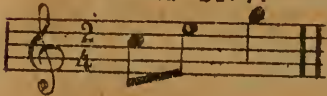
No 1. FORWARD.



No 2. HALT



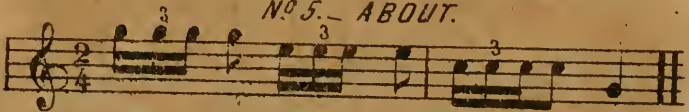
No 3. TO THE LEFT.



No 4. TO THE RIGHT.

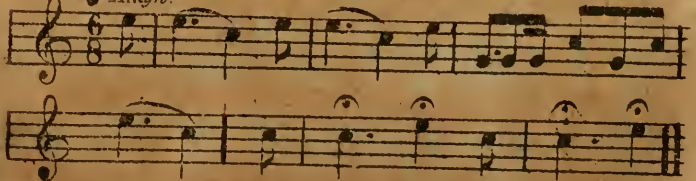


No 5. ABOUT.



110 =

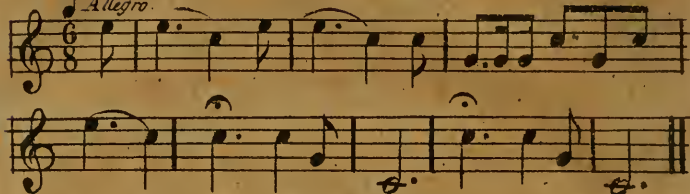
No 6. CHANGE DIRECTION TO THE RIGHT.  
*Allegro.*



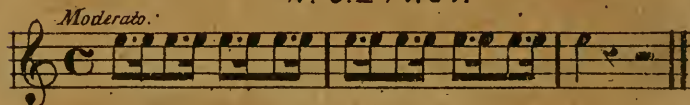
BUGLE SIGNALS.

108.

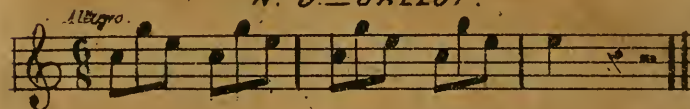
110=  
*Allegro.* N<sup>o</sup> 7. CHANGE DIRECTION TO THE LEFT.



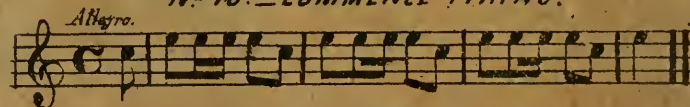
N<sup>o</sup> 8. TROT.



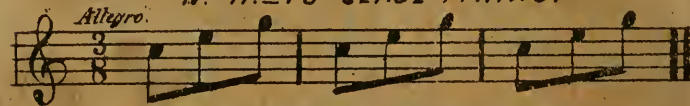
N<sup>o</sup> 9. GALLOP.



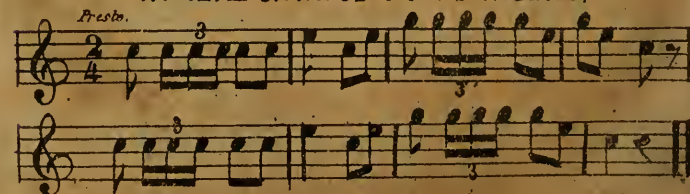
N<sup>o</sup> 10. COMMENCE FIRING.



N<sup>o</sup> 11. TO CEASE FIRING.



N<sup>o</sup> 12. CHARGE AS FORAGERS.



# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

---

## PART FIRST.

---

### TITLE FIRST.

---

#### BASIS OF INSTRUCTION.

##### ARTICLE I.

	<i>Page.</i>
Formation of a regiment of ten squadrons in line, . . .	1
Posts of the officers and non-commissioned officers of the field and staff of a regiment in line, . . . . .	2
Posts of the officers and non-commissioned officers of a squadron in line, . . . . .	3
Assembly of a regiment, mounted, . . . . .	4
Assembly of a regiment, dismounted, . . . . .	5
Dress parade and guard mounting, . . . . .	5
The standard, . . . . .	7
Salute with the standard and sabre, . . . . .	8
The order of battle, . . . . .	8

##### ARTICLE II.

Formation of a regiment in column, . . . . .	9
Order in column by twos or fours, . . . . .	9
Order in column of platoons, . . . . .	11
Order in close column, . . . . .	12
Order in double column, . . . . .	13
Compliments by cavalry under review, . . . . .	13
Form and course of inspection, . . . . .	16

##### ARTICLE III.

Duties of instructors, . . . . .	18
----------------------------------	----

##### ARTICLE IV.

Division, order, and progression of instruction, . . . . .	19
--	----

## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

## ARTICLE V.

	<i>Page.</i>
Gradation of instruction,.....	20
Recruits, .....	20
Corporals, .....	21
Sergeants,.....	21
Officers,.....	22

## ARTICLE VI.

Instruction to mount without saddle, and to saddle, ..	22
Manner of vaulting, .....	22
Manner of rolling the cloak,.....	23
Manner of saddling,.....	23

## ARTICLE VII.

Of training horses which have already been ridden, ..	24
Preparatory Lesson. To make a horse tractable and steady at mounting,.....	25
To bend or to supple the horse's neck,.....	26
How to make a horse obey the pressure of the leg;..	29
Circling on the haunches,.....	31
Reining back,.....	32
The horse's paces, walk, trot, and canter, .....	33
Demi-pirouette, .....	35
Manner of accustoming the horses to leap,.....	36
To accustom horses to firing and military noises, ...	36
Practice of paces for manœuvre,.....	37

## ARTICLE VIII.

Definitions and general principles,.....	37
--	----

## ARTICLE IX.

Signals,.....	42
---------------	----

## TITLE SECOND.

## INSTRUCTION ON FOOT.

School of the trooper, dismounted,.....	45
Position of trooper, dismounted,.....	46
Eyes right—eyes left, .....	46
Right face, left face, about face, right—oblique face, left—oblique face,.....	47
Common step,.....	43
To change feet, ... ..	49
To march by a flank,.....	49
To face to the right or left when marching,.....	49
Oblique face to the right or left when marching,....	50



	<i>Page.</i>
Quick step,.....	50
Double quick step,.....	51
Sabre exercise.....	52
General observations and directions,.....	62
Manual of the pistol,.....	64
Inspection of arms,.....	66
Target practice,.....	67
Platoon, squadron and regiment, dismounted,.....	67

---

## TITLE THIRD.

### INSTRUCTION ON HORSEBACK.

#### LESSON I.

School of the trooper, mounted,....	71
Position of the trooper, before mounting,.....	72
To mount,.....	72
To dismount,.....	73
Position of the trooper mounted,.....	74
The use of the reins,.....	74
The use of the legs,.....	75
The effect of the legs and reins combined,.....	75
To march,.....	75
To halt,.....	76
To turn to the right and to the left,.....	76
To turn about to the right and to the left,....	77
To make a third of a turn to the right and to the left,.....	77
To rein back, and to cease reining back,.....	78
To file off, .....	79

#### LESSON II.

To march to the right hand, and to march to the left hand, .....	79
To turn to the right and to the left in marching....	80
To halt, and to step off, .....	80
To pass from the walk to the trot, and from the trot to the walk,.....	81
Changes of hand,.....	82
To turn to the right and to the left by trooper in marching, .....	83
To turn about to the right and to the left by trooper in marching on the same line,.....	83
The same movements in marching in column,.....	84

## LESSON III.

	<i>Page.</i>
Of the spur,.....	86
To march to the right hand or to the left hand,.....	87
To pass from the walk to the trot, and from the trot to the walk,.....	88
Change of direction in the breadth of the riding house,.....	88
Change of direction obliquely by trooper,.....	88
To march in a circle,.....	90

## LESSON IV.

To turn to the right, or to the left by trooper in marching,.....	91
To turn about to the right, or to the left, the troopers marching on the same line (or abreast),.....	91
The same, the troopers marching in column,.....	91
To pass successively from the head to the rear of the column.....	92
Being halted, to commence the move at a trot,.....	93
Marching at a trot, to halt,.....	93
To pass from the trot to the trot-out, and from the trot-out to the trot,.....	98
To pass from the trot to the gallop,.....	94
To passage to the right or to the left, the head to the wall,.....	95
To passage to the right or to the left, being in column,.....	97

## LESSON V.

To take the snaffle in the right hand,.....	98
To drop the snaffle,.....	99
The principal movements of the bridle hand,.....	99
To gather the horse,.....	100
To march,.....	100
To halt,.....	100
To turn to the right in marching,.....	100
To turn to the left in marching,.....	100
To turn about to the right and to the left in marching,.....	100
To make an oblique turn to the right and to the left in marching,.....	101
To rein back, and to cease reining back,.....	101
Exercise of the 4th lesson with the curb bridle,.....	101
To passage to the right and to the left,.....	102

## LESSON VI.

Principles of the gallop,.....	102
Exercise at the gallop upon right lines,.....	103
Exercise at the gallop on the circle,.....	104

LESSON VII.

	<i>Page.</i>
Exercise of the 6th lesson with the sabre only, ..	105
Manual of arms at a halt, .....	105
To fire the pistol, ....	107
To load the pistol, .....	107
Inspection of arms, .....	108
Sabre exercise at a halt, .....	109

LESSON VIII.

Manual of arms in marching, ..	110
Sabre exercise at all gaits, .....	110
Leaping, .....	110
To leap the ditch, .....	111
To leap the fence, .....	111
Individual charge, .....	111
Circling on the forehand and haunches, and demi-pirouette, .....	113
Target practice, .....	113
Record and reports of target firing, .....	114
SCHOOL OF THE PLATOON, MOUNTED .....	117

ARTICLE I.

General principles of alignment, .....	117
Successive alignment of files in the platoon, .....	118
Alignment of the platoon, .....	121
To break the platoon by file, by twos, and by fours.	121
Direct march in column by file, by twos and by fours	122
Change of direction, .....	123
To halt, and to commence the march, in column, ...	123
Individual oblique march, .....	124
The platoon marching in column by file, by twos, or by fours, to form line, faced to the front, to the left, and to the right, .....	124
Manual of arms, .....	127

ARTICLE II.

To form twos and fours at the same gait, .....	127
To break by twos and by file at the same gait, ....	129
To form twos and fours in doubling the gait, .....	130
To break by twos and by file in doubling the gait, ...	131
Sabre exercise, .....	132

ARTICLE III.

Direct march of the platoon in line, .....	133
Countermarch, .....	133
Wheelings, .....	133
To wheel on a fixed pivot, .....	140
To wheel on a movable pivot, .....	143

	<i>Page.</i>
Individual oblique march,.....	145
The platoon marching in line, to break it by twos, or by fours, at the same gait,.....	146
The platoon marching in column by twos or by fours, to form it at the same gait. ....	147
The platoon marching in line, to break it by fours or by twos, in doubling the gait,.....	148
The platoon marching in column by twos or by fours, to form it in doubling the gait,.....	148
Movements by fours, the platoon being in column or line,.....	149
ARTICLE IV.	
Running at the heads, and pistol practice.....	152
To leap the ditch and the fence,.....	153
To charge by platoon,.....	154
Rallying,.....	155
Skirmishing,.....	155
Prepare to fight on foot,.....	162
SCHOOL OF THE SQUADRON, MOUNTED,.....	165
ARTICLE I.	
Successive alignment of platoons in the squadron..	167
Alignment of the squadron,.....	168
The squadron being in line, to form a column of fours,.....	169
To break the squadron to the right or left to march to the front,.....	169
To break by fours from the right to march to the left,.....	170
Direct march in column of fours,.....	171
Change of direction,.....	172
Individual oblique march,.....	172
The squadron marching in column of fours to march to the rear,.....	172
To break by fours to the right, column half left, (right or half right),.....	173
The squadron marching in column by fours, by twos and by file, to form line faced to the front, to the left, to the right, or to the rear,.....	173
To regulate the rapidity of gaits,.....	177
Sabre exercise,.....	177
ARTICLE II.	
The squadron being in line, to form it in open column,.....	178
To march in open column,.....	179
Changes of direction by successive wheels,.....	181
Individual oblique march,.....	181

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

vii

Page.

Change of gait in open column,.....	182
To break by fours, by twos, and by file, to form twos, fours, and platoons at the same gait,.....	183
The same movements in doubling the gait,.....	185
The squadron marching in open column, to march to the rear,.....	187
To halt the column,.....	188
The squadron marching in open column, to form line faced to the left, to the right, to the front, and to the rear,.....	188
To break by platoons to the front,.....	192
To break by platoons to the rear from the right, to march to the left,.....	193
Movement by fours, the squadron being in open column,.....	194

ARTICLE III.

Direct march of the squadron in line,.....	196
Countermarch,.....	198
Wheelings,.....	199
To wheel on a fixed pivot,.....	200
To wheel on a movable pivot,.....	202
Individual oblique march,.....	203
Oblique march by platoons,.....	203
The squadron being in line, to cause it to gain ground to the rear, and to face it again to the front by fours,.....	205
The squadron marching in line, to march it to the rear by wheeling the platoons about,.....	205
The squadron marching in line, to break it to the front by platoons, and to reform it,.....	206
The same movements in doubling the gait,.....	207
Passage of obstacles,.....	208

ARTICLE IV.

The charge,.....	209
Rallying,.....	214
Skirmishing,.....	215
To fight on foot,.....	220



## PART SECOND.

## TITLE FOURTH.

## EVOLUTIONS OF A REGIMENT.

## GENERAL RULES.

## ARTICLE I.

	<i>Page.</i>
FORMATION OF COLUMNS—THEIR MARCH, AND CHANGES.....	6
Alignment of the regiment,.....	6
To form a column of fours—its march and change of direction,.....	7
To form an open column—its march and change of direction,.....	8
To form a column of squadrons, and a close column	11
To march in a column of squadrons, and in a close column, and their change of direction,.....	17
To form a double column—its march and change of direction,.....	20
To pass from a column of twos to a column of fours; to an open column, and to a column of squadrons, and to a close column,.....	23
To pass from a column of squadrons and a close column to an open column, and a column of fours and twos,.....	26

## ARTICLE II.

FORMATION OF LINE FROM THE DIFFERENT COLUMNS,.....	29
To form line from the column of fours, and open column, faced to the front, obliquely, to the left, right, and rear,.....	29
To form line from a column of squadrons (or column of attack), faced to the front, left, right, and rear,.....	32

	<i>Page.</i>
To form line from close column faced to the front, obliquely, left, right, and rear,.....	35
To form line from double column faced to the front, right, left, and rear,.....	41
To form line from open column by combining two or more movements,.....	48
ARTICLE III.	
THE LINE—ITS CHANGES AND MARCH,.....	46
Changes of front,.....	46
Movements of the line of squadron columns,.....	47
The march in line,.....	52
ARTICLE IV.	
ECHELONS,.....	57
Echelons by squadron from line,.....	57
Echelons from column of squadrons,.....	59
Echelons from open column,.....	60
Formation of line from echelons,.....	62
Echelons by half regiment or wing,.....	64
Observations on echelons,.....	65
To retire by alternate squadrons,.....	66
ARTICLE V.	
CHARGE,.....	66
Observations on the different manners of charging, ..	66
Charge in line,.....	68
Charge in column,.....	72
SPECIAL SERVICE OF CAVALRY IN THE WEST,.....	74
The camp,.....	74
The march,.....	76
Escorts,.....	77

---

## TITLE FIFTH.

### EVOLUTIONS OF THE LINE.

PRELIMINARY RULES AND REMARKS,.....	79
ARTICLE I.	
COLUMNS,.....	82
Open columns,.....	81
Their march by the rear to pass a defile,.....	81
Column of squadrons,.....	81



	<i>Page.</i>
To form close column from a line faced to a flank, . . .	81
To form a close column from an open column, . . . . .	81
The march and change of direction of a close column; its countermarch; to gain ground to flank or rear; and its wheel by platoons to repel a sudden attack in flank, . . . . .	81
To form and advance in regimental double columns, . . . . .	81
To reduce them to double columns of fours, . . . . .	81
To face and march to the rear, . . . . .	81
To pass from a column of squadrons, or a close column to an open column; from an open column to a column of fours; from a column of fours to an open column; and from an open column to a column of squadrons, and a close column, . . . . .	81
To form close columns from line without changing front, . . . . .	82
To change the direction of a general close column by a flank, . . . . .	82

ARTICLE II.

FORMATIONS OF LINE, . . . . .	86
To form line from an open column, or column of squadrons, to the right or left, and on right or on left into line, . . . . .	82
To form line to the front from double columns, and faced to the rear, on the head or rear of the columns, . . . . .	82
To form line from an open column, where a part has changed direction, in the several cases, by combining two or more evolutions, . . . . .	82
To form line from open column to the front, obliquely, faced to the right or left rear, on the rear of the column, and on the head of the column, . . . . .	86
To form line faced to the front, and to the rear, from column of squadrons, . . . . .	87
To deploy by regiment in mass and in echelon, . . . . .	89
To deploy the close column to either flank, . . . . .	89
To deploy the close column to both flanks, . . . . .	90
To deploy a line of regimental close columns or masses, . . . . .	90
To form line on the left flank faced to the left, and on right flank faced to the right, from the close column, . . . . .	91
To form a line of double columns, in two lines, faced to the right or left, . . . . .	92
To form a line of double columns in line faced to the rear, . . . . .	92
To form line from open columns, on a central squadron faced to the front, . . . . .	92

	<i>Page.</i>
To form line from open column, on a central squadron, faced to the rear,.....	93
ARTICLE III.	
THE LINE,.....	93
Changes of front,.....	93
Movements of the line of squadron columns,.....	94
The march in line,.....	94
The brigade in two lines,.....	96
ARTICLE IV.	
ECHELONS,.....	99
ARTICLE V.	
THE CHARGE,.....	101
Application of the general rules in three examples of evolutions of a division of two brigades,....	102

## PART THIRD.

### SKIRMISH DRILL FOR MOUNTED TROOPS.

#### ARTICLE I.

	<i>Sec.</i>
Composition of Company.....	1
Designation of Company.....	2
Posts of Officers.....	3
To Link.....	4

#### ARTICLE II.

Skirmish drill; preliminary remarks,.....	5
To take open order and to return to close order (in line,).....	6
Open order in line—to break into fours, twos and files,.....	7
In column of file to form twos, open order,.....	8
In column of file to form fours, open order,.....	9
In column of twos, open order, to form fours, open order,.....	10
In column of fours to form twos, open or close order,.....	11
In column of twos to form files, open or close order,.....	12
To deploy as skirmishers from line,.....	13

#### ARTICLE III.

In open order column of fours; action front and left,.....	14
In open order column of fours; action rear and left,.....	15
In open order column of fours; action right,.....	16
In open order column of fours; action left,.....	17
In open order column of twos; action front and left,.....	18
In open order column of twos; action rear and left,.....	19
In open order column of twos; action right,.....	20
In open order column of twos; action left,.....	21

#### ARTICLE IV.

To deploy as skirmishers when dismounted,.....	22
To deploy as skirmishers from column of fours,.....	23
After deploying as skirmishers to commence action,.....	24
Column of fours open order to return to close order,.....	25

	<i>Sec.</i>
Column of twos open order to return to close order,	26
Column of file to form fours in close order,.....	27

## ARTICLE V.

*Changes of the Manual.*

To sling and to unsling rifles,.....	28
Concluding remarks,.....	29

*Page.*

REMARKS UPON CAVALRY TACTICS AND MANŒUVRES,.....	22
RECONNOISSANCES,.....	41
IMPROVEMENTS IN CAVALRY ORGANIZATIONS,.....	44
INSTRUCTIONS TO PICKETS,.....	46

# S. H. GOETZEL'S

## LIST OF PUBLICATIONS.

---

### A STRANGE STORY,

BY SIR E. BULWER LYTTON—Price . . . . . \$3 00

---

### THE CONFEDERATE,

BY A SOUTH CAROLINIAN—Price . . . . . \$1 25

---

### RAIDS AND ROMANCE OF MORGAN AND HIS MEN,

BY MRS. SALLIE ROCHESTER FORD—Price . . . . . \$3 50

---

### GREAT EXPECTATIONS,

BY CHARLES DICKENS, (Boz.)—Price . . . . . \$3 00

---

### TANNHAUSER, or the BATTLE OF THE BARDS, A POEM,

BY NEVILLE TEMPLE and EDWARD TREVOR—Price . \$2 50

---

### THE WAR IN NICARAGUA,

BY GENERAL WILLIAM WALKER,

One Volume, 12mo. Cloth, complete, . . . . . \$1 50

Do. Half Calf, . . . . . 2 50

---

### ROMANTIC PASSAGES IN SOUTH- WESTERN HISTORY,

BY HON. A. B. MEEK—One Volume, 12mo. Cloth, . . . \$1 25

---

*(Continued on next page.)*

# S. H. GOETZEL'S

## LIST OF PUBLICATIONS—Continued.

---

### THE CODE OF ORDINANCES FOR THE CITY OF MOBILE,

BY HON. ALEX. MCKINSTRY—One Volume, 8mo. Sheep, \$4 00

---

### REV. DR. P. P. NEELY'S SERMONS,

One Volume, 12mo. Cloth, . . . . . \$1 25

---

### SOUVENIRS OF TRAVEL,

BY M<sup>ME</sup> OCTAVIA WALTON LEVERT,

Half Morocco Gilt, . . . . . \$4 00

Turk do. Ant., . . . . . 6 00

---

### Horizontal Plowing and Hill-Side Ditching,

BY DR. N. T. SORSBY, OF ALA.

One Volume, Paper, . . . . . 50 cents.

---

### HARDEE'S

### RIFLE AND INFANTRY TACTICS,


Two Volumes, 24mo., . . . . . \$4 00

---

### SILAS MARNER,

BY THE AUTHOR OF "ADAM BEDE,"—(*In Press.*)

---

 Orders from abroad are respectfully requested to give *Distinct Directions* of their Postoffices, Landings, or Rail Road Stations.

S. H. GOETZEL, Mobile, Ala.



